

# VITAL FACTORS IN CHINA'S PROBLEMS

READINGS IN CURRENT LITERATURE

BY

LEE TENG-HWEE, LITT.D.

AUTHOR OF "LEE'S ENGLISH LANGUAGE LESSONS,"  
"LEE'S RHETORIC AND COMPOSITION," ETC.



THE COMMERCIAL PRESS, LIMITED  
SHANGHAI, CHINA  
1928





**DEDICATED TO MY DEVOTED WIFE**



## FOREWORD

In response to the growing demand for books on current literature as a result of the increasing tendency towards a more practical education, preparation for the compilation of this book began as early as 1914, but it was not undertaken in real earnest until last year, when events in China pointed out more clearly the necessity of putting out a kind of literature that would accord with the time.

The spirit of nationalism among the people, especially the student class, has been spreading with an ever-increasing rapidity, and in view of the various influences now brought to bear upon the minds of our youth, there is a supreme need of some kind of literature which can guide them toward true patriotic and constructive endeavor.

A book of this kind, then, in order to be a real contribution to present education must, apart from its literary and informational value, fulfill the following requirements:

1. It must be inspirational and stimulative.
2. It must be constructive and practical.
3. It must, above all, have special bearing on China's problems.

The collection of such materials has not been an easy task, and has involved much time and care in the selection of suitable essays from various sources. If some of the articles have international bearing, it is because of the fact that the students, in order to be

intelligently patriotic, must not be blind to the great world movements, which directly or indirectly affect China; for, according to modern conception, patriotism is inevitably bound up in the spirit of internationalism.

In this volume I have, therefore, attempted to classify the lessons into five big groups:

1. Those dealing with general topics, such as character building, the secrets of success, etc.
2. Those dealing with our economic problems.
3. Those dealing with our industrial problems.
4. Those dealing with our educational problems.
5. Those dealing with international problems.

Although the book is especially prepared for general reading in English, it may also form a useful supplement to the study of civics or social science; and, in offering this volume, it is hoped that its main object, namely, to lead students into constructive and patriotic ideals, should never be lost sight of by the teacher.

**T. H. LEE.**

FUH TAN UNIVERSITY,

SHANGHAI, DECEMBER 1, 1926.



# CONTENTS

LESSON	I. GENERAL	PAGE
I.	Individuality . . . . . <i>S. J. Chuan</i>	1
II.	The Need of Experts. . . . . <i>Loy Chang</i>	7
III.	China and Western Influences <i>John William Scholl</i>	17
IV.	The Four Corner-Stones of Success <i>Theodore H. Price</i>	25
V.	China's Introduction of Foreign Institutions . . . . . <i>J. S. Burgess</i>	36
VI.	Opium — A National Issue <i>K. T. Chung</i> <i>and Garfield Huang</i>	44
	II. ETHICS	
VII.	Moral Evolution. . . . . <i>Richard Swann Lull</i>	57
VIII.	Barbarism, Culture, Empire, Union <i>Benjamin Ives Gilman</i>	68
IX.	Chinese Conception of Human Nature and its Relation to Crime . . . . . <i>R. Y. Lo</i>	77
	III. EDUCATION	
X.	The Social Ideal in Education <i>George E. Vincent</i>	84
XI.	Vocational Education and National Ideals <i>B. H. Crocheron</i>	98
XII.	Industrial Education in China <i>S. T. Dean</i>	104
XIII.	General Engineering Education <i>T. S. Yeh</i>	113
XIV.	The Importance of Medicine in the Development of China <i>Victor C. Vaughan</i>	122

LESSON		PAGE
	IV. INDUSTRY AND AGRICULTURE	
XV.	Modern Industry in China. <i>Miss W. T. Zung</i>	132
XVI.	What the Government Should Do to Encourage New Industries . . . <i>H. A. Pan</i>	147
XVII.	Improving the Cattle Industry in China <i>S. H. Taam</i>	154
XVIII.	Manchuria's Golden Fleece . . . <i>Philip Kercy</i>	159
XIX.	The Success of Factory Organization and Business Management . . . <i>M. H. Li</i>	169
XX.	The Frontier Movement . . . <i>Yu Tinn-Hugh</i>	180
XXI.	Possibilities in Plant Improvement in North China . . . . . <i>Chunjen C. Chen</i>	189
XXII.	The Agricultural Outlook in China <i>H. H. Hu</i>	197
XXIII.	Better Agriculture in China <i>John H. Reisner</i>	209
XXIV.	The Outlook for Horticulture in China <i>Y. B. Li</i>	215
	V. ROADS	
XXV.	The Country Road in the Progress of a Nation . . . . . <i>Q. L. Young</i>	225
XXVI.	Railways — China's Greatest Need <i>Julean Arnold</i>	233
	VI. FINANCE AND COMMERCE	
XXVII.	China's Silk Trade with America <i>S. L. Pan</i>	242
XXVIII.	The Wood Oil Market in China. <i>Peter S. Jowe</i>	258
XXIX.	China's Finances — The System of Taxation in China . . . . . <i>T. I. Dunn</i>	269

LESSON		PAGE
XXX.	How Can Foreign Capital Be Used to China's Advantage? . . . <i>Chamber Chow</i>	282
XXXI.	Social Insurance in Great Britain <i>Stewart E. S. Yui</i>	292
XXXII.	New York's Health Insurance Project . . <i>From an editorial</i>	303
VII. CAPITAL AND LABOR		
XXXIII.	Capital and Labor : A Fair Deal <i>Otto H. Kahn</i>	309
XXXIV.	The Demands of Labor. <i>Samuel Gompers</i>	323
XXXV.	The Labor Problem in China <i>C. P. Chow</i>	330
VIII. POLITICS		
XXXVI.	The Way to Permanent Peace <i>F. E. Chadwick</i>	337
XXXVII.	Peace Through Democracy . . . <i>Elihu Root</i>	343
XXXVIII.	The League of Nations . . . <i>Jan. C. Smuts</i>	349
XXXIX.	The Fourteen Points . . . <i>Woodrow Wilson</i>	356
LX.	Relations Between China and the West <i>Chao-chu Wu</i>	360
LXI.	A Historical Sketch of Early Chino- Japanese Relations . . . . . <i>P. S. Ho</i>	382
LXII.	Commerce and the Abolition of Extraterritoriality . . . . . <i>Chong-su See</i>	393
LXIII.	A May Thirtieth Policy <i>Samuel H. Chang</i>	407
Appendix — Notes . . . . .		421-440





# VITAL FACTORS IN CHINA'S PROBLEMS

## LESSON I INDIVIDUALITY

S. J. CHUAN

*Former Student-Director, Tsing-hua College*

China stands to-day at the dawn of<sup>a</sup> an extraordinary age. Freed from the chains of ancient thought and superstition, she is beginning to win victories in the domains<sup>1</sup> of science, commerce, and industry. From the very depths of corruption and the immobility<sup>2</sup> of conservatism,<sup>3</sup> she is emerging<sup>4</sup> into the realms of progress and prosperity. Indeed, with her tremendous population and the unlimited amount of her natural resources, no region is too remote for her hand to reach, no place too sacred for her eyes to penetrate.<sup>5</sup> Filled with burning patriotism within and cheered by these bright prospects without, there runs in every man's and every woman's mind but one thought—the thought of making his country strong. But will the aforesaid<sup>6</sup> means make China strong? No! They may be efficient

---

<sup>1</sup> Departments. <sup>2</sup> Inability to move. <sup>3</sup> State of being opposed to change. <sup>4</sup> Coming out. <sup>5</sup> Look into. <sup>6</sup> Mentioned before.

means to make China brutally strong, but not truly great. For, if China is ever to be a great nation, it must be by means of strong individualities.<sup>1</sup>

Every triumph in the annals<sup>2</sup> of the world is a triumph of some strong individuality. The Great Reformation† was a victory for Martin Luther† and the Emancipation† marked the triumph of Abraham Lincoln.† So it runs through all the ages that history has been remade and nations reestablished by men of firm convictions<sup>3</sup> and untiring energy: men who would rather face death than to recant<sup>4</sup> their faith in God; men who were willing to brave fire and hell for the cause that to them was just. For them money did not count<sup>5</sup> and fame dwindled into insignificance.<sup>5</sup> They had no other goal but the accomplishment of their ideals.<sup>6</sup> They saw nothing but the welfare and elevation<sup>7</sup> of their fellow countrymen. How many men of this type has China to-day?

A perusal of China's history reveals her failure to develop the individual assets<sup>8</sup> of her people. James Seth† says: "The moral ideal of the classical world was social and political and that of the modern world is individualistic." To the former belongs China, whose social structure is based upon cohesion,<sup>9</sup> solidarity,<sup>10</sup> and the complete subordination of the individual to society. The Western World† falls within the second category,<sup>11</sup> the modern world, whose civilization has

---

<sup>1</sup> Personalities, characters. <sup>2</sup> Records, histories. <sup>3</sup> Strong belief, persuasions. <sup>4</sup> Revoke a declaration. <sup>5</sup> That which has no value. <sup>6</sup> Model of excellence. <sup>7</sup> Uplift. <sup>8</sup> Good qualities or characteristics. <sup>9</sup> Act of sticking together. <sup>10</sup> Consolidation of interests and responsibilities. <sup>11</sup> Class.



for centuries been founded upon the principle of individualism. Personal freedom, civil liberty, and self-government have been the watch-words since the time of Cromwell† to the present day.

With the establishment of the Republic the weakness of the undeveloped individual has been brought out in still bolder relief.<sup>o</sup> It has been weighed and found wanting.<sup>a</sup> Heretofore we had been enslaved by a monarchy that gave the people no voice,<sup>e</sup> and forbade that any judgment be made by the common classes. Henceforth we are to have a government of the people, for the people, and by the people. A government that demands the enlightenment<sup>1</sup> of every subject in the country. A government whose security<sup>2</sup> and stability<sup>3</sup> depends solely upon the strength of the individual characters of its citizens. In a word, "the primacy of the person shall be the ruling principle<sup>f</sup> of this new Republic."

It is not, however, the form of government that builds up individual character, but the economic and social conditions created by such a change. China, to-day, is confronted<sup>4</sup> with the evils of both the old and the new. On the one hand, she is brought face to face<sup>5</sup> with the weaknesses of her own civilization, and on the other she is put mercilessly to the test<sup>b</sup> in combating the undesirable elements in Western civilization. Among the old she has to eradicate<sup>6</sup> the opium habit (her national curse), political corruption, superstition, and the other evils of a monarchy. Among the new she has to

---

<sup>1</sup> State of being instructed. <sup>2</sup> Safety. <sup>3</sup> Firmness of establishment. <sup>4</sup> Faced. <sup>5</sup> Weed out.



resist the temptations of smoking, drinking, materialism,<sup>1</sup> and other injurious influences of the New World. Pressed hard on all sides by these perplexing problems, what will be China's salvation? Will it be money? Will it be industrial development? Will it be military efficiency? Or will it be the development of strong character?

Undoubtedly more than one of us believes that China's future depends largely upon the opening up of her natural resources. Many of us probably pin our faith solely upon<sup>1</sup> the development of her industrial and commercial enterprises. But the people cannot rightfully and justly enjoy the fruits of hard and honest labor<sup>1</sup> unless business is managed by less selfish methods. The character of business again lies in the hands of those who control it. China does not need monopolists<sup>2</sup> who will cut one another's throats<sup>k</sup> to fill their own pockets. She needs captains of industry who will hold dear to their hearts the welfare of their employees. She does not want men who will set up corporations<sup>3</sup> to cheat the people and the state. She wants business men who aim only at the advancement of their brethren within the four seas. So it is in all walks of life,<sup>1</sup> in religion, in education, and in other lines of work, she needs men of strong individuality.

Having suffered from foreign humiliations, naturally she cries for an efficient army and navy. No one believes more than I do in the military strength of a nation. But China to-day needs more than a fighting force. She needs officers who will fight only for the cause of justice

---

<sup>1</sup> Devotion to material or physical interests. <sup>2</sup> Those who have exclusive rights of trading. <sup>3</sup> Companies.



and righteousness. She needs soldiers who will, by education, to be taught to discern the right and wrong in the causes of warfare, instead of being driven into the trenches only to be butchered like unreasoning animals. The time has now come for men to realize more and more the value of human lives.

If it is true that China needs men of strong individuality, it is, then, even more true that her sons abroad, upon whom devolves the success of her future, must prepare to supply the need. Home and government have sent us here<sup>1</sup> charged with the mission of future leadership and intrusted with the task of qualifying ourselves as such. Of the mission we are proud; for the task we feel elated.<sup>2</sup> But are we capable of carrying out such a mission? Have we a courage great enough to enable us to go through all terrors? Have we a will strong enough to withstand all temptations and trials? Surrounded by the tranquil<sup>3</sup> college atmosphere and undisturbed by life's perplexing problems, we may venture to say that whatever may come we shall never fail. When one makes a declaration like this, let him remember the hundreds of students who have returned home. How many of them have survived<sup>4</sup> the surging sea of trials? Few! We are informed that there are men receiving bribes to-day at home who were stanch supporters of personal integrity<sup>5</sup> while studying in this country. Scores of returned students who were outspoken heroes in the past among us have ruined their careers through dissipation.<sup>6</sup> In learning, many of them

---

<sup>1</sup> U.S.A.    <sup>2</sup> Proud.    <sup>3</sup> Calm, peaceful.    <sup>4</sup> Outlived, outlasted.  
<sup>5</sup> Honesty, moral soundness.    <sup>6</sup> Dissolute living.

surpass us. In ability, few of us are their equals. What, then, is the cause of their downfall? Because during their course of study here, they lost the essence<sup>1</sup> of our own civilization, and in its place failed to grasp the principles governing the minds in this country. Individuality was lost to them.

It is a common danger for us to go to either extreme while completing our education here in the United States. Some of us assume the attitude of recluses<sup>2</sup> by leading lives of isolation which deprive us of the beneficial influences permeating<sup>3</sup> real American society. There are also many of us who believe in entirely losing our identity in the American by participating in everything. This process of Americanization has cost many a student that which was vital<sup>4</sup> to his own national character. Be it then our guiding principle to maintain the good that has given our country her splendid past, and to absorb the principles that have created for this country its glorious present, so that we shall be able to build for every one of us a strong individuality—the key to China's success in the future.

—*The Chinese Students' Monthly.*

### QUESTIONS

1. What is your idea regarding the future outlook of China? Give reasons for your conclusions.
2. What kind of people are said to possess a strong individuality?
3. What are the differences in the social ideals of China and the Western world?

---

<sup>1</sup> Virtues. <sup>2</sup> Hermits. <sup>3</sup> Pervading. <sup>4</sup> That which is necessary to life.



4. Upon what, primarily, do the security and stability of a republic rest?
5. What are the evils with which our Chinese nation at present is confronted?
6. Explain why the development of natural resources or any reforms in our industries are not adequate to insure the future progress of our country.
7. What kind of men do we need for our soldiers in China?
8. On whom, particularly, is China dependent for her salvation? Has this expectation been fulfilled? Why?
9. What kind of attitude and ideals must a student, studying in modern schools or abroad, adopt?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |   |    |  |
|---|----|--|
| 1 | a. | <i>At the dawn of:</i> in the beginning of.  |
| 2 | b. | <i>Does not count:</i> has no influence or weight.   |
| „ | c. | <i>To bring out into bold relief:</i> to make apparent; to become obvious.                               |
| „ | d. | <i>To be weighed and found wanting:</i> to fail in the test.   |
| 3 | e. | <i>To give one no voice:</i> to give one no right to express one's views on political or social matters. |
| „ | f. | <i>Ruling principle:</i> principal rule of life.   |
| „ | g. | <i>To be brought face to face with:</i> to be confronted with.   |
| „ | h. | <i>To put to the test:</i> to try.   |
| „ | i. | <i>To pin one's faith upon:</i> to put one's belief in.  |
| 4 | j. | <i>The fruits of labor:</i> the reward of work.  |
| „ | k. | <i>To cut one another's throats:</i> to underbid one another in trade.                                   |
| „ | l. | <i>Walks of life:</i> vocations.   |

## LESSON II

### THE NEED OF EXPERTS

LOY CHANG, M.A.

The Chinese are a nation of amateurs.<sup>1</sup> Whether in statecraft,<sup>2</sup> education, industry or commerce, the conduct

---

<sup>1</sup> One who cultivates any study or art from mere love of it, as opposed to the professional. <sup>2</sup> Management of state affairs.

of affairs and the formulating<sup>1</sup> of policies have been largely in the hands of amateurs—men without special training, knowledge, or skill in their particular fields of activity. In the national economy of most of the Western countries, where the rulers are elected by popular suffrage,<sup>2</sup> the political heads of the various great services may be nonprofessional<sup>3</sup> men, but they are guided by experts<sup>4</sup> in all affairs and enterprises requiring special knowledge and special skill. Experts are available and used when enterprises require their employment. This is not so in the state service in China. There are now, it is true, experts in some of the great fields of social activity, but hitherto few have been found and used in that service. Where experts were found they were usually foreigners employed for certain services required by treaties with the foreign powers. These have done good and valuable service to the nation, for men like Sir Robert Hart† and Sir Richard Dane† have been excellent public servants to whom the nation owes a debt of gratitude. But still in no land is the necessity of using the expert for the sound<sup>5</sup> organization, administration and management of important enterprises less realized. Throughout modern times when science and scientific methods have been rapidly developed and enlisted<sup>6</sup> to serve the state in Western countries the national economy of China has been left to those having no scientific and exact knowledge, special skill or any special equipment for the services for which they are

---

<sup>1</sup> Stating definitely.    <sup>2</sup> Right to vote.    <sup>3</sup> Not by profession or calling.    <sup>4</sup> Experienced person.    <sup>5</sup> Solid, strong.    <sup>6</sup> Used, utilized.



chosen. Even in specific reforms no necessity was felt for the use of experts. The inauguration<sup>1</sup> of every reform in recent times, constitutional,<sup>2</sup> military, naval, financial, and educational, was accompanied by the pitiful spectacle of commissions<sup>3</sup> appointed to study, formulate, and recommend plans and systems, composed invariably of men who had no special qualifications for the particular duties intrusted to them. Where experts were used, as in the investigation and study of the nation's currency problem with a view to<sup>a</sup> reform, the results of the labor of the experts were submitted for criticism and approval to officials who had knowledge neither of monetary<sup>4</sup> principles nor of actual monetary conditions and needs of the country. And the consequence was that the results obtained, after pains taking and exhaustive study, were rendered negative,<sup>b</sup> permitting thereby the continued existence in the country of the most chaotic<sup>5</sup> and uneconomic currency system ever known.

Two more instances may be cited to illustrate the amateurish spirit of the nation, of the ignorant confidence in the amateur, of the man without special knowledge, training, or experience. Early in 1906 a constitutional commission was appointed to study constitutions of advanced countries with the object of obtaining an understanding of their principles and workings to recommend suitable lines along which China's own constitution might be developed. But the

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of setting in action. <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to the principles of government. <sup>3</sup> A group of persons intrusted with some duty. <sup>4</sup> Pertaining to money. <sup>5</sup> Without order.



commissioners<sup>1</sup> had knowledge neither of jurisprudence<sup>2</sup> nor of the political history and development of the countries which they undertook to study. True, they had attached to the commission, on their tour of "Study and Investigation," men with modern knowledge who might perhaps have been called properly professional men. But then, they acted as mere interpreters or secretaries. No one was a judicial expert as far as was known. The commissioners spent about a year abroad studying, presumably, the political and constitutional institutions of Europe and America. At the end of that period they drew up<sup>c</sup> a set of recommendations for developing and constructing a constitution for China, under which four hundred millions of people were to live as an organized political and social body. To study and understand constitutions and their workings in Europe and America in a year! If the nation, particularly the rulers, believe that this was possible, what credulity, not to speak of naïveté,<sup>3</sup> must be theirs! Perhaps the sending of this commission was not intended to accomplish the purpose announced, but was merely a clever political move to allay the restlessness of the nation. It certainly would be absurd to regard it as a means of preparing the ground for the making of a constitution. No serious political or social policy can be wisely devised by men of such uncertain knowledge of and experience in the modern life of the world. Yet momentous<sup>4</sup> policies have been intrusted to their making. Constructive work leading to fruitful social results could have been

---

<sup>1</sup>Group of persons intrusted with public duties. <sup>2</sup>Science or philosophy of law. <sup>3</sup>Native simplicity. <sup>4</sup>Very important; weighty.



possible with them, perhaps, had they known of the use of experts in the various departments of social activity for their guidance in the formulation of policies.

There is another striking instance of amateurishness in reform and state action. Toward the end of the Manchu dynasty a special naval commission was appointed for the purpose of studying naval conditions and affairs abroad. At the head of it was a prince who, as minister of marine, had the power of formulating the naval policy and providing<sup>1</sup> for the national defense of the country. The investigation and study seemed to have consisted in a sight-seeing tour in navy, dock, and shipyards and in attending banquets. Can anything of value result from such a commission under such amateurish leadership? One would be credulous, indeed, to expect anything.

One may multiply examples of the national amateurish spirit. The instances cited are sufficient, however, to illustrate the pervading<sup>2</sup> character of this national defect. It is not the purpose of the writer merely to criticise but rather to advocate<sup>3</sup> the need of appreciating<sup>4</sup> the professional, the specialist,<sup>5</sup> and the expert in the future reconstruction of the country politically, economically, and socially. In the keen struggles of modern life which depend on organized efficiency for success, the professional, the expert, is a necessity. Accurate knowledge, right methods, the power that comes from long scientific training and discipline, which only the professional can give, will be the only certain means by

---

<sup>1</sup> Furnishing. <sup>2</sup> Extending throughout. <sup>3</sup> Support by argument.  
<sup>4</sup> Valuing. <sup>5</sup> One who has specialized in a certain line of work.



which the nation can be efficiently organized and placed on a solid foundation for progress and growth. In government and administration, finance, education, industry, and commerce, the great pressing<sup>1</sup> need is for the expert, and he will be needed to build upon that foundation which he lays. If proof is demanded to show the power that results from the consistent<sup>2</sup> and persistent<sup>3</sup> use of experts in national economics, one has but to point to modern Germany. In a generation a most powerful state was organized, excelling in social organization, in administration, in industry and commerce, and powerful in war. The world has never seen so marvelous an organization and such a degree of collective efficiency. The success of Germany in all its endeavors is universally<sup>4</sup> admitted<sup>5</sup> to be due to the training and use of experts.

It is almost unnecessary to say that China suffers from the lack of experts. There are indeed some in a few lines, and some are in the making,<sup>4</sup> but the number is absolutely insignificant when compared with the needs of the nation. Is anything being done to meet the need? There is no definite consistent policy on the part of the government to provide for the training of experts among the students that it sends abroad. Indeed, there does not seem to be any kind of educational policy designed to produce definite valuable results. If there is a policy, it is one which seems to be calculated<sup>6</sup> to defeat the end.<sup>6</sup> According to a rule of two or three years ago, the time during which a student may pursue his training is limited

---

<sup>1</sup> Urgent. <sup>2</sup> Firmness or fixedness of action. <sup>3</sup> Continued in spite of everything. <sup>4</sup> Generally. <sup>5</sup> Acknowledged. <sup>6</sup> Expected.



irrespective, generally speaking, of the requirements of the profession for which a student prepares and proposes to follow in the service of his country. It is necessary, it is readily admitted, that some time limit should be set to a student's preparation, but the time allowed must be sufficient to permit him to obtain adequate<sup>1</sup> training in his profession. In some callings<sup>2</sup> it is often necessary for a graduate of the university to serve a period of apprenticeship,<sup>3</sup> if he is to be most proficient<sup>4</sup> in his chosen work. Where he cannot secure practice at home, it is necessary for him to find an opportunity abroad, if possible, to serve an apprenticeship in order to acquire certain mastery of his profession, whether on the railroad in the mill, the factory, the shipyard or the bank. He should be encouraged and aided in obtaining the opportunity for apprenticeship, and he should be subsidized<sup>5</sup> while serving it. One realizes, however, that not all the men could become professionals or experts; indeed there are many who have no inclination or wisdom to try to become one. It should be the function<sup>6</sup> of the educational department of the government to establish a method of selection so that the ambitious and the capable may have the opportunity for specialized professional training, while the opportunity should be open to all who have the qualifications<sup>7</sup> and who make the effort to obtain it.

The wisest economy to the nation, in the end, is to provide for the professional training of students, both

---

<sup>1</sup> Fully sufficient. <sup>2</sup> Vocations. <sup>3</sup> Time of service for one learning a trade. <sup>4</sup> Efficient, producing result. <sup>5</sup> Aided with public money. <sup>6</sup> Work. <sup>7</sup> Attributes which make a person capable of doing a certain kind of work.



abroad and at home. A hundred experts will be more effective for the national service than a thousand men who have been permitted merely to obtain a university education such as the majority of our students studying abroad are getting. These are still amateurs, and they will be only as effective as amateurs in the line of work for which they have had only the beginnings of preparation. One cannot overemphasize the fallacy of the popular notion that a college graduate is adequately trained for any definite work involving<sup>1</sup> thorough and accurate knowledge and skill. He has still before him a hard road of training and discipline, before he can be of any great usefulness.

Equally important is the policy of the nation to use the men trained for particular professions, in the lines for which they are prepared, if the greatest skill is to be developed for the national service. It would be amusing, were it not so serious and pathetic,<sup>2</sup> to contemplate the instances where men were placed to do work for which they had not been trained. A naval architect, for example, is known to have been set to organizing and administering the sanitary<sup>3</sup> service of the capital city in one of the provinces. Not having any knowledge of that line of work, he sent to fellow students in America for literature on the subject of sanitation, in order not to be entirely ignorant of the requirements of the service committed to his charge. While he may have chafed<sup>4</sup> and rebelled under the circumstances and the necessity, he had no alter-

---

<sup>1</sup> Requiring, calling for.    <sup>2</sup> Full of pathos, or conducive to pity  
<sup>3</sup> Pertaining to health.    <sup>4</sup> Fretted.



native.<sup>1</sup> Another man, an excellent civil engineer, having both theoretical and practical training while in America, was placed in one of the offices of the president, as a minor secretary, doing probably the work of an ordinary scribe.<sup>2</sup> What a wanton<sup>3</sup> misapplication<sup>4</sup> of talent and training! What an economic waste! For there is no waste so great as the waste of human talent and human energy.

The compelling<sup>5</sup> need of the nation at the present time is for experts—experts to be rightly used in every department of the national economy. What is necessary now is to have experts trained among the students abroad, and as far as possible among the students at home. For the latter, better organized and equipped<sup>6</sup> professional schools with the best possible faculties,<sup>7</sup> must be organized as soon as practicable. In the end most of the professional men must be trained at home. For a good many years to come it will be found necessary to engage foreign professors who are specialists in their several lines until the nation has had trained a sufficient number of its own sons to carry on the work. To enlist foreign professors of that type, every financial and social advantage should be offered to them, giving them the highest consideration<sup>d</sup> that the nation can give, and receiving in return the best professional efforts and interests.

It is certain that professionally trained men must be had, but the nation requires from them not only

---

<sup>1</sup> Choice between two lines of action. <sup>2</sup> Clerk. <sup>3</sup> Reckless, heedless. <sup>4</sup> Wrongful application. <sup>5</sup> Pressing, urgent. <sup>6</sup> Supplied with necessary means for the work. <sup>7</sup> Teachers.

accurate<sup>1</sup> and thorough knowledge, unfailing skill and high efficiency in their work, but also a broad, clear view of the whole national economy. The demand of the age and the conditions of the nation are for the liberally educated expert. Students should aim to become one of these and the educational authorities of the nation should help them, toward the realization of that end.

National power and national well-being demand the training and the use of the expert.

—*The Chinese Students' Monthly.*

### QUESTIONS

1. What is meant by amateurs?
2. How are foreign experts employed in Chinese state service?
3. What caused the labor of experts in China to become ineffective or unproductive?
4. What was the object of the Chinese government in sending the Constitutional Commission in 1906, and what were the results? Why?
5. Why was the naval commission sent by the Manchu dynasty a practical failure, as far as its real purpose was concerned?
6. Give reasons why experts are a necessity at the present time; and show that the use of expert knowledge helps to make a country strong and progressive.
7. What should be the policy of our government regarding the sending of students abroad to study, and how is this to be attained?
8. Have experts who return to the country been properly used? Show how these experts have been misused.
9. How can we best train experts in our country?
10. What kind of experts could best serve their country?

---

<sup>1</sup> Exact.



## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- 9 a. *With a view to*: with the aim of.  
 „ b. *To render negative*: to make ineffective; to render non-productive.  
 10 c. *To draw up*: to draft; to make a sketch of; to compose in due form.  
 12 d. *In the making*: in progress of becoming; in preparation.  
 „ e. *To defeat the end*: to upset the aim; to render the result abortive.  
 15 f. *To give high consideration*: give best preferment.

## LESSON III

## CHINA AND WESTERN INFLUENCES

PROFESSOR JOHN WILLIAM SCHOLL

*Assistant Professor of German, University of Michigan*

A social and political organization in harmony with<sup>a</sup> the genius<sup>1</sup> of its people is to a nation what personality<sup>2</sup> is to the individual. It represents the highest and best that can be developed out of materials at hand<sup>b</sup> under the conditions which prevail.

Just as individuals differ greatly in hereditary<sup>3</sup> character and talent—the potential<sup>4</sup> factors of personality—so do people differ in those characteristics which are the potential factors of nationality. Just as individuals ought not and cannot be developed toward any one single ideal of personality, but each should be developed into just that individual, peculiar personality which best expresses just his peculiar self, so each nation should not strive to pattern after any other

---

<sup>1</sup> Talent, peculiar character. <sup>2</sup> Individual character. <sup>3</sup> Transmitted from parent to child. <sup>4</sup> Existing in possibility.

national type or any ideal international type of nationality, but should hope and strive to realize just that kind of organization which best expresses its people's character and best insures their welfare and perpetuity.<sup>1</sup>

That the Chinese nation should desire to realize itself in this spirit is natural and right, and all right-minded men among other peoples must sympathize with its every effort to assume such a proper place in the great family of nations.<sup>2</sup>

The great problem for China lies in the fact that this place is in a modern world, a world of modern industry and commerce, a world of almost absolutely complete communication, by steamship, rail, telegraph, telephone, wireless, for which time and space hardly exist as barriers, and in which no dark corners and hiding places are long possible. Isolation<sup>3</sup> is no longer a possibility for any nation, and this often causes profound modification<sup>4</sup> in the organization of a people and its modes of living.

The possession of great natural wealth, agricultural or mineral, the practice of peculiar arts in industry, arouse an eager world that has learned how to ferret out<sup>5</sup> sources of wealth everywhere, and the chance of exploitation<sup>6</sup> becomes a mighty temptation. Self-development is the only alternative,<sup>7</sup> and this implies not merely modern industrial self-development, but the development of the whole national character in the

---

<sup>1</sup> Quality or state of being continuous. <sup>2</sup> Separation. <sup>3</sup> Change.  
<sup>4</sup> Selfish or unfair utilization. <sup>5</sup> Way out.



direction of industrial and commercial rivalry with the astutest<sup>1</sup> modern captains of industry.

Capital is needed. That is a matter of course,<sup>e</sup> and embarrassing enough generally; but methods and men are still more needful, and for these last both information and inspiration, the former first but the latter best, to keep the national life sound and wholesome.

The only course open to China is to learn of other peoples who are masters in these things. Germany herself, when materially and spiritually ruined by the Thirty Years' War,<sup>†</sup> turned to France for help and inspiration, and did not scorn to get help from every available source, ancient, medieval,<sup>2</sup> and contemporary.

I hold no brief for<sup>f</sup> any one nation, nor do I believe that any one nation alone should be chosen as a model, but certainly the English and German languages are to-day the most important keys to the treasure-house of information in respect to applied science,<sup>g</sup> industrial organization, political organization, and over and above<sup>h</sup> these practical things open up the grandest inspirational literatures which the world has ever known.

A nation needs sanitation<sup>4</sup> and medical care to preserve its people from ravages<sup>5</sup> by all sorts of plagues<sup>6</sup> and from general diseases that reduce the average capacity<sup>7</sup> of its people for industrial success and rational<sup>8</sup> enjoyment of life. It needs engineers and trained agriculturists and scientific specialists in all

---

<sup>1</sup> Keenest. <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to the middle ages. <sup>3</sup> Belonging or existing at the same time. <sup>4</sup> Health measures. <sup>5</sup> Devastation, ruin, waste. <sup>6</sup> Epidemics. <sup>7</sup> Ability. <sup>8</sup> Reasonable.



branches of industry to develop the wealth contained in the soil and in deposits of mineral ores. It needs mechanics trained in the largest aspects<sup>1</sup> of manufacturing. It needs men learned, and, above all, wise in the world's history and its lessons, in political science and economic organization, to help develop a national life suited to the needs of its people.

If China does not have these things within herself, as several Western nations have, she can not trust to her own normal tradition to keep pace with<sup>1</sup> the Western nations. She must simply go to these nations as a disciple, not merely for a few years, but for a couple of generations or longer, until a self-perpetuating<sup>2</sup> tradition, with universities, technical schools, industrial, laboratories and political institutions, has been firmly established within her own borders and under the control and management of her own sons.

Even then she must continue, as every leading modern nation does, in constant, immediate touch with<sup>1</sup> all other first class, civilized peoples.

All this implies<sup>3</sup> a considerable body of people in responsible positions, who have not merely once studied in a Western school, but who use the language of one or more Western countries freely enough to read the current writings upon matters in their special fields, whether they be medicine, public hygiene,<sup>4</sup> engineering, metallurgy,<sup>5</sup> manufacturing, political science, economics, sociology, or what not.

---

<sup>1</sup> Phases.    <sup>2</sup> Self-continuing.    <sup>3</sup> Means, involves.    <sup>4</sup> Science of preserving health.    <sup>5</sup> Art of working with metals.



The young Chinese who are eagerly preparing to-day to bear a share in the work of national development and modernization should see to it<sup>k</sup> that they equip<sup>1</sup> themselves well with at least two foreign tongues, the one naturally that of the country in which they study, and one other of a great modern people of the Western family of nations. They can not afford to lag<sup>2</sup> behind the procession a decade or more but must catch the new and vital as quickly as it appears in print.

But all this concerns only the purely material<sup>3</sup> side of national welfare. There is another side which is even more important, though it usually receives less attention. Industrial development, the introduction of machine labor, brings leisure to a nation. What will it do with it? Leisure must not lead to license or idleness, for it is as true now as when the singer of Sweet Auburn† first penned it:

“Ill fares the land, to hastening ills a prey,  
Where wealth accumulates and men decay.”

Men must have a satisfying occupation for their leisure, or it becomes only too readily the proverbial “devil’s workshop.” Self-expression in Art is the noblest thing with which men fill the leisure of living. Where the genius for self-expression is denied, the appreciation of Art is the next noblest occupation for leisure. Such use can become a tonic<sup>4</sup> for character, a preventive of excess<sup>5</sup> in luxury<sup>6</sup> and vice—a salt to keep men from decay.

---

<sup>1</sup> Furnish, supply. <sup>2</sup> Linger, loiter. <sup>3</sup> Physical. <sup>4</sup> That which helps to increase strength. <sup>5</sup> State of going beyond limits, over-indulgence. <sup>6</sup> Free indulgence in anything easy or expensive.



Of all the Arts the literary is the most universal, because its products can be so cheaply manifolded<sup>1</sup> in books and it needs no stage or gallery or concert hall or other costly accessories.<sup>2</sup> It can be brought to every person who has leisure.

Literature has no purpose to teach. It can not preach or make propaganda<sup>3</sup> for a party or clique<sup>4</sup> or church without losing its character as art and forfeiting its own best power of appeal. But in spite of this well accepted fact, that literature must not intend to teach, it has, nevertheless, just this great moral function of teaching as its unique<sup>5</sup> place in human affairs. It is the greatest single element among the forces which transmit the finest acquisitions<sup>6</sup> of civilization, the highest thoughts and emotions, the greatest problems and spiritual conquests, from one generation to the next.

It does this by presenting to the imagination of the reader pictures of life in its highest moments and most pregnant<sup>7</sup> situations, as seen and known by great personalities.

Such pictures of life have the highest authority, for they come out of human experience of the deepest and truest kinds. They are authentic<sup>8</sup> in origin, and their authenticity is further attested<sup>9</sup> by their acceptance and approval as true human pictures by thousands of readers, not merely of the generation that produced them, but, in the case of the greatest books, by hundreds of thousands of readers generation after generation.

---

<sup>1</sup> Multiplied. <sup>2</sup> Aids. <sup>3</sup> Method of spreading doctrine. <sup>4</sup> Party associated for common interests. <sup>5</sup> Without a like or equal. <sup>6</sup> Achievements. <sup>7</sup> Full of results. <sup>8</sup> True, genuine. <sup>9</sup> Testified, proved.



No human agency could be more authentic or more potent<sup>1</sup> for good than great literature. It takes hold of<sup>1</sup> the imagination and the feelings while it informs the mind and cultivates<sup>2</sup> the reason, and these things are the very essence<sup>3</sup> of character building—the development of personality. As the greatness of any nation depends in the last analysis<sup>4</sup> upon its units, it can not be a matter of indifference whether few or many of these units are becoming *personalities*.

One of the greatest accomplishments of modern times has been the internationalization of Art, not merely of music, sculpture and architecture, which already speak an international language to the eye and ear, but of literature, including the drama, which involves poly-lingual<sup>5</sup> activity.

The young Chinese can not safely shut themselves off from these great features of modern life, and should again see to it, that they are equipped with proper powers to share in Western Art. This not only requires facile use of the foreign tongues, but that some, if not many, should busy themselves more widely than usual with the literature of Western nations.

These inspirational<sup>6</sup> sources should not be neglected, as they will be found correlated<sup>7</sup> with the industrial and political life of the West as its spiritual complements<sup>8</sup> without which our type of material existence can never be fully understood.

---

<sup>1</sup> Having power. <sup>2</sup> Trains. <sup>3</sup> Constituent elements. <sup>4</sup> Examination to its component parts. <sup>5</sup> Pertaining to many languages. <sup>6</sup> Pertaining to inspiration, stimulating. <sup>7</sup> Related together. <sup>8</sup> That which help to complete.

My concluding words need only be a warning based upon my opening paragraphs. Imitation is not the ultimate end sought, for China is not to become an imitation Germany, England, France, or America, but *herself*. Information and inspiration from all these Western sources should be used solely in self-realization. How to do it, is the problem of those who know best the essential character of China—her own citizens. Their fate depends upon their success in finding and fulfilling their own national calling.

—*The Chinese Students' Monthly*.

### QUESTIONS

1. Why is it not desirable for China to copy wholesale the civilization of the West?
2. Is it possible for China at the present time to preserve her distinctive national culture? Why?
3. What does the self-development of our nation involve?
4. What are the elements necessary to the development and prosperity of a nation, and which of these are the most essential?
5. Why should the study of English and German be encouraged in our schools?
6. Why is it necessary for China to keep in continual touch with other civilized nations?
7. Explain why our officials in responsible positions must know at least one modern language.
8. Is material civilization sufficient to make a nation great or happy? Why?
9. What benefit does art confer upon the individual or the nation?
10. What function does literature fulfill among the forces of civilization and how?



11. Why does literature possess a high authority, and how is this proved?
12. Why do you think that great literature is a powerful moral agency?
13. What is considered to be one of the greatest accomplishments of modern times?
14. In what way should our knowledge of Western culture be utilized, if not merely for imitation?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |    |    |   |
|----|----|---|
| 17 | a. | <i>In harmony with:</i> in agreement with; in accord with.  |
| ,, | b. | <i>At hand:</i> near by; available.   |
| 18 | c. | <i>Family of nations:</i> specially, a group of nations possessing common arts and common ideals of civilization. |
| ,, | d. | <i>Ferret out:</i> search out.  |
| 19 | e. | <i>A matter of course:</i> a fact, an indisputable question.  |
| ,, | f. | <i>To hold brief for:</i> to speak in favor of.   |
| ,, | g. | <i>Applied science:</i> science as applied to modern arts of life.  |
| ,, | h. | <i>Over and above:</i> above all things.  |
| 20 | i. | <i>To keep pace with:</i> to keep abreast with; to move with the same rapidity.                                   |
| ,, | j. | <i>To be in touch with:</i> to be in contact with; to maintain communication with.                                |
| 21 | k. | <i>To see to it:</i> to take care.  |
| 23 | l. | <i>To take hold of:</i> to control, to sway.  |

## LESSON IV

### THE FOUR CORNER-STONES OF SUCCESS

THEODORE H. PRICE

I have been asked to talk to you about the qualifications that a young man or woman should have in order to secure business success. I am sorry that my subject is thus delimited,<sup>1</sup> for the world is, I am glad to say, coming to regard business success as

---

<sup>1</sup> Fixed the limits of.

a much less accurate measure of a person's ability and worth than many other forms of achievement, and the purchasing power of money expressed in terms of<sup>a</sup> happiness is probably lower to-day than ever before.

The men and women of the twentieth century who are most in the public eye<sup>b</sup> and are most admired and loved are not those who have accumulated<sup>1</sup> great fortunes, but those who have worked to increase the happiness of mankind and the beauty of the world.

It is not necessary, and it would be invidious<sup>2</sup> to mention names; but the fact that no business man has ever been elected President of the United States or secured a place in our Hall of Fame† at the University of New York is significant of the comparative disesteem<sup>3</sup> in which commercial success is held when it is measured against<sup>c</sup> the achievements of great statesmen,<sup>4</sup> soldiers, preachers, authors, artists, inventors, or doctors. Almost any one who will make a list of the twenty men more than ten years dead who are in his opinion best entitled to distinction will be surprised to find that it includes few, if any, who were possessors of great fortunes.

Speaking here in New York the other day, President Wilson said, "Making money is legitimate,<sup>5</sup> but it is not ideal<sup>6</sup>"; and I hope the time is not far off when the desire to succeed in business will not imply a desire for a larger fortune than can be spent without foolish<sup>7</sup> extravagance or injurious self-indulgence.<sup>8</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Amassed, piled up.    <sup>2</sup> Hateful, likely to incur or produce ill-will.  
<sup>3</sup> Disfavor.    <sup>4</sup> Those versed in the art of government.    <sup>5</sup> Lawful.  
<sup>6</sup> Model of excellence.    <sup>7</sup> Excessive.    <sup>8</sup> Act of indulging in one's  
appetites, desires etc.



The accumulation of a competency<sup>1</sup> which will enable us to live in refinement<sup>2</sup> and die in comfort is, of course, a commendable<sup>3</sup> purpose and I shall assume that you want me to tell you what are, in my opinion, the qualifications which will help you most in the realization of that purpose. I am not sure that I can say anything that will be of value. The subject is a trite<sup>4</sup> one.

The four corner stones of all success are self-control,<sup>5</sup> a reasonably good education (which may be self-acquired), industry,<sup>6</sup> and ambition.

I shall assume that you all possess these fundamentals.<sup>7</sup> If you don't you are wasting your time listening to me. You can employ it better by trying to cultivate these qualities.

Everyone understands what they are and how to cultivate or obtain them; and upon the foundation of which they are the corner stones we may proceed to build the edifice<sup>8</sup> of success with confidence.

In its construction we should be careful that its architectural style and purpose harmonize<sup>9</sup> with our ideals. We should select a congenial<sup>10</sup> occupation, and one that accords with<sup>d</sup> our aptitudes<sup>11</sup> and ambition. It is difficult for the boy who wants to be a doctor or a lawyer to content himself as a merchant, or for one who is a natural trader and organizer to be satisfied as a newspaper man. We must have congenial employment in order to be enthusiastic, and enthusiasm is

---

<sup>1</sup> Sufficiency of means of subsistence. <sup>2</sup> Culture. <sup>3</sup> Worthy of praise. <sup>4</sup> Common. <sup>5</sup> Self-restraint. <sup>6</sup> Diligence. <sup>7</sup> Essential qualities. <sup>8</sup> Structure. <sup>9</sup> Agree. <sup>10</sup> That which is naturally adapted. <sup>11</sup> Bent, inclination.



indispensable<sup>1</sup> to anything beyond mediocrity<sup>2</sup>. The etymology<sup>3</sup> of the word is, in itself, an inspiration. It is from two Greek words: *En*—in; and *Theos*—God. When the Greeks said a man was *En Theos*, they meant that he had the divine spirit in him. It was almost the highest compliment they could pay<sup>4</sup> and the faith and determination that can remove mountains is to-day no less than the emanation<sup>4</sup> of an enthusiasm without which we should never do much more than we were compelled to do. But enthusiasm, essential as it is, may lead us into error unless it is balanced by inclusiveness<sup>5</sup> of vision and accuracy of observation.

We must be able to see everything that is visible, and apprehend<sup>6</sup> some things that are invisible, if we are to avoid mistakes, and we must see and apprehend accurately. It will not do to be color-blind<sup>7</sup> or careless as we study the field in which our activities are to be employed. If we do, we may deceive ourselves and others, and our most exhausting efforts will be unrewarded.

Deliberate<sup>8</sup> untruthfulness is far less common than is generally supposed, but many people mistake the facts because they have failed to observe them or have not looked them in the face. They have first deceived themselves and then deceived others. Shakespeare knew this when he said:

“This above all: to thine own self be true,  
And it must follow, as the night the day,  
Thou canst not then be false to any man,”

---

<sup>1</sup> Necessary. <sup>2</sup> Medium quality. <sup>3</sup> Original meaning of a word.  
<sup>4</sup> Act of issuing forth. <sup>5</sup> Comprehensiveness, act of including.  
<sup>6</sup> Understand. <sup>7</sup> Inability to perceive or distinguish certain colors.  
<sup>8</sup> Carefully considered.



and he thus gave poetical form to what must be one of the axioms<sup>1</sup> of the successful man or woman.

When we have learned to see all that there is to be seen, to remember what we see accurately, and to report and record it correctly and fully, we have acquired a habit which enormously increases our value to ourselves and others. But to the inclusive and accurate vision there must be added the thoughtful mind that endeavors to correlate<sup>2</sup> the things seen.

One of the most successful advertisers in this country has adopted the phrase, "There's a reason," as the catchword<sup>3</sup> of his appeal to the public.

If every young man and woman in this country would always say to themselves, "There's a reason" for everything they see, and keep trying to find out what that reason is, the result would be an incalculable<sup>4</sup> advance in the average of human intelligence in the United States.

The careless employee who never looks beyond his nose and never tries to find a new way of doing things is the first one to lose his job when business gets dull<sup>5</sup>, and the last one to be advanced when promotion is possible.

The inclusiveness and accuracy of vision for which I plead is also essential to what is called a sense of proportion and a correct appraisal<sup>5</sup> of life's values. The railway engineer who runs his train to destruction, the pilot who wrecks his ship, and the merchant or

---

<sup>1</sup> Maxims, self-evident and necessary truth. <sup>2</sup> To show or put in mutual relation. <sup>3</sup> Word or phrase caught up and repeated for effect. <sup>4</sup> Beyond calculation, very great. <sup>5</sup> Valuation.



manufacturer who finds himself caught with a heavy stock of high-priced goods on hand are all generally at fault<sup>2</sup> in the same way. They have failed to see the signals, and they are properly classed as failures.

These qualifications—self-control, education, industry, ambition, congenial employment, enthusiasm, and a comprehensively accurate vision—comprise what may be described as the physical and intellectual equipment<sup>1</sup> that is necessary to success in life; but even this combination will not enable us to recognize our greatest opportunities unless we are informed by an imagination that pictures forth the future for us and tempts us to try to grasp it.

The men who have done the really great things in life have been men of imagination—discoverers, inventors, and pioneers<sup>2</sup> in the progress of society everywhere—have been men who were able to visualize<sup>3</sup> the unseen.

It is this gift of imagination that transfigures<sup>4</sup> the business man into an artist, and makes constructive work a pleasure to him long after there is any need for him to work. Probably one reason why American men so often die in the harness<sup>5</sup> is that they are fascinated<sup>6</sup> by the task to which they have set themselves, and are impelled<sup>6</sup> to continue the embellishment<sup>7</sup> and extension of the business structures that they dreamed of in youth, set up in middle life, and regard as still unfinished when they come to die.

---

<sup>1</sup> Attainments. <sup>2</sup> One who goes before, preparing the way for others to follow. <sup>3</sup> Form a mental vision of something not before the eyes. <sup>4</sup> Transforms. <sup>5</sup> Charmed. <sup>6</sup> Strongly or forcibly actuated, or moved. <sup>7</sup> Enrichment.



Certainly there is no part of the earth that stimulates<sup>1</sup> the imagination of the constructive mind more intensely than the United States to-day. Never before in the world's history have a hundred million people, speaking a common language, and most of whom can read and write, been gathered together under one flag. In one respect at least they are animated<sup>2</sup> by the same ideal. It is the improvement of their economic condition. They all want to learn more, chiefly because they seek to increase the comfort and refinement of life for themselves and their children. It is a legitimate ideal, and because it is legitimate it will be realized. In the process of its realization men will earn more and spend more; and it is quite possible that the domestic<sup>3</sup> trade of the United States, conducted to supply the wants of a hundred million people, exceeds that of all Europe, where the population is about four times as great.

Take the consumption of cotton, for instance. In the United States we now use thirty-five pounds per capita,<sup>1</sup> as against an average of only eight pounds per capita for the rest of the world. This means that we have more clothes, tablecloths, and sheets. The same thing is true with regard to sugar. It may be unhealthy, though I doubt it, for sugar is a form of food; but the fact is that the average per capita consumption of sugar in this country is now about eighty-nine pounds a year, against twelve pounds in Italy and forty-five pounds in Germany just before the war. The average consumption of sugar for each man, woman,

---

<sup>1</sup> Excites, rouses.    <sup>2</sup> Quickened, made alive.    <sup>3</sup> Pertaining to home or country.



and child in the United States has increased thirty pounds in the last fifteen years. In many other directions<sup>1</sup> we are spending a great deal more than we did twenty years ago—not because we are more extravagant, but because we have more to spend. We buy 800,000 automobiles a year now, and pay for them nearly \$700,000,000. Ten years ago the automobile was more or less of a curiosity. It is in organizing to satisfy these newly created wants that the business men of the past decade<sup>1</sup> have found their greatest opportunities, and it is in the same direction that the greatest opportunities will be found in the future. Within my own recollection,<sup>2</sup> the population of the United States has more than doubled, and its purchasing power has been multiplied many times. It is altogether possible that many of those here to-day will live to see this country with a population of two hundred millions, whose earning power, increased by a study of efficiency and the use of labor-saving machinery, will sustain<sup>3</sup> a trade five times larger than that of to-day; and it is upon the opportunities of this domestic trade expansion that young men and young women should fix their eyes.<sup>k</sup> Every one of you can in some way secure a participation in the profits that it will yield or the employment that it will provide, and the extent of that participation depends largely upon yourselves, your industry, enthusiasm, and imagination.

But in thus picturing forth the business opportunities that are open to the present generation of young Americans I would not forget to remind you that

---

<sup>1</sup> Ten years.    <sup>2</sup> Remembrance.    <sup>3</sup> Support.



business success, however great, will not bring you happiness unless along with industry, ambition, and imagination you have the sympathy that makes you glad and anxious to help others. It is an old saying that happiness comes from within, but I think it is a misstatement. I never knew a man who was entirely separated from his fellows who was happy. Happiness is a reflex<sup>1</sup> of sympathetic endeavor, and we can't be really happy unless we are trying to make some one else happy. The most beautiful story I ever heard was that of a lady, the wife of an English nobleman, who, in the absence of her husband from home, had found it necessary to employ a new foot-man. When her husband, Sir John, was returning, it became the duty of the footman to meet him at the station, and he asked the lady to describe him, that he should make no mistake and greet the wrong man. She answered: "James, you need not make any mistake. He is a tall man and you will find him helping some one."

Success generally engenders<sup>2</sup> a craving<sup>3</sup> for beauty. Rich men buy pictures; rich women, beautiful jewelry and clothes. Very early in his rise to power Napoleon became a patron of the arts; but there is a form of beauty that is within the reach of every one, however limited his income. It is the beauty of character. Its flower is courtesy, Its fruit is sympathy, and the plant whereon it grows is love — the love that "suffereth long and is kind, that is not puffed up,<sup>4</sup> that vaunteth<sup>5</sup> not itself, that envieth not and rejoiceth in the truth."

---

<sup>1</sup> Reflection.   <sup>2</sup> Produces.   <sup>3</sup> Great longing for.   <sup>4</sup> Inflated with pride or self-esteem.   <sup>5</sup> Boasts.



This sort of love, as Henry Drummond† called it, is the “greatest thing in the world.” Without it success becomes failure, with it failure becomes success.

But I cannot close without improving the opportunity to say just one thing more.

These glorious opportunities that exist in America, the schools in which we are educated, the laws which protect life and property and punish dishonesty—are all made possible by a government in the support and administration of which you and I must make ourselves felt<sup>1</sup> if it is to continue. The young men and women of this generation have so long been accustomed to enjoying the advantages of this government that some of them, I fear, have come to regard it, like the air they breathe, as part of nature’s provision for their welfare, about which they need give themselves no concern<sup>m</sup>. The result is an unconsciousness of civic<sup>1</sup> responsibility and a lack of national feeling that is lamentable.<sup>2</sup>

This is a government of the people and by the people, but it will not much longer be a government for the people unless the people, which means you and me, actively concern themselves about the way the government is administered. Every one of you who has a vote or expects to have one should understand the machinery<sup>3</sup> by which the laws are made and administered in both the state and nation.

He should know who are his representatives in Congress† and the State Legislature.† How many of you do? He should watch their action upon all public

---

<sup>1</sup> Relating to a city or citizen.    <sup>2</sup> Deplorable.    <sup>3</sup> The means by which anything is kept in action, or desired result is obtained.

questions, and when he doesn't approve it, he should write them and say so, and when it comes to election he should vote intelligently and try to get others to do so.

In "The Deserted Village" Goldsmith says:

"Ill fares the land, to hastening ills a prey,  
Where wealth accumulates and men decay,"

and the decay of manhood and the disappearance of opportunity in the United States are absolutely certain to follow our present apathy<sup>1</sup> in regard to the action of our elected representatives unless we are soon awakened to the exercise of our political duty and the individual exertion of our political power.

—*The Outlook.*

### QUESTIONS

1. What class of persons are the most esteemed to-day?
2. How is it proved in the United States that men of fortune are not the most esteemed by the people?
3. What are the four corner stones of success?
4. Why is it necessary that we should select a profession or occupation that accords with our aptitude?
5. Is enthusiasm alone sufficient for a successful career? What else must we have?
6. What kind of habit must we try to acquire in order to increase our value?
7. What kind of people are classed as failures?
8. In what way does imagination play an important part in a successful enterprise?
9. What does the comparative larger consumption of food and other articles in the U.S.A. prove?

---

<sup>1</sup> Indifference.



10. Wherein, generally, lie the great opportunities for successful business?
11. What is the real secret of happiness?
12. What kind of beauty is accessible to all of us?
13. In what way are we, as citizens of the Republic, to discharge our duties to the nation?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |    |    |  |
|----|----|--|
| 26 | a. | <i>In terms of:</i> in the meaning of; as an equivalent of.      |
| „  | b. | <i>In the public eye:</i> prominent in public.                   |
| „  | c. | <i>To measure against:</i> to compare with.                      |
| 27 | d. | <i>To accord with:</i> to be in agreement with.                  |
| 28 | e. | <i>To pay a compliment:</i> to praise, to commend, to flatter.   |
| 29 | f. | <i>When business gets dull:</i> when business is not prospering. |
| 30 | g. | <i>To be at fault:</i> to be wrong.                              |
| „  | h. | <i>To die in harness:</i> to die while in occupation.            |
| 31 | i. | <i>Per capita</i> (lat): per person; for every person.           |
| 32 | j. | <i>In many other directions:</i> in many other ways.             |
| „  | k. | <i>To fix one's eyes:</i> to fix one's attention.                |
| 34 | l. | <i>To make one's self felt:</i> to make one's influence felt.    |
| „  | m. | <i>To give oneself no concern:</i> not to care about.            |

## LESSON V

### CHINA'S INTRODUCTION OF FOREIGN INSTITUTIONS

J. S. BURGESS

At a recent meeting of the Chinese Social and Political Science Association in Peking, the speaker, a distinguished returned student, who had held high official position in the Chinese Government, took the position that the acceptance on China's part of Western social institutions had, on the whole, been a disadvantage to China. A Western constitution, Western military practices, Western law, Western industry had, for the most

part, been accepted in an uncritical<sup>1</sup> manner, and the results of this acceptance had been ill-adapted<sup>2</sup> institutions positively<sup>3</sup> harmful to the Chinese people. After a keen analysis of the present situation, the speaker advocated the careful study of old Chinese institutions, and the selection of social forms modeled on the old traditions and institutions of this country.

On hearing this address one was forced to ask whether the speaker would have made this keen analysis without the Western scientific training which had enabled him to distinguish so clearly the different elements in the civilization about him. It was to a large extent his own thorough inoculation<sup>4</sup> with the principles and methods inherent<sup>5</sup> in the civilization which he condemned, when uncritically accepted by modern China, that enabled him to have the power of analysis which differentiates<sup>6</sup> present-day harmful tendencies from China's ancient culture.

The paper raised the whole question<sup>a</sup> of the contributions, if any, of Western culture to Chinese life. It also suggested another topic which the speaker did not enlarge upon<sup>b</sup> — the reciprocal<sup>7</sup> contribution of the East to the West.

Professor Ross, some years ago, pointed out that a great many of the generalizations<sup>8</sup> regarding fundamental differences of East and West are made without appreciation of history. Professor Ross indicated that the knowledge of conditions in Europe a few hundred years

---

<sup>1</sup> Without judgment. <sup>2</sup> Unsuitable. <sup>3</sup> Absolutely. <sup>4</sup> Introduction into the mind of. <sup>5</sup> Innate, inborn, natural to. <sup>6</sup> Discriminates. <sup>7</sup> Mutual. <sup>8</sup> General inferences or conclusions.



ago would reveal a civilization in many respects identical<sup>1</sup> with the life in China prior to recent Western influence. The fact that modern scientific methods were first discovered and applied in the West would be sufficient to explain many of the so-called Western characteristics. Anyone who has visited the iron works in Hanyang and who contrasts the active, nervous, and efficient mechanics working there with the ordinary Chinese laborer working leisurely and stopping for tea many times a day, can realize the tremendous effect of modern factory processes on the characteristics of the people. The East, living in the pre-scientific age, in multiform<sup>2</sup> customs and habits corresponds identically with Elizabethan† England.

An attempt to revert<sup>3</sup> to primitive<sup>4</sup> processes instead of those of modern science, even though presented as a challenge for the preservation of ancient Chinese culture, is doomed to failure. The scholar may philosophize about the fine personal relations of the old Chinese guild<sup>5</sup> system of industry, or may idealize<sup>6</sup> about Chinese village life, or he may praise the virtues of the ancient Chinese family. In the villages near Shanghai his philosophizing would be of no avail.<sup>c</sup> With the coming of the modern silk factory in Shanghai, no amount of effort in the villages to maintain the ancient guild industry can preserve age-long methods of manufacture. Silk can be produced more cheaply for the world market in the new way.

---

<sup>1</sup> The same, not different. <sup>2</sup> Having many forms. <sup>3</sup> Turn or change back to. <sup>4</sup> Pertaining to early times. <sup>5</sup> A business fraternity or corporation. <sup>6</sup> To give an ideal form, character or value to.



The guild inevitably, after losing its prerogative<sup>1</sup> of determining prices and wages, will disorganize.<sup>2</sup> Small shops will give place to<sup>4</sup> large factories; the simple machines will be thrown into the waste with the setting up of scientific modern devices.<sup>3</sup>

At the same time, what is happening to the Chinese villages? The sturdy young men and women are leaving the farms and going to the city. As in whole sections of India, the countryside is being deprived of its vigorous youth and consequently, the character of country life is changing for the worse.

Nor can the family life of China be left unaffected<sup>4</sup> by the introduction of the Western factory system. Able-bodied women are for the first time, leaving their domain<sup>5</sup> in the home and living in congested<sup>6</sup> quarters in Shanghai in order to bring in a larger income for the family, now necessary because of the rising cost of living. The old father or the gray-haired village sage will only protest in vain at these changes brought about by inevitable<sup>7</sup> economic necessity. A Ghandi† may arise, as in India, and temporarily call people back to the hand loom, but world relationships will make eventual<sup>8</sup> change of primitive processes inescapable.

Our problem of adaptation<sup>9</sup> of things Western in China is, however, deeper than the question of acceptance of Western processes of industry and forms of social and

---

<sup>1</sup> Privilege, right. <sup>2</sup> Destroy the organic structure or regular system of. <sup>3</sup> Contrivances, inventions. <sup>4</sup> Uninfluenced. <sup>5</sup> Particular meaning here is "sphere of influence." <sup>6</sup> Overcrowded. <sup>7</sup> Unavoidable, certain. <sup>8</sup> Final, coming as a consequence. <sup>9</sup> Act of adjusting or fitting.



industrial organization. The fundamental question is the way in which these processes are to be accepted. Probably, at first, a great deal of ill-adaptation is inevitable. These changes have come too quickly for the careful analysis which must be preliminary<sup>1</sup> to any fruitful social adaptation. It is high time for us to carefully discriminate<sup>2</sup> what were the essential values in the ancient Chinese usages<sup>3</sup> which a modern China cannot afford to lose. It is these essential values, not the outward forms, which we wish to preserve. It must also be remembered that this question, in like manner, confronts the people of the West. We, too, have not yet learned how to assimilate<sup>4</sup> a comparatively recent industrial civilization, and are alike in danger of losing our spiritual and cultural<sup>5</sup> heritage.

When Miss Jane Addams was in Peking, in 1923, a group of younger Chinese returned students met to discuss with her some of the social questions of their country. The question was put: "Would it not be possible, by the creation of a new type of industrial organization, (neither the Western factory system nor the Chinese guild system) to synthesize<sup>6</sup> the scientific efficiency of the West with the personal intimacy<sup>7</sup> and corporate<sup>8</sup> unity of the Chinese guild?" Apparently such adaptation had not been thought of by the group. The guild and all its virtues were doomed to go and all the difficulties of the modern factory system, cutthroat

---

<sup>1</sup> Introductory, previous.    <sup>2</sup> Set apart as being different.  
<sup>3</sup> Customs.    <sup>4</sup> Absorb, or appropriate.    <sup>5</sup> Pertaining to culture.  
<sup>6</sup> Put together.    <sup>7</sup> Close familiarity.    <sup>8</sup> A general, collectively one.



competition,<sup>e</sup> class warfare, were the inevitable price to be paid!

While this attitude<sup>1</sup> is being taken in China the disciples of guild socialism<sup>2</sup> in England are experimenting with the Builders' Guild, and the workmen of Germany are making earnest efforts to discover new methods of coöperative production which shall actually conserve<sup>3</sup> the human spirit, creative instincts, and close personal relationships inherent in more primitive forms of organization.

The present need is not for reaction<sup>4</sup> and a slavish return to ancient practices, but for creative adaptation of new processes to such form that there will be the needed combination of scientific efficiency and the enrichment of the human spirit.

If such a result is to be attained, we cannot overemphasize the importance of a such more thorough and careful research<sup>5</sup> into the values of ancient Chinese life, as well as a more critical<sup>6</sup> attitude towards Western civilization.

There may, however, be a deeper contrast between East and West than we have so far indicated. Schweitzer, in his recent work on "Civilization and Ethics," believes that this fundamental contrast consists in a different world view—the West holding to a fundamentally optimistic<sup>7</sup> outlook while the East is at bottom<sup>f</sup> pessimistic.<sup>8</sup> The assumption of Western philosophy is what he terms "world-and-life affirma-

---

<sup>1</sup> Disposition toward. <sup>2</sup> A theory or system of social reform having just distribution of property as its object. <sup>3</sup> Preserve, keep safe. <sup>4</sup> Tendency in opposite direction. Careful or critical inquiry into. <sup>5</sup> Thorough, exact. <sup>6</sup> Hopeful. <sup>7</sup> Lacking in hope.



tion"; there is a conviction<sup>1</sup> that through natural process man can achieve, that out of the materials of life a structure of permanent value may be built. Those from the East, on the other hand, doubt the possibility of solving the riddle<sup>2</sup> about us; they question the inherent goodness of life, and favor the ideals of negation;<sup>3</sup> achievement may be attained, not by struggle but by inner appreciation of values which man does not create, but which are part of a spiritual realm outside of man's control.

To generalize in this way is to do a deep injustice both to the East and to the West. Possibly these fundamental differences, if they exist at all, are also the by-products<sup>4</sup> of the historic processes which happened to bestow upon the West the scientific outlook some generations before it came to the East.

In the rhythm<sup>5</sup> of life in which we all share, the two attitudes above mentioned each have their place. Mere feverish activity and material construction we instinctively<sup>6</sup> feel to be futile;<sup>7</sup> on the other hand, mystical<sup>8</sup> contemplation<sup>9</sup> without content which comes from human experience is meaningless. It is only by the constant alternation<sup>10</sup> from active struggle for accomplishment to receptive<sup>11</sup> contemplation that spiritual achievement is attained.

Why should we not expect that the increasing closeness of contact between these two parts of our

---

<sup>1</sup> Belief. <sup>2</sup> Puzzle. <sup>3</sup> Negativity. <sup>4</sup> Secondary product. <sup>5</sup> Regular succession of motion impulses etc. <sup>6</sup> Naturally, voluntarily. <sup>7</sup> Useless. <sup>8</sup> Implying something beyond human understanding. <sup>9</sup> Act of reflecting. <sup>10</sup> Act of succeeding by turns. <sup>11</sup> Capable of receiving.

globe and their civilizations will bring in enrichment to both and a synthetic<sup>1</sup> type of civilization better than either?

Up to very recently, to most thinkers, it was inconceivable that there could be contributions of importance from alien<sup>2</sup> cultures. Woodrow Wilson in his work on "The State," written twenty years ago, ignores entirely the political developments of the Orient; he assumed that there was no history of political importance not originating<sup>3</sup> in Europe. Increasing facilities of communication and a clearer knowledge of social origins and developments have given us an understanding of historical processes not disclosed to those of an earlier, more isolated<sup>4</sup> generation. Moreover, modern science is beginning to make it possible for us to mold<sup>5</sup> society according to consciously chosen plans. We need, therefore, no longer to mourn the glories of a golden age<sup>6</sup> in the past but to find in the cultures of mankind the world over the elements from which we may construct the civilization of the New Age.

—*The Chinese Social and Political Science Review.*

### QUESTIONS

1. According to your own judgment, is the acceptance of Western social institutions advantageous to China? Give your reasons.
2. In what way does the modern factory system influence the characteristics of the Chinese people?
3. Why do you think it is impossible for the Chinese of the present day to revert to the primitive processes of our ancient culture?

---

<sup>1</sup> Combined.    <sup>2</sup> Foreign.    <sup>3</sup> Beginning.    <sup>4</sup> Separated, solitary.  
<sup>5</sup> Shape, form.



4. What is the urgent need of our society to-day, in order that we may adapt ourselves to the present conditions?
5. What would be the wise and safe way to proceed in our desire to adapt ourselves to things Western?
6. According to Professor Schweitzer, what is the fundamental contrast between the East and the West? In what do these two opposite viewpoints or differences consist?
7. In what way will the adaptation of the two principles of life, (as revealed in the different ideals of the East and West) help our humanity?
8. Do you think that a synthetic type of civilization is possible for the East and the West in the future? What are the reasons for this hope?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |    |    |  |
|----|----|--|
| 37 | a. | <i>Raise the question:</i> put up a question.  |
| „  | b. | <i>Enlarge upon:</i> state in detail.  |
| 38 | c. | <i>Be of no avail:</i> useless, unprofitable.  |
| 39 | d. | <i>Give place to:</i> to make room, yield.   |
| 41 | e. | <i>Cut throat competition:</i> competition by underselling one another, with the purpose of hurting one another's trade. |
| „  | f. | <i>At bottom:</i> essentially.   |
| 43 | g. | <i>Golden Age:</i> the fabulous age of primeval simplicity and purity of manners.  |

## LESSON VI

### OPIUM — A NATIONAL ISSUE

K. T. CHUNG AND GARFIELD HUANG

SUPPRESSION AND RECRUDESCENCE. It will be remembered that after China had suffered for a century from the curse of opium she was able to stamp out<sup>a</sup> poppy<sup>1</sup> growing within her borders in 1917, largely

---

<sup>1</sup> Plant with showy flowers yielding milky juice which is converted into opium.

through the pressure of the agreement signed with Great Britain in 1906. Thereupon anti-opium organizations to a great extent ceased their activities. Owing, however, to the stimulation<sup>1</sup> of the world war the production of cocaine<sup>2</sup> and of opium and its derivatives<sup>3</sup> in other countries was greatly increased. Overproduction beyond the legitimate<sup>4</sup> medicinal needs of the world has led to large quantities of these foreign drugs finding their way into China. During the same period, China has not been able to enforce the law forbidding the planting of the poppy and the traffic and use of opium and narcotics,<sup>5</sup> and as a result of the constant fighting between different militarists the planting of the poppy and the trade in opium has been revived<sup>6</sup> to a great extent.

ESTIMATES. The League of Nations† accepted the estimate of the International Anti-Opium Association of Peking that in the year 1924 fifteen thousand tons of opium were produced in China. Our veteran anti-opium leader, Dr. Wu Lien-teh, estimated only seventy-five hundred tons. Even this latter figure, however, shows clearly the seriousness of the present opium situation in China. The famine which is now taking place in Yünnan, Kweichow, Szechwan, Hunan and part of Kiangsi, is largely due to the overproduction of the poppy which has directly occupied the fields formerly engaged in the cultivation of rice, wheat and other

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of encouraging or urging. <sup>2</sup> A powerful alkaloid, obtained from the leaves of cocoa having the power to produce insensibility to pain. <sup>3</sup> A substance derived from another substances. <sup>4</sup> Lawful. <sup>5</sup> Poisonous drugs, which are used in large quantities producing destructive results. <sup>6</sup> Restored.



grains. In many provinces, especially Fukien, Szechwan, Yünnan, Jehol and Hunan, opium is cultivated under the pressure of military and civil authorities as a means of raising revenue for armies. The immense amount of taxes collected therefrom has in many cases been the cause of fighting between different army factions.<sup>1</sup> Under such circumstances few farmers or merchants can avoid participation in the cultivation of and trade in opium if they want to carry on business.

SMUGGLING. Aside from locally produced opium, China is also the consumer of a large quantity of foreign opium and other narcotics, smuggled<sup>2</sup> in from other countries. Not less than thirty tons of morphia, heroin<sup>3</sup> and cocaine are smuggled into China annually, according to Dr. Wu Lien-teh's estimate. The quantity of foreign opium seized by the Chinese Maritime Customs amounted to more than 85,800 pounds in 1924. The yearly import stands above 20,000 cases, which are worth 100,000,000 Haikuan taels. Coast and river steamers flying foreign flags are the agencies for the transportation of these poisonous drugs. The evil results wrought thereby are manifested in the family, social, industrial and political life of present-day China. The increase in the number of suicides, in kidnapping, robbery, banditry, prostitution,<sup>4</sup> gambling and concubinage, can be in most if not all cases, traced back to the influence of opium and narcotics. This evil force is, in a most serious way, undermining<sup>5</sup> the will

---

<sup>1</sup> Cliques or parties. <sup>2</sup> Conveyed or introduced secretly. <sup>3</sup> A white crystalline  $C_2H_23O3N$ , an acetyl derivative of morphine. It is used, chiefly in coughs and bronchitis. <sup>4</sup> Act of practising lewdness. <sup>5</sup> Sapping, ruining.



power and moral integrity<sup>1</sup> of the Chinese people as a whole. Young people are found everywhere unable to resist the temptation of huge fortunes, which under ordinary circumstances would take generations to make, but which can, through the smuggling of, and trade in, opium and other narcotics, be acquired within a short space of time. This tendency threatens to bring destruction to our race if left unchecked.

PEOPLE'S ANTI-OPIUM MOVEMENT. August 5, 1924, was a red letter day<sup>b</sup> in the history of the People's Anti-Opium Movement in China. Untiring efforts spent by the officers of the Anti-Narcotic committee of the National Christian Council during that year had gathered together the representatives of more than thirty organizations of national importance and representing different walks of life, and had brought into being<sup>c</sup> on that day the National Anti-Opium Association of China. Since then this organization has conducted a nation-wide movement against opium. It has sprung into prominence in a very short time, and now commands the attention of the whole world.

CHINA AT GENEVA.<sup>†</sup> It is needless to remark that the Chinese Government was more interested in the Chekiang-Kiangsu and Fengtien-Chihli wars than in the International Opium Conferences called under the auspices of the League in Geneva in 1924. The situation was very grave in China, not only on account of her unpreparedness but also because military leaders in a number of provinces were openly enforcing poppy

---

<sup>1</sup> Uprightness.



cultivation. Opium dens were found in big cities under police protection; opium and narcotics were smuggled in under armed guards,—in a word, the suppression laws were totally neglected or defied. Many of China's friends were disappointed over the situation, especially the late Sir John Jordan, formerly H. B. M. Minister to China, who remarked shortly before the conference was called that China's public opinion concerning opium was dead. The National Anti-Opium Association found it necessary to arouse the people's attention, to wake them up to face the situation. The Association is fully aware that if there is going to be success in the fight against opium in China, the Chinese people must play the leading role.<sup>a</sup> China must show to the world her ability to set her house in order so that she can stamp out the importation of illicit<sup>1</sup> drugs from abroad. And is it not true that the world will not be able to limit the production to medicinal<sup>2</sup> needs if the Chinese people are not keenly interested and well prepared to coöperate?

POPULAR CAMPAIGN. With this purpose in view, the Association started a nation-wide campaign<sup>3</sup> against opium and narcotics in the fall of 1924. This campaign marked the first people's uprising against that great evil. A National Anti-Opium Day was set for September 27, 1925, and observed by over nine hundred cities and towns throughout the whole nation. A petition to the Peking Government and the Geneva Conference voicing the people's aspirations against opium, was signed by 4,265 bodies representing 4,663,979 people. With this backing,

---

<sup>1</sup> Unlawful, prohibited.    <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to medicine.    <sup>3</sup> A series of operations or undertakings.



Mr. T. Z. Koo went to Geneva as a people's representative and was given a chance to speak to the conferences. Dr. Saoko Alfred Sze, the government's chief delegate, worked in close coöperation with Mr. Koo who thus represented Chinese public opinion. Mr. Koo was also well supported by Christian opinion in Europe which considered his speech to the conference a "prophet's voice." Through his efforts much interest was aroused in Europe regarding the people's Anti-Opium Movement of China. Many friends of China were watching the situation with keen interest and hoped that the revival<sup>1</sup> of China's public opinion against opium would mark the beginning of a victorious war on the narcotic evil.

With regard to the two conferences, which were sitting for over three months, the results are disappointing, especially that of their attitude towards China. For the following four reasons, China withdrew from both conferences ;

1. The conference adopted no measures to reduce actually the production of raw opium, to decrease the number of addicts<sup>2</sup> by means of registration,<sup>3</sup> and to control the traffic in opium.

2. The conference stands for opium monopoly as the only means to control the sale of opium. China's view is fundamentally<sup>4</sup> different from this. She stands for total suppression, which can never be accomplished through a monopoly.

3. The powers possessing colonies in the East are dependent upon opium as the source from which nearly

---

<sup>1</sup> Restoration. <sup>2</sup> Those habituated (to). <sup>3</sup> Act of recording. <sup>4</sup> Essentially.



half of their revenue is derived and are therefore unwilling to make such financial sacrifices for the sake of humanity.

4. The decision of the powers concerned to make the beginning of the period of fifteen years, during which the traffic in opium is to be gradually reduced until it is totally suppressed, depend upon previous evidence of China's ability adequately<sup>1</sup> to deal with her own situation and not upon a demand for such evidence from any other country.

A DOMESTIC PROBLEM. From the experience of their delegates to the Geneva Conference, the Chinese people have come to realize that the task before them of ridding their country of opium, although an international problem, is first of all a question affecting themselves. In a way they are disappointed with the "success," or rather failure, of these conferences, but in a way it has made them the more firmly resolved to fight their own way out. To sum up, the Geneva Conferences had no small influence on the People's Anti-Opium Movement of China. In the first place, the leaders of the nation strongly urged that this movement go on under whatever circumstances—it must go on in full swing<sup>2</sup> until China is freed from the curse of opium. In the second place, besides getting at facts, promoting ameliorative<sup>3</sup> work, doing publicity and propaganda<sup>3</sup> work, this movement must center its activities in the carrying on of education, which is the only means of assuring the effective enforcement of law. It is, therefore, going to

---

<sup>1</sup> Sufficiently.    <sup>2</sup> Producing improvement.    <sup>3</sup> Propagating principles.



undertake a piece of comprehensive<sup>1</sup> and sustained<sup>2</sup> anti-opium work covering every phase of this evil. Plans for a nation-wide campaign of education throughout schools, extending over at least four student generations of four years each, are being made in the hope that, supplemented by other methods, the coming generation of young people in China will be thoroughly aware of the evils resulting from the abuse of these drugs and will be fired with the determination to rid China therefrom. At the same time the Association proposes to reach the adult population by such popular educational methods as may be within its power, since it is of the opinion that under a democracy nothing else than an enlightened public opinion can win the fight against a traffic, the financial returns from which are so very great. For this purpose, the home, the popular education schools, community<sup>3</sup> organizations, clubs and professional associations, are all called upon to coöperate. For purposes of practical efficiency<sup>4</sup> the work will be blocked off into five year periods, the first five years to lead up to the next International Conference in 1929.

MONOPOLIES. One of the most strenuous<sup>5</sup> fights which the Association has had to put on since the Geneva conferences was that against the opium monopoly proposed to the Peking Government by politicians shortly after the conference of 1925. The Association, being fully informed that the motive of such a proposal was no other than to raise funds, and also partly a

---

<sup>1</sup> Including many things. <sup>2</sup> Continued. <sup>3</sup> Society. <sup>4</sup> Effectiveness. <sup>5</sup> Earnest, eagerly waged.



result of international political complications,<sup>1</sup> made every effort to arouse public opinion against this legalized<sup>2</sup> traffic which would at once have overwhelmed any effort to rid China of the evil. The Association was of the opinion that an opium monopoly, if well-administered, would effect a gradual reduction of the number of addicts and in time fully suppress the traffic, but it was very doubtful as to the advisability of establishing this at the present time. It is apparent that, once established, it would open the way for every military leader to openly raise money by means of legally enforcing cultivation<sup>3</sup> and traffic, of encouraging smoking,—things which are to-day done secretly by only some of the militarists. On the above grounds the Association sent protests to the Peking government in letters, petitions and, lastly, in the person of Dr. R. Y. Lo. The Association's constituent<sup>4</sup> bodies, sympathetic individuals, and branch associations rose in response to this action. Special pamphlets and manifestoes<sup>5</sup> were issued by the Association and considerable interest was aroused. The public opinion thus aroused has gained the victory over this evil proposal. Both the chief executive and the minister of the interior personally assured the Association of their decision to kill the proposal of a legalized opium monopoly.

GENERAL SITUATION. Recently a number of provincial authorities have tried to raise funds by means of enforcing poppy cultivation, protecting traffic in opium and narcotics, with dreadful results. Among these

---

<sup>1</sup> Entanglement complexities. <sup>2</sup> Made lawful. <sup>3</sup> Act of growing.  
<sup>4</sup> Component. <sup>5</sup> Declarations, announcements.



provinces are Yünnan, Fukien, Hupeh, Kiangsu, Anhwei and several others. The Association being fully informed regarding the misgovernment of these militarists, published the news in the papers and sent letters and telegrams of protest to each one of them, besides urging local organizations in these provinces to work in close coöperation with the Association. It is needless to say that most of these protests brought no direct results, but in some cases it seems that the pressure that this Association brought to bear<sup>1</sup> has created considerable inconvenience; and most, if not all, of them have come to realize that public opinion cannot be overlooked.<sup>1</sup> In one particular province where plans were all laid to collect an opium tax in a semi-official way, the militarists were very much disturbed after the Association's actions and finally decided to give up the plan in order to preserve their names. It is hoped that such a strong public opinion concerning the question of opium will be gradually built up that it will overwhelm the forces backing this great evil.

COÖPERATION WITH EDUCATIONAL BODIES. The Association made an appeal to the Association for the advancement of education at its annual meeting in Taiyüan, 1925, urging them as an educational body and as a constituent body of the N. A. O. A. to appoint a committee to work with the Association on the matter of Anti-Opium material to be included in textbooks for middle and primary schools. The result was the appointment of a special committee, with whom this

---

<sup>1</sup> Neglected.



association is working on textbook material. The Association made the same appeal to the Popular Education Association, which has already taken steps to include in their textbooks material on the evils of opium and other narcotics. It is hoped that through these channels the danger of opium will be appreciated<sup>1</sup> by the younger generation, upon whose shoulders the future of China rests.

OTHER METHODS. Another important means which the Association has employed with great success for the education of the public is the observance<sup>2</sup> every year of the first week in October as National Anti-Opium Week. The response to this call was nation-wide and people in all walks of life were keenly interested in it. Lectures, parades, mass meetings, theatrical performances, burning of opium and other narcotics, and other forms of demonstration<sup>3</sup> took place in most of the cities throughout the country. Special numbers on opium were published on that day by many magazines and even by some leading newspapers. The insatiable<sup>4</sup> demand for the Association's various publications from every part of the country shows that the campaign is progressing in spite of the many obstacles to this kind of a popular movement. A very interesting feature of the work which the Association is attempting to take up is visual<sup>5</sup> education through motion pictures. Last fall a sum of \$1,000 was contributed by a prominent Chinese merchant in New York for prizes for the best

---

<sup>1</sup> Estimated justly. <sup>2</sup> Act or ceremony. <sup>3</sup> Outward expression of feeling. <sup>4</sup> Incapable of being satisfied. <sup>5</sup> Pertaining to sight.



scenario<sup>1</sup> and the best story, on the condition that the Association raise enough funds to make such a picture within one year. The Association accepted the contribution and immediately appointed a special committee on motion picture education which included the leading men in the Shanghai motion picture industry. As the Chinese people are taking to motion pictures more and more, this picture will do much good, it is thought, in the way of publicity and education. The Association is planning for the production of at least one picture on this subject each year.

**FUTURE PROGRAM.** The Association's task is by no means an easy one. We are fully aware of the many difficulties which have to be faced. The five year educational program which the Association is initiating<sup>2</sup> to lead up to the next International Anti-Opium Conference in 1929 will mark the first period of a continuous fight. This program, which is chiefly educational, will follow four main lines: the suppression of poppy cultivation; the suppression of traffic in opium and other narcotics; the suppression of the use of opium and other narcotics; and investigation,<sup>3</sup> gathering of statistics<sup>4</sup> and work among overseas<sup>5</sup> Chinese. It is proposed to educate the younger generation, as well as adults,<sup>6</sup> in order to build up a strong public opinion which will demand the enforcement of law and a high moral standard generally in the country. The

---

<sup>1</sup> Place, time, circumstance in which any thing occurs, or is imagined to occur. A motion picture story. <sup>2</sup> Introducing, originating. <sup>3</sup> Examination. <sup>4</sup> Classified facts given in tabular form. <sup>5</sup> Abroad. <sup>6</sup> Grown-up persons.



Association expects to promote ameliorative work to help reduce the number of addicts. It is hoped that through the coördinated efforts of various organizations such results will be accomplished in the coming few years, that China's case will not be taken by the posers as an excuse at the next International Opium Conference in 1929 for unwillingness to adopt adequate measures against the production of and trade in opium and other narcotics. And it is also hoped that these efforts of the Association will obtain response and coöperation by popular organizations in the other nations concerned, so that, in the course of time, China will be free not only from native opium but from the foreign article also.

—*China Christian Year Book.*

(Fourteenth issue)

### QUESTIONS

1. State reasons for the revival of opium in China after 1917.
2. To what is famine in China largely due, and what provinces are now affected? Why do the militarists force the farmers to plant opium?
3. How much foreign opium has been yearly imported to China, and how much money has the country wasted on it?
4. What are the results wrought by these poisonous drugs?
5. Describe the opium condition in China to-day, and give your idea as to the most effective method of stamping out this evil.
6. What has the National Anti-opium Association tried to do since its establishment?
7. What were the reasons which led China to withdraw from the conferences in Geneva?

8. In what way did the Geneva conferences influence the anti-opium movement in China?
9. Do you consider opium monopoly, as proposed by the Peking government, a good method of controlling opium? Give your reasons.
10. Show that public opinion is the most effective factor in the decision of any great question.
11. Name the various practical ways which the Anti-Opium Association is employing to stamp out opium.
12. What is the program which the association has planned for its future work?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |    |    |   |
|----|----|---|
| 44 | a. | <i>To stamp out:</i> crush, suppress.                           |
| 47 | b. | <i>A red letter day:</i> a day that is fortunate or auspicious. |
| „  | c. | <i>To bring into being:</i> to cause to exist, give birth.      |
| 48 | d. | <i>To play a role:</i> to take a part.                          |
| 50 | e. | <i>In full swing:</i> in complete operation.                    |
| 53 | f. | <i>To bring to bear:</i> to apply, bring into use.              |

## LESSON VII

### MORAL EVOLUTION

RICHARD SWANN LULL

*Professor of Vertebrate Paleontology in Yale University*

The term evolution,<sup>1</sup> as it is usually applied, refers to the process whereby, out of one or a few primitive forms of life, all of the various animals and plants which now people our globe have arisen. Whatever the process may have been, the result is a greater and greater degree of perfection or adaptation<sup>2</sup> to the conditions of life in which the plant or the animal is found. But, as

<sup>1</sup> Development.      <sup>2</sup> Act of suiting or fitting oneself to a place or situation.



Darwin showed sixty years ago, more animals and plants are born as the offspring of any species<sup>1</sup> than can possibly find food to eat and space to grow in, should all live to maturity,<sup>2</sup> reproduce their kind, grow and so on for a number of generations.<sup>3</sup> In other words, the rate of increase of the slowest breeding forms is such as to exhaust<sup>4</sup> the possibilities of food and space in comparatively few generations. Thus there arises the keenest sort of competition for these very necessary things, not only among creatures of the same sort, but also among different races of animals and plants, and this competition Darwin† called the "struggle for existence."

This struggle is so intense that the great majority of all young organisms perish and comparatively few survive to mate and reproduce their kind. And while chance in large measure determines which shall survive and which shall perish, the weeding out is not utterly indiscriminate,<sup>5</sup> but it takes, on the average, those which are less fit, which do not conform<sup>6</sup> quite so well with the needs of their existence—the weaker, those of poorer weapons or duller brain—and allows the fitter to survive.<sup>7</sup> Hence the rapid increase in numbers necessitates the struggle for existence, as a result of which Nature selects the fittest to survive by eliminating<sup>8</sup> the unfit. Thus the successive steps are known as the struggle for existence, natural selection,† and the survival of the fittest.

---

<sup>1</sup> Variety. <sup>2</sup> Ripeness. <sup>3</sup> Successions of descent, stock. <sup>4</sup> Drain, wear out. <sup>5</sup> Without distinction. <sup>6</sup> Agree. <sup>7</sup> Outlive. <sup>8</sup> Expelling, weeding out.



Brute qualities are therefore at a premium,<sup>a</sup> and the three needs which are instinctively sought by every creature are safety or defense; food getting, which may imply offensive strife; and procreating,<sup>1</sup> although the last is not for the well-being of the individual—it often may have the reverse<sup>2</sup> effect—but for the continuance of the race.

These laws which govern all other created beings apply just as well to savage man and were just as necessary to him in his evolution from his prehuman<sup>3</sup> ancestry as they are for any other race. With civilized man, however, other laws should operate—those which we know as ethical<sup>4</sup> or moral laws, which are in some respects diametrically opposed<sup>b</sup> to the natural laws governing the plant and brute creations.

Huxley† in his address on “Evolution and Ethics,” delivered in 1893, sums the matter up most admirably. He says: “Man, the animal, in fact, has worked his way to the headship of the sentient<sup>5</sup> world, and has become the superb<sup>6</sup> animal which he is, in virtue of<sup>c</sup> his success in the struggle for existence.† The conditions having been of a certain order, man’s organization<sup>7</sup> has adjusted itself to them better than has that of his competitors in the cosmic<sup>8</sup> strife. In the case of mankind, the self-assertion,<sup>9</sup> the unscrupulous<sup>10</sup> seizing upon all that can be grasped, the tenacious<sup>11</sup> holding of all that can be kept, which constitute<sup>12</sup> the essence<sup>13</sup> of the struggle for

---

<sup>1</sup> Reproducing. <sup>2</sup> Opposite. <sup>3</sup> Before the human. <sup>4</sup> Moral. <sup>5</sup> Possessing feelings or sensations. <sup>6</sup> Grand, magnificent. <sup>7</sup> Organism. <sup>8</sup> Pertaining to the world or universe. <sup>9</sup> Maintenance of oneself. <sup>10</sup> Unprincipled. <sup>11</sup> Holding fast. <sup>12</sup> Form, make up. <sup>13</sup> Constituent substance.



existence, have answered. For his successful progress, throughout the savage state, man has been largely indebted to those qualities which he shares with the ape and the tiger; his exceptional physical organization; his cunning, his sociability,<sup>1</sup> his curiosity, and his imitateness; his ruthless<sup>2</sup> and ferocious<sup>3</sup> destructiveness, when his anger is roused by opposition.

“But, in proportion as men have passed from anarchy<sup>4</sup> to social organization, and in proportion as civilization has grown in worth, these deeply ingrained<sup>5</sup> serviceable qualities have become defects. After the manner of successful persons, civilized man would gladly kick down the ladder by which he has climbed. He would be only too pleased to see ‘the ape and the tiger die.’ But they decline to suit his convenience; and the unwelcome intrusion<sup>6</sup> of these boon companions of his hot youth into the ranged<sup>7</sup> existence of civil life adds pains and griefs, innumerable and immeasurably great, to those which the cosmic process necessarily brings on the mere animal. In fact, civilized man brands<sup>8</sup> all these ape and tiger promptings<sup>9</sup> with the name of sins: he punishes many of the acts which flow from them as crimes; and, in extreme cases, he does his best to put an end to the survival of the fittest of former days by axe and rope.”

The question which naturally presents itself is this: If these ape and tiger characteristics are the result of evolution, whence is it that man receives the moral

---

<sup>1</sup> Ability to mix with fellowmen. <sup>2</sup> Merciless. <sup>3</sup> Fierce. <sup>4</sup> Without order. <sup>5</sup> Inwrought. <sup>6</sup> Encroachment. <sup>7</sup> Orderly. <sup>8</sup> Marks. <sup>9</sup> Impulses.

attributes<sup>1</sup> that prompt him to condemn the others as sins? Can these higher qualities be considered as the result of evolution guided, perhaps, by a higher power, or of direct supernatural origin?<sup>d</sup> One might infer the latter, were man the only creature who shows anything comparable to these higher virtues, but they are not exclusively his, although he has certainly developed them to the highest degree. Many of these so-called moral traits<sup>2</sup> are found among the forms, which, like man, have developed a communal<sup>3</sup> life, and are a direct outcome of that method of life association. We should therefore turn our attention to the development of animal communalism.

Animals, so far as their lives are concerned, may be solitary, gregarious,<sup>4</sup> or communal. Those which are solitary live out their own life without association with their fellows except, perhaps, during the mating season, but not always then. Gregarious forms are those which, like the cattle or seals, band together for mutual protection or to aid each other in the getting of food, but which have nothing comparable to a social system except that they generally submit to the leadership of the strongest and most aggressive<sup>5</sup> male, the patriarch<sup>6</sup> of the herd. Gregarious species are very common types, on the other hand, and are extremely rare, only certain of the insects and mankind ever having developed this mode of life.

---

<sup>1</sup> Characteristics.    <sup>2</sup> Characteristics.    <sup>3</sup> Pertaining to community of society.    <sup>4</sup> Tending to flock together.    <sup>5</sup> Disposed to attack.  
<sup>6</sup> Head of family, elder.



Among solitary forms the struggle for existence is keen and there seems to be nothing among them comparable to moral evolution, unless we consider parental care of the young such a thing. Many low forms of sea life, such, for instance, as the starfishes and sea urchins, do not even show that, since the male and female elements are simply discharged into the surrounding water, where the eggs are fertilized<sup>1</sup> and develop without the parents being aware of their existence, for often the developing young, which have feeble swimming powers, are swept away at once by the action of the waves and ocean currents.

In many cases, however, there is great maternal solicitude<sup>2</sup> and the young are tenderly fed and trained in the way they should go. But even this seems due rather to a biological<sup>3</sup> instinct than to any higher trait, as a curious illustration will show. There is a group of large sea birds known as pelicans which subsist<sup>4</sup> entirely on the fish they capture at sea. These birds habitually nest on an island off the coast of Florida where they are protected from hunters by the United States government. They build their nests on the ground and, when the young have hatched, feed them with fish which the parents catch and bring home in the large pouch which lies beneath the beak. The young are absolutely dependent on their parents for food, for they cannot catch fish for themselves until they can fly, and of course flight is impossible until the wing feathers have grown.

---

<sup>1</sup> Made capable of producing, fruitful. <sup>2</sup> Anxiety. <sup>3</sup> Pertaining to biology or science of life. <sup>4</sup> Feed.



One year visitors to the island were amazed to see the young birds all huddled together on one side, all starving, some very weak and others already dead, while their parents were standing by themselves, totally unconcerned with the sufferings of their young. It seems as though their instinct ran in a definite biological cycle,<sup>1</sup> every season prompting the birds to make their long journey to Pelican Island, build their nests, lay their eggs, hatch them and feed the young until old enough to fly, when the instinct fails and no further notice is taken of them. Generally the instinct lasts long enough to complete the rearing of the young, but this season the birds must have been delayed in their journey or mating, possibly by the weather, so that the cycle which had only a certain time to run was completed before the young were feathered—to their destruction. This shows that in some instances, at least, the so-called parental affection, which in humanity rises to the highest and noblest of virtues, may be simply an instinct of limited duration<sup>2</sup> which has arisen for the future continuation and well-being of the race.

Gregarious animals, on the other hand, often carry mutual aid to such an extent that it resembles human brotherly love very closely. With wolves there seem to be some customs, observed by all, to prevent injury to their fellows when they hunt in packs; but it seems to be simply a temporary cessation<sup>3</sup> of their private wars, for the general good, which is broken at once if any member of the pack becomes seriously injured, for

---

<sup>1</sup> Interval of time.    <sup>2</sup> Length of time.    <sup>3</sup> Act of ceasing.



then his mates turn upon him, destroy and devour him. And yet, as Huxley says, they must have some deeply ingrained good qualities, for the domestic dog, which is a descendant of a wolf-like ancestry, shows virtues such as devotion and fidelity, in addition to his courage and intelligence, which are comparable to the noblest of human qualities.

But it is among the communal animals that the higher moral qualities are best displayed, so that it would seem that with them, as with humanity, such virtues are the direct outcome of this, the highest type of animal association. Communalism means more than gregariousness, in that, in the latter, except for the choice of a leader, there is no division of labor<sup>1</sup> among the individuals, whereas in the former, there is division of labor, and hence some form of social organization is always found.

As I said before, only the insects and mankind have ever attained it, each group being the culmination<sup>2</sup> of a long evolutionary line. Among insects, which are more numerous in kinds than all of the other animals and plants put together, only a few, the so-called white ants or termites of the tropics, the true ants, and the wasps and bees, are communal. Among the last, the honey or hive bees in particular, the solidarity of organization is wonderfully shown. Here there are three sorts of individuals, of which the first is the so-called queen, really the mother, as she has no governmental function.<sup>3</sup> Her duties are entirely those of procreation and, as she lives for several years, she may be the parent of

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of reaching the highest point.    <sup>2</sup> Performance.



thousands of offspring. Only one adult queen is found in a given hive at any one time. Then there are the drones,<sup>1</sup> half a thousand in number, of which but one is destined to become the father of a future colony, although all are potentially<sup>2</sup> so. The reason for their large number is that when a young queen goes forth on her mating flight she may meet a drone almost at once, and thus reduce the risk of her own destruction. The drones fulfill no other economic function in the colony and are suffered to live only while food is plentiful, dying or being destroyed for the general good when food becomes scarce. The workers, which are undeveloped females, are by far the most numerous, and their duties are varied and extensive, for they gather food, build the comb, make and store the honey, feed the queen, collect the eggs and place them in the brood cells, feed the young, ventilate,<sup>3</sup> warm, and defend the hive, and control the number of queens, drones, and future workers. These varied tasks are performed by all the workers, although the domestic duties are given to the younger ones and only when they are older do they go forth to forage.<sup>4</sup> The political organization is that of an old-time democracy wherein all of the workers are concerned in the government. Patriotism, devotion to duty, forgetfulness of self, labor for the good of the community, without hope of personal reward or aggrandizement<sup>5</sup> — what higher virtues could there be than these? And yet they are all highly characteristic<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Male of bees. <sup>2</sup> Existing in possibility. <sup>3</sup> Open or expose to free passage of air. <sup>4</sup> Wander in search of food. <sup>5</sup> Increase of honor, benefit, etc. <sup>6</sup> Peculiar, distinctive.



of these humble insects. And if such attributes are, as they seem to be, the direct outcome of communal life, evolution is productive of moral and ethical traits as well as of attributes of the ape and tiger! The brute qualities in mankind are relics of the days before communal life began—they are those of the gregarious or of the solitary animal; but with the communal life came the possibility of higher things and the old virtues became defects. If man would be higher than the insects in the evolution of morality he has to abandon the idea of international strife, the struggle for existence, the doctrine that might makes right<sup>f</sup>; for more patriotism and devotion to one's fellowmen, if they be of the same community, are shown by these lowly creatures. It is only by the development of a broad feeling of brotherhood toward all mankind, of Christlike charity to men and nations of whatever race or creed, that moral evolution on the part of humanity can reach its highest goal.—*The Chinese Students' Monthly*.

### QUESTIONS

1. What is the ordinary meaning of evolution and what is the result of evolution?
2. Explain the cause of the struggle for existence according to Darwin?
3. State the process or principle of natural selection and the survival of the fittest.
4. What are the three needs which every creature instinctively seeks to fulfill?
5. To what kind of man are these laws especially applicable?
6. What kind of law or laws are applied to civilized people for self-preservation?

7. How did man attain to his present position in the animal world? and what constitutes the essence of the struggle for existence?
8. What becomes of these savage instincts in common with the lower animals when man becomes civilized?
9. And how are they looked upon?
10. Are moral characteristics exclusively the possession of mankind?
11. Name the three great classes of animals from the point of view of living, and define the method of each kind of life.
12. In which form of life is moral evolution very low? Prove by example or illustration.
13. What fact do you deduce from the life of the pelican?
14. What kind of pact do you observe in some gregarious animals like wolves?
15. What are the ingrained virtues found in dogs and horses?
16. Prove that the higher moral qualities and social order come from communalism.
17. What kinds of insects may be truly termed communal?
18. Describe the social organization and function of the white ants or termites.
19. What should we, as members of the human family do, to be above the insects in morality?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |    |    |  |
|----|----|--|
| 59 | a. | <i>At a premium:</i> highly valued.  |
| „  | b. | <i>Diametrically opposed:</i> in direct opposition.  |
| „  | c. | <i>In virtue of:</i> because of.   |
| 61 | d. | <i>Supernatural origin:</i> divine origin, or source.  |
| 64 | e. | <i>Division of labor:</i> a modern economic principle of specialization.   |
| 66 | f. | <i>Might makes right:</i> the principle by which one dominates and exploits another by virtue of superior strength, as opposed to the moral principle of "Right is Right" or the principle of justice. |



## LESSON VIII

## BARBARISM, CULTURE, EMPIRE, UNION

BENJAMIN IVES GILMAN

*Boston Museum of Fine Arts*

The word "barbarism" voices the contempt of the Greeks for the peoples of other speech about them. Barbarian (Barbaros) is one of the words called onomatopoeic,<sup>1</sup> whose sense is in its sound. It sounds like mere mouthing, and "bellow" or "inarticulate<sup>3</sup> speaker" is its original sense. A barbarian meant to the Greeks one denied the main channel of human sympathy—the gift of comprehensible<sup>4</sup> utterance. His language is pure babble. The word traces the undeveloped manners, customs, polity, trade, craftsmanship, art, science, religion, of rude communities back to mutual misunderstanding among their members. They are barbarians because unable to take each other's point of view. A custom is barbarous when it can not be followed without offending the sensibilities<sup>5</sup> of others. A punishment is barbarous when its anguish to the victim would stay the executioner's hand were he really alive to<sup>a</sup> it. Mr. Chesterton has just told us that the barbarian is he who "lacks that little mirror in the mind in which we see the mind of the other man"; or, to vary the phrase, "in which we see what the other man has a mind to."<sup>b</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to the formation of words in imitation of sounds.

<sup>2</sup> One who shouts. <sup>3</sup> Not uttered with intelligible distinctness.

<sup>4</sup> That may be understood. <sup>5</sup> Qualities of having nice perceptions.



The opposite of barbarism we call culture. Culture is the reflection within my mind of what my neighbor has a mind to. We owe the word to the Latins, who applied their term for "care" or "tillage" to that mellowed<sup>1</sup> condition of the mental soil in which we come to feel things as other men have felt them. The culture of an individual is the whole body of the ideals he has absorbed from others. The culture of a nation, race, or period is the sum and substance<sup>2c</sup> of the ideals transmitted from one individual to another until they have become the common property of all within its limits. It is in this collective sense that we speak of Swedish culture, Latin culture, the culture of the Renaissance.<sup>3†</sup> Civilization implies culture. The multiplication of common observances, common achievements is impossible without mutual understanding, without tastes and aspirations<sup>4</sup> shared. A civilization is a precipitate<sup>5</sup> of all the ideals current<sup>6d</sup> among its citizens.

High civilization tends to confirm<sup>7</sup> what it leaves of man's native barbarism. The argument "Our ways are good; therefore no other ways are worth notice" is a *non sequitur*<sup>e</sup> dear to the human mind. The legendary<sup>8</sup> order of Caliph Omar† for the destruction of the Alexandrian Library† bespoke culture and barbarism at once: "If these books confirm the Koran,<sup>9</sup> they need not be preserved; if they oppose the Koran, they should not be preserved." The Greeks called Egyptians,

<sup>1</sup> Well matured, delicate. <sup>2</sup> Chief element. <sup>3</sup> New birth, revival, (here) that transitional movement in Europe between the medieval and modern periods marked by revival of classic design in arts and letters. <sup>4</sup> Strong and high desires. <sup>5</sup> Insoluble substance. <sup>6</sup> Generally received, circulating. <sup>7</sup> Strengthen, establish. <sup>8</sup> Pertaining to fable or unverified history. <sup>9</sup> Holy scriptures of the Mohammedans



Latins, Hebrews, Hindus, alike barbarians, and disclosed their own barbarism in so doing. The Jews were to Jews the chosen people of God. To the Chinese the Chinese alone are Celestials.<sup>1</sup> To us of the United States our own land alone is God's country. The possession of these lofty<sup>2</sup> and complex ideals but emphasizes the inability of their possessors to transcend<sup>3</sup> them.

Barbarism may be either naïve<sup>4</sup> or conscious. Incapacity to share in the desires of others may be betrayed either by ignoring them or by aiming to thwart<sup>5</sup> them. We associate the attitude of indifference with the lower animals, and call it brutal; the attitude of frowardness<sup>6</sup> with evil spirits, and call it devilish. The one betokens vacuity<sup>7</sup> of mind, the other perversity<sup>8</sup> of heart.

Beyond both indifference and frowardness, but barbaric like both, stands the spirit of empire; the impulse to impose my will irrespective of what I will, upon others, irrespective of what they will. This attitude of mind is barbaric, for it reveals my inability to take to heart<sup>f</sup> what others have at heart; but it is more than brutal barbarism, for it takes the wills of others into account,<sup>g</sup> and it is more also than devilish barbarism, for it builds my own will as well as destroys theirs. It is neither dumb, like animal selfishness, nor is it outspoken in the words of Mephistopheles:† "I am the spirit that denies;" but in the words of Napoleon:†

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to Heaven (applied to the Chinese people). <sup>2</sup> High.  
<sup>3</sup> Rise above, surmount. <sup>4</sup> Having unaffected simplicity, artless.  
<sup>5</sup> Oppose, run counter. <sup>6</sup> Disobedience, perverseness. <sup>7</sup> Emptiness.  
<sup>8</sup> Stubbornness, frowardness.



"I was born to bend the wills of other men to mine." The instinct of empire is a social attitude in its external recognition of others; it is unsocial in failing to make that recognition an inward fact.

Such an external recognition of another's purposes is compatible, be it said, with unlimited instruction concerning them. For all intellectual apprehension of taste is knowledge about it; we must feel in order to know taste itself. The external attitude is even fostered<sup>1</sup> by instruction; since knowing so much we may easily fancy we know all. We become pedants<sup>2</sup> of culture, mistaking its cognitive<sup>3</sup> shell for its sensitive kernel.<sup>4</sup> However rich our information concerning the ideals of another, unless in some degree we share them, our culture as far as he is concerned is nil.<sup>5</sup> Looking on without taking part, perceiving without experiencing, we remain essentially barbarian.

Culture, the actual assimilation<sup>6</sup> of the ideals of other people, replaces the spirit of empire by a spirit which may be called that of union. The spirit of empire is a simple intention, namely, the establishment of my will, because mine, in place of other wills, because other than mine. The spirit of union proves to contain a triple intention. The penetration<sup>7</sup> of another mind has three effects upon mine: the awakening of certain desires of the other in me, the missing of certain of my desires in him, and the recognition of a conflict between certain of my desires and certain of his. The spirit of

---

<sup>1</sup> Nourished, supported. <sup>2</sup> One who makes a vain display of learning. <sup>3</sup> Knowing by the understanding. <sup>4</sup> The essential part of anything. <sup>5</sup> Nothing. <sup>6</sup> Act of incorporating or absorbing. <sup>7</sup> Pierce into by the mind, understand.



union thus engenders three purposes: a purpose to partake in admirations, a purpose to impart them, a purpose to reconcile<sup>1</sup> them. Were two minds in perfect union, each would be leader in the pursuit of its own independent purposes, each a cordial<sup>2</sup> second to the independent purposes of the other, and each ready to settle their conflicts of purpose by any means which a sympathetic understanding of the purposes of the other would sanction,<sup>3</sup> and only by such means. So a Christian and a Buddhist, had each a sympathetic grasp<sup>4</sup> of the other's faith, might seek, the one to give, the other to receive, that joy in the Lord which Buddhism has lacked, and that interest in the fate of the whole animate<sup>5</sup> creation which historical Christianity has lacked. So Russia, China, and Mongolia, were the mind of each open to<sup>6</sup> the minds of the others—a supposition still extravagant between any peoples—might weigh between them the question<sup>7</sup> whether in the interest of all three Mongolia should remain under Chinese suzerainty,<sup>8</sup> accept Russian rule, or become autonomous.<sup>7</sup>

The spirit of union does not exclude the possibility that the end of a discussion between the parties may be disagreement, and change them from co-workers into opponents.<sup>8</sup> But opponents, each responsive to the interests of the other, would fight, not for their own interests solely, but for what each believed to be the interests of both. This alone is righteous war.

---

<sup>1</sup> Adjust, appease. <sup>2</sup> Hearty, sincere. <sup>3</sup> Approve. <sup>4</sup> Understanding. <sup>5</sup> Endowed with life. <sup>6</sup> Dominion or authority. <sup>7</sup> Having independant existence or laws. <sup>8</sup> Enemy.



The saying of Benjamin Franklin,<sup>†</sup> "There never was a good war or a bad peace," was a pardonable exaggeration; but we make it a falsehood when we interpret it to mean that there never can be a good war or a bad peace. The spirit of union, which is the spirit of good will, aims at peace, but only in the interest of all; and may inexorably<sup>1</sup> demand war, also in interest of all.

To the lasting honor of this nation, the United States has been the first to enter into treaties embodying this third requisite<sup>2</sup> of cultivated relations with other peoples. However infrequent the use of such machinery of discussion in advance of war, it will not rust ingloriously, for it is made of a metal that rust can not corrupt. No other machinery, thanks to man's inventiveness,<sup>3</sup> is needed to-day by the spirit of union. The freedom of intercourse between nations of the modern world in itself provides for the satisfaction of the two other impulses which make up the spirit of union—the impulse to offer to others our share, and to gain from them their share in the world's ideals.

To which of these two spirits—empire, or union—does the future belong? To the spirit of union, for a reason partly psychological and partly mathematical. Conquests unite the conquered against the conqueror; and combinations tend to be stronger than individuals. Minds being what they are, and numbers being what they are, a man is apt to avail more through his friends than through his own right arm. The clasp of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Firmly, unyieldingly.    <sup>2</sup> That which is required or necessary.  
<sup>3</sup> Quickness at contrivance.



hand<sup>k</sup> will outlive the blow; for there is the strength of two behind every grasp, and of but one behind any blow that evokes it.

A play on French words may serve to fix in mind the necessary evanescence<sup>1</sup> of empire. We may fancy that the word derives from the verb *empirer*, signifying to deteriorate.<sup>2</sup> By this burlesque<sup>3</sup> etymology its root-meaning comes to be that of going from bad to worse; and an empire becomes, accordingly, that form of international organization which is foredoomed<sup>4</sup> to decline and fall.

Even the short span of years<sup>1</sup> which recorded history has yet covered brings ample evidence in support of this definition. Either external coalitions<sup>5</sup> to overthrow them or internal coalitions to reject their yoke have ended, or threaten to end, nearly every known empire. The British Empire which still stands and even shows signs of permanence,<sup>6</sup> has learned the lesson of union, and bids fair to become an empire in its name alone. British imperialism was once, as Professor Cramb has told us, the will to give all men under British sway<sup>7</sup> an English mind, in the spirit of the boast of Alexander the Great,† "I will make all men Hellenes." But the instruction of England in the larger art of government, begun in North America, has been continued since, and her imperial aim is fast becoming a will to live with other men and let them live. The British Empire, if it lasts, will one day be what the Seven Seas choose to

---

<sup>1</sup> Act or state of vanishing or disappearing. <sup>2</sup> Grow worse, degenerate. <sup>3</sup> Jocular, ironical. <sup>4</sup> Doomed or condemned beforehand. <sup>5</sup> Combination, alliance. <sup>6</sup> Quality or state of being durable or lasting. <sup>7</sup> Authority, control.

make of it, not what England alone chooses to make of it. The Irish mind, the Boer mind, the Hindu mind, will share with others in the process. The people of the United States have of late been tempted to forget the lesson they themselves taught; but Cuba, Mexico,<sup>†</sup> and the Philippines<sup>†</sup> stand as witnesses that for all our growth in power, we still hold fast to the doctrines of our Declaration of Independence.<sup>†</sup> With a giant's strength we have twice and even thrice refused to use it like a giant. Born a union, we are engaged in laying the foundations of other unions. It is possible to conceive of but one more august<sup>1</sup> political structure than these—one in which every sovereign people in the world should contribute each its own mind to a union which should insure the perpetual development of the minds of all.

The conclusion of the whole matter may be put into modern American. Empire is the child of the barbarism out of which the world tends; culture the parent of the union into which the world tends. There is no middle term; for it is always barbarism to claim "I am It"; and culture always answers, "There are others."

— *The Popular Science Monthly.*

#### QUESTIONS

1. What do the words "barbarism" and "barbarian" signify?
2. Trace the etymology, and explain the meaning of "culture."
3. What relation does civilization bear to culture?

---

<sup>1</sup> Grand, imposing.



4. What is the mental attitude of the present nations toward one another; and what does this attitude indicate or show?
5. What is meant by the spirit of empire? and what does this kind of spirit reveal?
6. Why is the spirit of empire worse than either "brutality" or "devilishness?"
7. When can our culture in respect to the ideals of others be called truly effective?
8. Explain the contrast between the spirit of culture and the spirit of union. Illustrate.
9. What is the aim and purpose toward which the spirit of union is striving?
10. How has the United States demonstrated this spirit of union, and what does freedom of intercourse among modern nations illustrate?
11. Show that the spirit of union is superior to, and more reasonable than the spirit of empire.
12. What is the real cause of the permanence of the British Empire?
13. Define the relationship between Barbarism, Empire, and Union.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |    |    |  |
|----|----|--|
| 68 | a. | <i>To be alive to:</i> to feel, to realize.  |
| ,, | b. | <i>To have a mind to:</i> to intend, to purpose.                                       |
| 69 | c. | <i>Sum and substance:</i> the purpose, the gist.                                       |
| ,, | d. | <i>To be current:</i> to prevail.  |
| ,, | e. | <i>Non sequitur:</i> (Lat) that which does not follow (one of the fallacies in logic). |
| 70 | f. | <i>To take to heart:</i> to feel.  |
| ,, | g. | <i>To take into account:</i> to take into consideration.                               |
| 72 | h. | <i>To have a grasp:</i> to have an understanding.                                      |
| ,, | i. | <i>A mind open to:</i> a mind receptive to, a mind unprejudiced by.                    |
| ,, | j. | <i>To weigh the question:</i> to deliberate, to think carefully.                       |
| 74 | k. | <i>The clasp of the hand:</i> (fig) friendship.  |
| ,, | l. | <i>A short span of years:</i> a few years.   |

## LESSON IX

CHINESE CONCEPTION OF HUMAN NATURE  
AND ITS RELATION TO CRIME

R. Y. LO, PH.D.

The unsettled question of human nature has been much discussed now and then, but human opinion has never been found to agree, and it is doubtful whether there will ever be found possible the solution of that vexed question so long as freedom of discussion exists. In China, however, different philosophers,<sup>1</sup> though differing among themselves as to whether man was born of good or evil nature, or neither, do agree and maintain that human nature is plastic<sup>2</sup> and can be greatly changed.

For example, Hsüntze holds that human nature is evil, and advocates the promotion of education as a factor to correct the evil of man's nature. Mencius, on the other hand, maintains that human nature is good; therefore he teaches the necessity of preserving, by means of education and good association, the goodness of human nature. Others, who occupy a middle place between Hsüntze and Mencius, teach that man's nature is neither good nor evil, but a mixture of both, and hold that the development in either direction, good or evil, depends entirely upon environment<sup>3</sup> and education.

---

<sup>1</sup> One versed in philosophy.    <sup>2</sup> Capable of being molded or formed.    <sup>3</sup> Surroundings.



But in the interests of sound knowledge—at least that is the tendency<sup>1</sup> of modern thinking—the theory advanced by Confucius seems to be the most typical<sup>2</sup> one accepted by most thinking Chinese. “By nature,” says Confucius, “men are nearly alike; by habit, they tend to be quite apart.”

Just what was really meant by Confucius when he enunciated<sup>3</sup> the word “nature,” no one could give us a definite definition, for he himself never defined it. But the word has been taken by Chu-hsi, the authorised expositor<sup>4</sup> of the Confucian Classics, to mean man's actual complex disposition<sup>5</sup> as well as his moral nature. According to Chu Hsi, though the actual dispositions of men are not one and the same, yet there is to be found among them a great deal of likeness before they become tainted<sup>6</sup> by the varied environments of life. Still another commentator,<sup>7</sup> who was the predecessor<sup>8</sup> of Chu Hsi, explains thus:—“The nature of a man is the constitution which he receives at birth and thence quiescent.<sup>9</sup> Where it has not been acted upon by external things, men are like one another; where it has, practice forms man's second nature. He who practices what is good becomes the superior man, and he who practices what is not good becomes the inferior man.”

At any rate, no matter what the past commentators have said and the future commentators may say, it is quite safe to conclude that when Confucius says, “By

---

<sup>1</sup> Proneness, disposition. <sup>2</sup> Representative, emblematic. <sup>3</sup> Spoke.  
<sup>4</sup> One who explains. <sup>5</sup> Propensity, temperament. <sup>6</sup> Defiled, polluted.  
<sup>7</sup> One who writes a commentary or annotation. <sup>8</sup> One who precedes. <sup>9</sup> Dormant, quiet.



nature all men are alike; by habit they tend to be quite apart," he means that there is the germ<sup>1</sup> of goodness in every human being. Whether the germ of goodness develops into perfection or whether it becomes distorted<sup>2</sup> or dwarfed,<sup>3</sup> it depends entirely upon the influence of the social and intellectual environment of the individual.

This concurrence<sup>4</sup> of opinions of the importance of environment in the shaping of human nature can be best illustrated by the parable<sup>5</sup> of "The Growth of Wheat," given by Mencius. "One sows and harrows it. If the soil is uniform and the time of cultivation the same, it rapidly shoots up and grows until the whole is ripe at the proper season. Should there, however, be diversity,<sup>6</sup> it is owing to inequalities in richness and poverty of the soil, in the nourishment<sup>7</sup> afforded by rain and dew, and in the amount of labor bestowed upon it." Thus, we see, it is the external circumstances that give rise to a diversity of men's natures. It is here that society plays a great part. Its function is either to give nature a downward pull or an upward lift. Thus at birth man is turned over to the mercies of his environment which will shape and complete his career.<sup>8</sup> It happens that external circumstances interfere in the process of man-making in a most important manner, unhappily and too often in the direction of disturbance and destruction.

---

<sup>1</sup> Origin, that from which anything springs. <sup>2</sup> Deformed, perverted. <sup>3</sup> Stunted, diminished in size. <sup>4</sup> Agreement. <sup>5</sup> A short story with a moral teaching. <sup>6</sup> Variety. <sup>7</sup> Food, nutriment. <sup>8</sup> General course of action.



Education, then, is the most powerful weapon. Sin or crime is, therefore, only the consequence of the misuse of powers essentially<sup>1</sup> good, owing to lack of intelligence of how to use them rightly. Again, there are adverse<sup>2</sup> social conditions which tend to produce criminal habits of mind and action. The parable of the trees that grew luxuriantly<sup>3</sup> till cattle browsed on them so that man falsely imagined from their bare, stripped appearance that the nature of the soil was barren, is an illustration worth presenting. Mencius said:

"The trees of the Niu Mountain were once beautiful. Being situated, however, on the borders of a large state, they were hewn down with axes and bills—and could they remain beautiful? Still, through the activity of the vegetative<sup>4</sup> life day and night, and the nourishing influence of the rain and dew, they were not without buds and sprouts springing forth, but then came the cattle and goats and browsed upon them. To these things is due the bare and stripped<sup>5</sup> appearance of the mountain, which, when seen by the people, they think was never finely wooded. But is this the nature of the mountain? And so also of what properly belongs to man; shall it be said that the heart of any man is without goodness? The way in which a man loses his proper goodness of heart is like the way in which the trees are denuded<sup>6</sup> by axes and bills. Hewn down the day after, can it—the heart—retain its beauty?

---

<sup>1</sup> Fundamentally. <sup>2</sup> Unfavorable. <sup>3</sup> Abundantly. <sup>4</sup> Having the power of growing like plants. <sup>5</sup> Deprived of covering. <sup>6</sup> Made bare or naked.



But there is development of its life day and night, and in the calm air of the morning, just between day and night, the heart feels in a degree those desires and aversions<sup>1</sup> which are proper to humanity; but the feeling is not strong, and it is fettered<sup>2</sup> by what takes place during the day. This fettering takes place again and again, the restorative<sup>3</sup> influence of the night is not sufficient to preserve the proper goodness of the heart; and when this proves insufficient for that purpose, the nature becomes not much different from that of the irrational<sup>4</sup> animals, which, when people see them, they think that they never had those powers which I assert. But does this condition represent the feelings proper to humanity? "

It hardly needs to be commented<sup>5</sup> upon<sup>a</sup> that this parable should be the spirit of Social Democracy, a democracy which is not yet well understood by students of social science. The principles underlying this parable are point to point<sup>b</sup> in harmony with the modern conception<sup>6</sup> of crime, which is the natural phenomenon<sup>7</sup> determined by social and physical factors, and the only effective way of grappling<sup>8</sup> with it is to do away, as far as possible, with the causes from which it springs.

Both Mencius and Confucius ascribe<sup>9</sup> crime or vice to bad conditions and not to evil intent.<sup>10</sup> The remedy with both is "benevolent<sup>11</sup> government." "To involve the people in crime through vicious<sup>12</sup> conditions and

---

<sup>1</sup> Dislikes. <sup>2</sup> Shackled. <sup>3</sup> Having power to restore. <sup>4</sup> Void of reason. <sup>5</sup> Made remarks. <sup>6</sup> Idea. <sup>7</sup> Appearances, anything visible. <sup>8</sup> Attacking, contending at close quarters. <sup>9</sup> Attribute. <sup>10</sup> Purpose. <sup>11</sup> Having a disposition to do good. <sup>12</sup> Wicked, corrupt.



then follow them up with punishment, is to entrap the people." Mencius said: "In good years the children of the people are most of them good, while in bad years the most of them abandon themselves to evil. It is not owing to their natural powers conferred<sup>1</sup> by Heaven that they are thus different. The abandonment<sup>2</sup> is owing to the circumstances through which they allow their hearts to be ensnared and drowned in evil."

It is written in the Canon of History: "The end of punishment is to promote virtue, to make an end of punishing, to bring blessing by the just appreciation of guilt, that evil should be dealt with<sup>c</sup> as if it were a disease in one's own person, that none be punished whose guilt is in doubt." We may also add from Li-chi: "Seek out the good side and pardon. Change criminality by humanity.<sup>3</sup> For a deadly crime, the great thing is to convert the criminal to goodness."

This philosophy of penalty<sup>4</sup> certainly recognizes the weaknesses of human society and recommends that they be carefully studied and bravely faced. Crime is certainly not to be overcome by cruelty and punishment. Influences of an elevating<sup>5</sup> character and education only are of any value. Mere punishments are degrading<sup>6</sup> and brutalizing.<sup>7</sup> Rulers must ever try to seek the causes of evils before they undertake to suppress them by imposing<sup>8</sup> harder burdens than the evils themselves. Unless, and not until, those who are in authority begin

---

<sup>1</sup> Bestowed, granted. <sup>2</sup> Desertion, act of deserting. <sup>3</sup> Kindness.  
<sup>4</sup> Punishment. <sup>5</sup> Exalting, ennobling. <sup>6</sup> Debasing, degenerating.  
<sup>7</sup> Making cruel. <sup>8</sup> Laying or putting on.

to study the real causes of crime and seek to remove them, prisons and barbaric punishments will continue to exist and criminals will not cease to flourish.

—*The Chinese Social and Political Science Review.*

### QUESTIONS

1. What is the general idea among Chinese philosophers regarding human nature?
2. What did Hsüntze and Mencius, respectively, think about human nature, and what did they advocate as the means of making man good?
3. What is the theory of human nature as advanced by Confucius?
4. What is Chu Hsi's definition of Confucian human nature?
5. Can you give a rational meaning to the Confucian statement: By nature all men are alike; by habit they tend to be quite apart?
6. What is the parable of the "Growth of Wheat"? and what is its meaning?
7. Do you think that education is sufficient to reform human nature?
8. Tell the parable of the luxuriant trees and the browsing cattle; and its application to life.
9. To what did Confucius and Mencius ascribe crime? And what did they suggest as a remedy?
10. What is the aim of punishment?
11. Do you believe in punishment as a means to make men good? Give your own explanation.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |    |    |  |
|----|----|--|
| 81 | a. | <i>To comment upon; to criticize, to make remarks about.</i> |
| ,, | b. | <i>Point to point; corresponding in every detail.</i>        |
| 82 | c. | <i>To deal with; to treat.</i>                               |



## LESSON X

## THE SOCIAL IDEAL IN EDUCATION

PROFESSOR GEORGE E. VINCENT

*President of the Rockefeller Foundation*

As purpose unifies the individual, so a common aim gives the human group a sense of solidarity.<sup>1</sup> Social consciousness is the well-worn<sup>a</sup> term for this thrill of comradeship. The sense of team play that makes the eleven or the nine an efficient unit gives us the type. Each individual sees the group as a whole, is aware of his own relation to it, knows that his fellows share his feeling, and counts upon<sup>b</sup> them to act promptly for a common end. A group which cannot control its members and rally<sup>2</sup> them in loyalty to a single aim lacks solidarity and effectiveness.

If the university, as an organ<sup>3</sup> of society, is to gain strength of purpose, it must have a consciousness of its function and duty. Only by such sense of team play can individuals, departments, schools, colleges, faculties,<sup>4</sup> classes, student groups, be fused<sup>5</sup> into genuine<sup>6</sup> unity and rallied to a common loyalty. In general, the university ideal is changing from the thought of personal privilege to the conception of social service, from a preaching<sup>7</sup> of personal culture<sup>8</sup> to a democracy<sup>9</sup> of studies, or, in another phrase, from culture to efficiency.<sup>10</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Community. <sup>2</sup> Gather again, reunite. <sup>3</sup> Instrument or medium by which important action is performed. <sup>4</sup> The president and professors of a college. <sup>5</sup> Unite or blend as if melted. <sup>6</sup> True, real. <sup>7</sup> Proclaiming. <sup>8</sup> Refinement. <sup>9</sup> Government by the people. <sup>10</sup> Ability to produce results.



This does not mean that colleges and universities have not always had some sense of social obligation. But too generally the privileges of higher education were for the favored few, who, by virtue of<sup>c</sup> their special opportunities, were set off<sup>d</sup> from the masses of men. The growth of democracy has made new demands, has widened opportunity, has broken down the barriers<sup>1</sup> of class. Even in the Old World,<sup>†</sup> and notably in the New, democracy has created schools, colleges, and universities, and has chartered<sup>2</sup> them to serve the common welfare. The university has become, therefore, especially in this mid-western region, "the people's organized instrument of research,"<sup>3</sup> or, as President Van Hise puts it, "the scientific adviser of the state." On every hand we hear variations of this central theme<sup>e</sup> of social service. College presidents and men in political life, each group from its own point of view, insist upon this conception of higher education. In this view the university appeals to the imagination, it becomes an organ of the higher life of the community and the state, it connects itself at every point with the industry, commerce, social conditions, educational interests, ideal<sup>4</sup> purposes, of the commonwealth.<sup>5</sup>

The university as a social agent is intrusted with certain standards<sup>6</sup> of the community, standards of scientific method and of truth, standards of technical efficiency, standards of cultural attainment, standards

---

<sup>1</sup> Obstruction, obstacle. <sup>2</sup> To establish by charter, to license.  
<sup>3</sup> Diligent inquiry after facts. <sup>4</sup> Reaching an imaginary standard of excellence. <sup>5</sup> The public. <sup>6</sup> That which is established as a rule or model.



of personal character and of civic<sup>1</sup> duty. It is only through the creation, the guarding, the elevation of these standards that material<sup>2</sup> and spiritual progress is possible. The university becomes a trustee<sup>3</sup> of ideas and ideals, a custodian<sup>4</sup> of standards. In the administration of these standards the university cannot sacrifice the common welfare to individual need or desire. It must exclude those who fail to meet the standards of attainment<sup>5</sup> and character which the university administers. Favoritism, faltering, compromise, cowardice, mean betrayal of a social trust. Nor may the standards of the university be provincial<sup>6</sup> and temporary. In the words of President Hadley, "the university must be judged by the standards which have held for all time rather than those of a single generation, or of a single profession." The imagination kindles at this thought of a university exalting the tests of truth and character by which society slowly gropes<sup>7</sup> toward higher levels.

When the mind is possessed by this vision of the university, all the careers for which it provides training take on the dignity of social worth. Vocations<sup>8</sup> which have been thought of as individual widen into literal<sup>9</sup> calls to be servants of the common life. The office of the teacher, the function<sup>10</sup> of the physician, the work of the engineer, get their higher meaning from their value to the community. The profession of the law,

---

<sup>1</sup> Relating to citizenship. <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to the body. <sup>3</sup> A person to whom property is legally entrusted. <sup>4</sup> Guardian, protector. <sup>5</sup> Acquisition, anything obtained by exertion. <sup>6</sup> Narrow, not liberal. <sup>7</sup> Feel in the dark. <sup>8</sup> Calling, occupation. <sup>9</sup> Real, actual. <sup>10</sup> Act of performing a duty or calling.



so often thought of as a field for personal exploitation,<sup>1</sup> is in its true significance<sup>2</sup> a social service. "We lawyers," declares Woodrow Wilson, "are servants of society, officers of the courts of justice . . . guardians of the public peace . . . bond servants of the people." The scientific farmer is, in one view, seeking personal gain, but in a much deeper sense he is diffusing knowledge and skill and is raising into higher esteem fundamental<sup>3</sup> industry which makes modern society possible. The college graduate who has received the training men are fond of calling liberal<sup>4</sup> may no longer regard himself merely as a member of a privileged class. In the new spirit of *noblesse oblige*<sup>5</sup> he must recognize his obligation to his fellows and to the community; must remember that "life is not a cup to be drained, but a measure<sup>5</sup> to be filled." Such is the ideal purpose which summons the modern university to unity and comradeship in the service of the common life. When this vision fills the minds of all, when it controls their conduct, when it stirs their emotions and carries them steadily forward to loyal achievement, then the university gains an irresistible power and becomes a true expression of the higher purposes of the state, the nation, and mankind.

The university fails of its purpose if its students do not catch the inspiration<sup>6</sup> of the common ideal. To generous-minded young men and women this thought of the university must make appeal. It is the duty of

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of getting value out of. <sup>2</sup> Meaning. <sup>3</sup> Basic, elementary, essential. <sup>4</sup> A broad, not narrow. <sup>5</sup> Rule by which anything is judged. <sup>6</sup> Influence which quickens or stimulates.



the institution to fix this image of the university in the imaginations of its students. From the day they enter to the day they leave, this dominant<sup>1</sup> purpose, this persuasive spirit, should grow ever more potent<sup>2</sup> and fascinating.<sup>3</sup> It would be well if students could begin their college life with formal<sup>4</sup> ceremony, so that at the very outset<sup>5</sup> they might feel more keenly the social obligations they are assuming.<sup>6</sup> Admission to the university should seem to them initiation<sup>7</sup> into a high calling.<sup>8</sup> It is a pity that they should begin for the most part thoughtlessly or with minds fixed solely upon personal aims and plans. The state is calling them to her service. She has a right to insist that only those who are in earnest, who have at least a dawning<sup>8</sup> sense of social duty, should seek admission to the public training which can be justified only by its service to the state. It should be made clear that no one has the right to demand admission as a personal privilege. Conformity<sup>9</sup> with technicalities<sup>10</sup> of entrance must not blind<sup>11</sup> us to the moral obligations involved. Out of the common fund to which all citizens contribute, the state erects and maintains, not for personal advantage but for public good, this West Point† of science, the arts, and the professions. Every matriculant,<sup>12</sup> therefore, by virtue of admission is honor bound<sup>h</sup> to meet the state halfway in her desire to prepare soldiers of science for the battles of peace. The university must unhesitatingly

---

<sup>1</sup> Ruling, prevailing.    <sup>2</sup> Powerful.    <sup>3</sup> Enchanting, bewitching.  
<sup>4</sup> According to form, or rule.    <sup>5</sup> Beginning.    <sup>6</sup> Taking upon oneself.  
<sup>7</sup> Act of introducing.    <sup>8</sup> Beginning to appear.    <sup>9</sup> Agreement.  
<sup>10</sup> Quality of being appropriate to art or science.    <sup>11</sup> Cause to overlook.    <sup>12</sup> One who seeks admission to a society or college.



rid itself of individuals who are indifferent<sup>1</sup> to intellectual work or hostile to it. After fair test, those who fail to show their sense of the university's purpose must be dismissed. This is necessary not only in justice to the state, but in fairness to those who show due appreciation of their opportunities and duties.

The dominant university purpose gives a proper setting<sup>2</sup> to the activities of student life and to the standards and conduct of the groups into which the student community naturally falls. The contacts of daily association and searching tests of comradeship, the discovery and development of leadership, the give-and-take of social intercourse,<sup>3</sup> the healthy recreation<sup>4</sup> of undergraduate<sup>5</sup> life—all constitute an environment which may afford admirable discipline. There is large truth in the assertion that the university is the world in miniature<sup>6</sup> and that it offers a social training which will be turned to account<sup>7</sup> in the wider life of the community. But all these activities must be tested by the dominant purpose of the university. The question must always be, is this or that out of harmony<sup>7</sup> with the ideal of the university as an organ of the common life? Does this student demonstration or that rollicking<sup>8</sup> festivity create in the public mind the feeling that the university is living for itself and not for the community; does it foster<sup>9</sup> the belief that the university is not dominated<sup>10</sup> by the motive of service; does it create

---

<sup>1</sup> Careless, uninterested. <sup>2</sup> Background, environment. <sup>3</sup> Fellowship, connection. <sup>4</sup> Sport, amusement. <sup>5</sup> A student who has not completed his course. <sup>6</sup> Reduced or diminished form. <sup>7</sup> Agreement. <sup>8</sup> Sporting, moving, or playing in a careless manner. <sup>9</sup> Cherish, encourage. <sup>10</sup> Controlled, governed.



the suspicion that students ignore or forget their duty to the state which is making their self-preparation possible? This is a vital<sup>1</sup> question. So with the student groups that play so large a part in<sup>k</sup> academic<sup>2</sup> communities—are these groups working loyally for the common welfare, have they due regard<sup>1</sup> for the fundamental things of university life, are they actuated<sup>3</sup> by a sense of responsibility for their members, do they cultivate<sup>4</sup> tolerance,<sup>5</sup> justice, and good will? These are questions which individuals and groups must constantly put to themselves and answer frankly and honestly. The good name of the university is safe only when its members feel an obligation to further the common purpose to make the university a true organ of the whole people.

So long as this spirit prevails, no sense of arrogance,<sup>6</sup> of exclusiveness,<sup>7</sup> of privilege, or of caste,<sup>8</sup> will enter the minds of its members. The old distinction of “town” and “gown,”<sup>9</sup>† the traditional<sup>10</sup> attitude<sup>11</sup> of superiority toward those outside the walls of the academic cloister—these things have no place in an institution dominated by the spirit of social service. Every man and woman of the commonwealth becomes, in this view, a supporter and patron<sup>12</sup> of the university and may expect from it good will and loyal service. If to say that the university belongs to the state is anything more than phrase making,

---

<sup>1</sup> Essential to life, very necessary. <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to college, literary. <sup>3</sup> Moved to action, roused. <sup>4</sup> Foster, cherish. <sup>5</sup> Forbearance, freedom from prejudice. <sup>6</sup> Pride, conceit. <sup>7</sup> State of being shut out from others. <sup>8</sup> Fixed social class. <sup>9</sup> Symbolic of the college because in English colleges students put on gowns. <sup>10</sup> According to tradition or unwritten code. <sup>11</sup> Disposition towards. <sup>12</sup> One who supports or protects.



every member who has imagination, the power to see the institution in its real relationships, must feel the genuine humility of one who would faithfully serve his fellows.

If the university is to fulfill its function, it must carry conviction<sup>1</sup> to the people of the commonwealth. It must impress them with its purpose, make them see it as a faithful agency of the people. The men and women of the state must not think of the university as an institution which, because it has public support, should lower its standards to admit the weak, indifferent, or incompetent,<sup>2</sup> or to graduate those who have failed to reach the minimum of attainment. People must not think of the university as a place in which personal influences can secure special privilege. Rather they must regard it as fearlessly loyal to the common welfare, true to high standards of scholarship, truth, efficiency, character, and judgment. They must not ask or expect special favors from this servant of the whole democracy.

If the university purpose is to be achieved, the institution must seek special ability wherever this is to be found. It would be a calamity<sup>3</sup> if only sons and daughters of the rich and well-to-do<sup>m</sup> could gain access to higher training. Talent<sup>4</sup> and genius<sup>5</sup> ignore the distinctions of wealth and class. A way must be found by which young men and young women of great promise,<sup>n</sup> however they may be hampered<sup>6</sup> by poverty,

---

<sup>1</sup> Persuasion, strong belief. <sup>2</sup> Inefficient. <sup>3</sup> Misfortune. <sup>4</sup> Natural endowment. <sup>5</sup> Distinguished mental power. <sup>6</sup> Impeded, obstructed.



may gain access to the social training of the university and be freed in large part or wholly from the self-supporting work which makes the best scholarship impossible. We must believe that men and communities will catch this vision of the university, and, by providing scholarships, see to it that no exceptional ability shall be deprived of development for the service of the commonwealth. The university would lose its power and its ideals if it ever became a place of privilege for the well-to-do and not a training school for all who have talents and capacities<sup>1</sup> for which the state has need. The controlling ideal, the mastering purpose of the university, therefore, is not a mere phrase or conceit<sup>2</sup> — it is a guiding principle which finds application to every individual, to every group, to every activity of academic life, and organizes these into the strength and unity which only a common aim can confer.

Purpose steadily pursued creates a persuasive spirit, registers<sup>3</sup> itself in institutional character. Open-mindedness<sup>4</sup> must be a conspicuous trait<sup>4</sup> of a true academic community. The very search for new knowledge, the effort to see the relation of things, presupposes an attitude of inquiry, a willingness to look at an idea or a fact from many different standpoints. Open-mindedness toward truth merges<sup>5</sup> into tolerance and mutual respect as between the individuals and groups who make up the university. Narrowness or prejudice, a patronizing<sup>6</sup> attitude of one group toward another, the discrediting<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Abilities.    <sup>2</sup> A fanciful or extravagant notion.    <sup>3</sup> Records.  
<sup>4</sup> Distinguishing feature, peculiarity.    <sup>5</sup> Sinks, is swallowed up.  
<sup>6</sup> Assuming the air of a superior.    <sup>7</sup> Depriving of credit or reputation.



of this calling as compared with that, the limiting of the conception of research to traditional fields of inquiry — these things have no place in an institution mastered by a sense of loyal duty to commonwealth and nation. Genuine culture consists largely in sympathy with many kinds of men and in insight<sup>1</sup> into the widest ranges of human life. To live in a highly-specialized<sup>2</sup> community and to enter with appreciation into the activities of one's colleagues<sup>3</sup> in many fields is in itself a liberalizing<sup>4</sup> experience. There is place for generous rivalry in a great university, but this rivalry must be kept on a high level and not be allowed to sink into unworthy conflict and discord.<sup>5</sup> Open-mindedness, tolerance, high-minded rivalry, cannot fail, under the guidance of a controlling ideal, to fuse the university into a genuine unity of comradeship and good will. When each man and each group can see, not only through its own eyes but through the eyes of other persons and groups, the common problems of the institution, there must develop a keener sense of team play, a quickened loyalty, a more vivid corporate<sup>6</sup> consciousness.

The university, a servant of the common life, exalting standards of efficiency and worth, summoning its members to a common task, must stand for the loftiest ideals. It must inspire enduring faith. It must exalt character above technical skill, mental alertness,<sup>7</sup> refinement of feeling. It must lay hold of the fundamental motives. The university rightly aims at leadership,

---

<sup>1</sup> Power of acute observation. <sup>2</sup> Particularized. <sup>3</sup> Companions, associates. <sup>4</sup> Broadening (of the mind). <sup>5</sup> Disagreement. <sup>6</sup> United, collective. <sup>7</sup> Vigilance, readiness to act.



but, in the words of Dr. Pritchett, it can win this "only by inspiring the youth of the democracy with a true, vibrant,<sup>1</sup> living faith. . . . The American university is to-day the home of that faith. It is the faith of humanity in humanity . . . and the American university, which embodies<sup>2</sup> the intellectual aspirations of a free people, is becoming day by day the representative of their spiritual aspirations as well."

The state university cannot fulfill its true function unless it rises to the higher level of spiritual idealism. It may not ally itself with any church or support any one theology,<sup>3</sup> but it must draw its inspiration from an essentially religious view of life. As Sir Thomas More's Utopians tolerated many theologies of widely varying kinds, but united in common worship of the divine energy back of all nature and human life, so the university welcomes men and women of many faiths<sup>4</sup> and rallies them to a devoted loyalty to common ideals of duty, service, and reverent<sup>5</sup> aspiration.

In "The Republic," Socrates, in talking of testing the young for leadership, declares:

We must inquire who are the best guardians<sup>6</sup> of their own conviction that the interest of the state is to be the rule of all their actions. We must watch them from their youth upwards and propose deeds for them to perform in which they are most likely to forget or be deceived, and he who remembers and is not deceived is to be selected and he who fails in the trial is to be rejected.

---

<sup>1</sup> Resonant, responsive.    <sup>2</sup> Incorporates.    <sup>3</sup> Study about God.  
<sup>4</sup> Beliefs (in religion).    <sup>5</sup> Humble, respectful.    <sup>6</sup> Protectors.

The gentle sage goes on to describe the tests of toil and pain, the tests of fear, the tests of seductive<sup>1</sup> pleasures, and he tells us that "he who at every age as boy and youth, and in mature life, has come out of the trial victorious and pure, shall be appointed a ruler and shall receive sepulcher<sup>2</sup> and other memorials of honor, the greatest that we have to give."

The essentials<sup>3</sup> of life and character have not changed since the days when Socrates talked of truth and justice in the groves of Academus. You graduates to-day go forth to be tested. You have in varying measure the vision of the university, the sense of obligation which your training lays upon you. You must hear, be it ever so faintly, the call to be servants of the commonwealth. Put to yourselves the question which comes down through the centuries: Can you hold to this conviction that the interests of the community should be the rule of all your actions? You will face intellectual sophistry and beguiling<sup>4</sup> fallacies. Have you the keenness of mind and the force of character to analyze these specious<sup>5</sup> assertions<sup>6</sup> and to hold steadfastly to things that are true and enduring<sup>7</sup>? You will be tested by fear—fear of financial loss, fear of ridicule, fear, it may be, of social ostracism.<sup>8</sup> Have you the courage and character to preserve your convictions of loyalty to the general good? You will be lured<sup>9</sup> by pleasure, dazzled, it may be, by luxury and ostentation,<sup>10</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Tending to lead astray. <sup>2</sup> Grave, tomb. <sup>3</sup> Those which are most important. <sup>4</sup> Misleading. <sup>5</sup> Appearing well, plausible. <sup>6</sup> Statements. <sup>7</sup> Permanent, continuous. <sup>8</sup> Exclusion. <sup>9</sup> Enticed. <sup>10</sup> Show, display.



tempted to self-indulgence and evanescent pleasures. Have you the fiber<sup>1</sup> to resist these appeals and to remember that the social servant must be ever strong, clear-eyed, and faithful to his work?

May you hold to the vision you have caught; may it, with the passing years, grow ever clearer, brighter, more commanding in your lives. The university sends you forth today with Godspeed,<sup>p</sup> intrusts to you the good name of our widening community, summons you to loyalty, urges you to organize all your resources<sup>2</sup> of mind and spirit into the unity of a high aim—the firm resolve<sup>3</sup> to realize in your own lives the masterful purpose of the university, which is to be in ever fuller measure at once the standard bearer and the servant of the state.

Go to your work and be strong, halting not in a world  
of men,

Balking the end half won for an instant dole<sup>4</sup> of praise.  
Stand to your work and be wise—certain of sword and  
pen,

Who are neither children nor gods, but men in a world  
of men.

— *Vital Forces in Current Events.*

### QUESTIONS

1. What are the qualities of solidarity?
2. What is the new conception of a university ideal; and what brought it about?
3. What is the function of a modern university as it is now understood?

---

<sup>1</sup> Strength, toughness.    <sup>2</sup> Means, contrivance.    <sup>3</sup> Resolution, decision.    <sup>4</sup> Portion.

4. What are the standards intrusted to a university; and what is its specific duty?
5. What effect does such a conception of a university have upon the various callings of life? Illustrate.
6. How should the college graduate regard himself under this new conception?
7. What should be the duty of the university in relation to the student?
8. What right has the state to demand social obligations from the students?
9. What constitutes a good environment for social discipline in the university? What is the test by which we are to know whether student activities are in agreement with the ideal of the university?
10. What is the traditional attitude of the college student toward those who are not?
11. How, on the other hand, must common citizens regard the university?
12. What is the best means by which a university can develop and encourage exceptional abilities?
13. What should characterize the true spirit of a college man?
14. What does the author mean by spiritual idealism in the university?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |    |    |  |
|----|----|--|
| 84 | a. | <i>Well-worn</i> : much impaired by use, very common.                              |
| ,, | b. | <i>To count upon</i> : to rely upon, expect.                                       |
| 85 | c. | <i>By virtue of</i> : by reason of.  |
| ,, | d. | <i>To set off</i> : to set apart.  |
| ,, | e. | <i>Central theme</i> : principal subject.  |
| 87 | f. | <i>Noblesse oblige</i> : much is rightly expected of one of high birth or station. |
| 88 | g. | <i>High calling</i> : noble profession.  |
| ,, | h. | <i>Honor bound</i> : in good faith, bound by one's honor.                          |
| 89 | i. | <i>To turn to account</i> : to make good use of.                                   |
| ,, | j. | <i>Out of harmony</i> : not in agreement.  |



## Page

- 90 k. *To play a part in:* to be actively associated with.  
 „ l. *To have due regard:* to have proper consideration.  
 91 m. *Well-to-do:* having comfortable property, prosperous.  
 „ n. *Great promise:* promising great hope.  
 92 o. *Open-mindedness:* freedom from bias or prejudice.  
 96 p. *Godspeed:* success; prosperous journey.

## LESSON XI

## VOCATIONAL EDUCATION AND NATIONAL IDEALS

B. H. CROCHERON

*Associate Professor of Agricultural Extension, University of California*

We are emerging<sup>1</sup> from our first conquest: we have conquered the lands. Farms stretch from coast to coast so that desert and forest push back to the corners of the continent. Our second conquest will be of machines. Already the wheels of industry turn almost of themselves, while unlimited power from the turbines<sup>2</sup> streams over wires to distant cities. So great have been our conquests, so many are the powers harnessed<sup>3</sup> to industrial life, that the casual<sup>4</sup> onlooker may be brought to conclude that industrial labor has been abolished by the accumulated<sup>5</sup> knowledge and surplus<sup>6</sup> property laid up for us by generations of the past and present. The man who lives in cities is likely to travel little and to see little because his routine<sup>7</sup> by its security and monotony<sup>8</sup> starves out all adventurous instinct.

---

<sup>1</sup> Rising out of, appearing. <sup>2</sup> A kind of water wheel having curved floats or buckets. <sup>3</sup> Connected up or made ready for work. <sup>4</sup> Accidental, occasional. <sup>5</sup> Increased, stored up. <sup>6</sup> Excess. <sup>7</sup> A regular course of business or duties. <sup>8</sup> Want of variety.

So the city man, traveling between his home and the office or store, complacently<sup>1</sup> dwells upon<sup>a</sup> this as the age of the mind and of machines. He charms himself into the belief that the time is here when man will no longer earn his living by the sweat of his brow,<sup>b</sup> but rather will sit in Jovian contemplation of a perfected mechanism which will turn the wheels of agriculture, of commerce, of manufacture, and of trade.

The truth is that the world still labors by muscle, not by mind. The farmer tills his lands from early morning till late at evening, trudging home at sunset, wet with sweat. The miner astride<sup>2</sup> his quivering drill knocks down his tons of ore and, gasping, comes up from his shift<sup>3</sup> to change sodden<sup>4</sup> clothes for dry. The mill worker and mechanic, with flying hands and fingers, beat through the day, and at night go out the gates tired of muscle and of brain. It would be well if those street-car and subway<sup>5</sup> philosophers who derive their image of America from across desk tops and the penny papers could make a tour of adventure and of exploration<sup>6</sup> to the mills of their town, the farms that lie about it, and the mines in the near-by hills. They would find that manual<sup>7</sup> labor is the means by which America lives and that men, not machines, are still the contact points with nature. And it is well that it is so. A new and terrible degeneracy<sup>8</sup> would no doubt creep in when the world sat down to watch nature do its

---

<sup>1</sup> Contentedly, with self-satisfaction. <sup>2</sup> Sitting with one leg on each side, as on a horse. <sup>3</sup> Turn of work. <sup>4</sup> Soaked, heavy with moisture. <sup>5</sup> Underground railway. <sup>6</sup> Act of examining thoroughly. <sup>7</sup> Done with the hands. <sup>8</sup> Degradation, state of becoming worse.



work. For man, mechanics is only an assistant, not a substitute.<sup>1</sup> Manual labor must remain the heritage<sup>2</sup> of the masses, their birthright<sup>3</sup> to earn their bread by the sweat of their brow.

Education must emphasize the need of manual labor and the desirability of doing that labor so well that it will produce abundantly for the needs of the individual and society. In the last century of America, formal<sup>4</sup> education has become universal, but it still clings to the ideals of the fortunate few to whom it was originally restricted<sup>5</sup>—those members of the nonlaboring class who were to do the planning, not the working, for the race. Education must aim at the heart of the problem<sup>c</sup> by teaching that manual labor is necessary and therefore honorable, and that education is a means whereby manual labor becomes more effective. Educators have long embraced<sup>6</sup> the theory that the province<sup>7</sup> of education is to deal with higher things than mere labor; that labor must come soon enough for the masses of children; and that, therefore, the brief time in schools must be made vacation period for the hands while the brain takes its short and final exercise, from whence, perforce,<sup>8</sup> it must come to rest when school days end and work begins. It seemed to them imperative<sup>9</sup> that the children of the masses should participate<sup>10</sup> for a time in that realm of thought and of scholasticism<sup>11</sup> to

---

<sup>1</sup> That which is put in the place of something. <sup>2</sup> Thing inherited, inheritance. <sup>3</sup> Any right, privilege or possession to which a person is entitled by birth. <sup>4</sup> Pertaining to form, conventional. <sup>5</sup> Limited. <sup>6</sup> Hold, cherish, accept. <sup>7</sup> Sphere. <sup>8</sup> Of necessity; at any rate. <sup>9</sup> Obligatory, compulsory. <sup>10</sup> Take part. <sup>11</sup> Methods or subtleties of the school of philosophy.



which they will probably never have an opportunity to return. As a result some complained that schools were incompetent,<sup>1</sup> that they had no relation to real life, and that educators were theorists<sup>2</sup> and dreamers. Meanwhile there sprang up a host of office boys, clerks, odd-job men, hangers-on, and others who had come through the school system to find the world a place wherein they were required to do something for a living and to do it by hand as well as by brain.

Only lately have persons grudgingly<sup>3</sup> admitted that schools should have some relation to occupation; that schools should be the training ground for work as well as for thought; and that manual labor on farms, in mines, in mills, and in shops, must be the heritage of the many who attend the public schools. In response to the demand for this occupational work, courses in manual training, home economics, and agriculture have crept into the school systems, and some persons are bold enough to term these courses "vocational." In truth few of them are yet really vocational, because they do not train for a vocation. Rather do they seem to give to the student a very limited amount of manual dexterity<sup>4</sup> and thought familiarity in these subjects. Manual training courses in the school do not train mechanics, home economics courses do not train housekeepers, nor do agricultural courses train farmers. Many manual training courses still putter<sup>5</sup> with tiny tables and jig-saw<sup>6</sup> work. Many home economics courses

---

<sup>1</sup> Inefficient. <sup>2</sup> One who theorises, an impractical man. <sup>3</sup> Unwillingly. <sup>4</sup> Nimbleness, skillfulness at performance. <sup>5</sup> Busy oneself with trifles, labor with little energy or effect. <sup>6</sup> Tiny saw.



peter out<sup>d</sup> in sticky candies badly made and impossible aprons poorly sewn. Most agricultural courses specialize in tiny gardens and never get out to the fields and farms.

Some of the best vocational and industrial teaching in America was the earliest. When General Armstrong created the first real industrial school in America at Hampton, in 1868, and thereby cut the Gordian knot<sup>e</sup> of education, he established a school which was truly vocational in that he trained men and women for daily work and turned out therefrom a finished product. From uneducated labor Hampton makes farmers, bricklayers, carpenters, and mechanics. Hampton is a vocational school. Such schools are only possible, however, where they are regarded as the essential form of education by those who are to be educated and by those who have the schools in charge. For real vocational education in manual pursuits<sup>1</sup> there is not yet wide demand from the common folk or from the educators. Both the people and the pedagogues<sup>2</sup> have received their education in schools of the old academic<sup>3</sup> type; they are therefore likely to regard the old type, which trained away from labor, as the only real education. Many schools have been founded upon the fond dream that they were to train for life's elemental occupations, only to find their trend<sup>4</sup> changed by the men who had their direction or by the people among whom they were to work.

---

<sup>1</sup> Occupations. <sup>2</sup> Schoolmasters. <sup>3</sup> Literary, in distinction from scientific. <sup>4</sup> Tendency.

The truth is that the mass of persons whom manual schools would benefit do not want such schools. They still desire to have their children study in the direction which to them means learning. Schools for the manual vocations, they believe, may be desirable for negroes and Indians, and perhaps for the people in the next town, or even possibly for their neighbors' children—but for their own children, never. These, they think, are destined for higher and better things.

We must teach and preach that “easy living” cannot be the lot of all, and therefore it is unsocial<sup>1</sup> and immoral for those who have not earned it. We must glorify manual labor by treating it fairly and squarely. We must educate manual labor by teaching it to labor better and more efficiently. We must hold forth manual work as a vocation which pays better in life and living than a clerkship. The farm has more of life than the ribbon counter; the machine shop pays better wages than the bank cage.

Public opinion can also be led and directed by means of a few privately supported schools which are independent of public opinion. Such schools, if successful, become popular by the superior ability of their graduates to earn money in the trades, and in turn serve as beacon lights for the slowly following public opinion and public education.

Public schools training for life—which is training for work—will make boys better farmers, better laborers, and better mechanics.

— *Vital Forces in Current Events.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Against the rule of society.



## QUESTIONS

1. What is the common fallacy regarding the progress of machinery in industry?
2. How is it proved that manual labor is still in excess of that of the mind?
3. Would it be well for mankind if manual labor were eliminated, and machines substituted?
4. What has been the universal conception regarding education? and what should be the real aim of education at present?
5. What has been the result of this wrong idea regarding the purpose of education, and what is the conclusion drawn?
6. Do vocational schools as exemplified by those in operation to-day justify the name? Why?
7. Why is the industrial school at Hampton truly vocational?
8. What should be our attitude toward manual labor?

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- |     |    |  |
|-----|----|--|
| 99  | a. | <i>To dwell upon:</i> to think of or talk for a long time about anything.              |
| ,,  | b. | <i>By the sweat of his brow:</i> laboriously, by hard manual work.                     |
| 100 | c. | <i>The heart of the problem:</i> the root of the question.                             |
| 102 | d. | <i>To peter out:</i> to fail, to run out.  |
| ,,  | e. | <i>To cut the Gordian knot:</i> to solve the difficulty by bold measures or summarily. |

## LESSON XII

## INDUSTRIAL EDUCATION IN CHINA

S. T. DEAN

There are three different types of education which the majority<sup>1</sup> of the people I have met are always mixing

---

<sup>1</sup> The greater number.

up in their minds. These are vocational education, industrial education, and technical education.

The very names of these three sorts of educational work should in themselves explain the kind of teaching work which they cover. By vocational education is simply meant the including in the courses of study such additional courses and new presentation of old courses as to give the student an idea of the many lines of work which life presents to him, and to give himself and the teacher an estimate<sup>1</sup> of the sort of work to which the child is best adapted, and in which he will do most for the world and be happiest. Industrial education takes up the training of the boy in his life work in connection with some one of the hand trades, while technical education should be the training of leaders of industry to a point where they can organize the labor of others into making useable products, competitive in price and quality with the world's markets. Vocational education is selective, industrial education intensive, and technical education broadening along its line of specialization.<sup>2</sup> In this paper we will deal only with the second type of education named and its application to China.

There can be no industrial education far separated from industry, and industry means hard work. Any attempt on the part of educators to give students a short and easy road to the knowledge of a trade through books and the ear rather than through grinding<sup>3</sup> work

---

<sup>1</sup> Calculation or judgment. <sup>2</sup> Devotion to a particular branch of knowledge or trade. <sup>3</sup> Drudging, studying hard.



with the hands is doomed<sup>1</sup> to failure. The things which books have to offer in the way of helping a student of industry are explanations of a task already done. I can tell you of a good many industrial schools in China which believe that industry can be taught in class, by means of lectures. I can tell you of students in such schools who have struck and had teachers turned out<sup>a</sup> because teachers were bold enough to demand that the students actually do some real shop work. I can tell you of schools where the little work that is done is performed by hired mechanics,<sup>2</sup> and where the students spend much of their time bothering these poor mechanics till even they cannot do a good job and become proverbially<sup>3</sup> useless after working a short time in such a school. These schools call themselves industrial schools; they have machines, they have shops, they turn out graduates who seldom follow the trades they have supposedly learned; often they have good, practical teachers who are doing their best to accomplish<sup>4</sup> results against really great odds,<sup>b</sup> but the whole attitude<sup>5</sup> of the students is that of contempt for work, and since in this paper we are talking about industrial schools, we can spend no more time on such institutions, which clearly are merely ordinary schools with some shop work courses and technical lecture courses. They do not teach thorough hard work, their graduates have not learned to work, nor can they earn a living with their hands; they are not factors in China's industrial problems.

---

<sup>1</sup> Condemned. <sup>2</sup> One skilled in the theory and construction of machines. <sup>3</sup> Commonly, generally. <sup>4</sup> To achieve. <sup>5</sup> State of mind.



It is a good thing for China that most of her industrials do not depend upon schools of the above mentioned description. It is also a good thing that most of China's industrial education is given by means of a system so old that a few educational mistakes on the part of educators, and unwillingness to work on the part of students, cannot hurt the country to any great extent.

There are several really good industrial schools in the country. Nearly all of such schools have the following things in common: The students are poor, often orphans; the students work as apprentices under workmen, and make things which the market is calling for and which they can sell in competition in quality and price with other shops. An educational program<sup>1</sup> consisting of regular school work, or sometimes of elementary lectures on the theory of their trade, accompanies the work. Such courses are given but part of the day, and sometimes only at night. The student is paid either by clothes, food, and lodging or by money for the work he does, and generally the school is more or less self-supporting. Equipment<sup>2</sup> is generally poorer, living conditions worse, and teachers apt to be less idealistic<sup>3</sup> than in the schools where there is more school and less industry; but investigation shows that most of these graduates go out into Chinese industry as journeymen,<sup>4</sup> often become owners of small shops of their own, and later on become influential men in the community.

---

<sup>1</sup> Outline of the order or nature of work. <sup>2</sup> Outfit; necessary tools.  
<sup>3</sup> Theoretical, visionary. <sup>4</sup> One who has mastered a handicraft or trade.



The reason for the success of the graduates of these seemingly modest schools is self-evident. The boy has learned to take what is at hand<sup>o</sup> and make the best of<sup>d</sup> it to get something better. He has learned the great economic lesson of life, that wealth is the product of work, and that the only wealth a man can bank and turn into useable capital is the work he can accumulate over and above<sup>e</sup> the effort he needs to expend to supply his daily necessities. He doesn't expect anything from the world but a hard life, plenty of knocks, a fighting chance to better himself if he will everlastingly work hard enough. This sort of graduate is apt to be a little materialistic,<sup>1</sup> without great faith in the trustworthiness<sup>2</sup> of men in general. But, peculiarly enough, he is also in a practical way often found to be the foremost man in any progressive measure<sup>3</sup> taken for the benefit of his district.

Closely allied to the above type of school is the "kung ch'ang" (工廠), for the teaching of handwork to women and girls. It must be admitted by all men engaged in educational work that the most practical things being done in industrial education in China, outside of business for business' sake, are being done by the women, for the women. There is no doubt of the success of the many schools which exist on a self-supporting basis, and which indeed help support the workers' families, which are really adding to the beautiful art treasures of the world a great number of products. They are carrying Chinese ideas out to

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to material interests. <sup>2</sup> Reliability. <sup>3</sup> Step of a progressive policy.



all the world and enabling the West to more truly appreciate the East than anything else could do. I have no doubt whatever that many an Occidental<sup>1</sup> family has learned to love the Chinese people because they first learned to love some dainty bit of cross-stitch or embroidery. There can be nothing greater than teaching the Chinese people to earn a living through the expression of beauty in marketable products. Many of the "kung ch'angs" are carrying on class work in close connection with their shop work and are, besides all that, training their workers to take better care of their homes. This is real industrial education of the highest type. A mother who has learned something about the care of her children, who has learned to dream of better things for those children than her ancestors have thought necessary to give their progeny,<sup>2</sup> and who is economically independent to an extent where she can at least have some say<sup>3</sup> in ruling the family's destinies,<sup>3</sup> is going to write history in the lives of her descendants.

As a matter of fact the greatest number of China's industrial schools are not thought of as schools at all, and yet nearly all of China's industrial education is given in them. Every shop is a school of industry, and every apprentice<sup>4</sup> is a student whose teacher is a workman. The trade is learned by arduous<sup>5</sup> labor. For a great part of the time the boy is little more than a slave who does the odds and ends<sup>5</sup> of any sort of work his master wants done, and during that time he

---

<sup>1</sup> Western.    <sup>2</sup> Offspring, descendants.    <sup>3</sup> Fate, lot.    <sup>4</sup> Learner in trade.    <sup>5</sup> Difficult, trying.



must be a clever boy or have an exceptional<sup>1</sup> master, or be apprenticed to a relative, if he is to learn any thing of the trade whatever. It is not until pretty close to the end of his course that the boy is shown how to do things connected with the trade, and even then he is often not taught in any complete way but is kept in ignorance to any possible extent, for fear he will become a real competitor of the master. Most boys finish their apprenticeship and become journeymen without being really proficient.<sup>2</sup> They work as they can get work, and, by hard knocks and sad experience in earning a living, gain such experience and ability as they can, and in turn hide their learning from their apprentices. It is a hard life, a hard system of education, and yet, such as it is, it has fed and clothed China for hundreds of years. Let us not be too free in our criticism<sup>3</sup> of a system which can keep a country from economic ruin, without very close study of its good and bad points.

Certainly we can say for the Chinese system of industrial education through apprenticeship, that there has been kept alive in the country a real love of handwork for handwork's sake. The Chinese workman is a true artist and a happy craftsman,<sup>4</sup> which is more than we can say of most of our industrial workers in the West to-day. The Chinese skilled worker is a slave to his long hours, his poor food, his low wages, his poor clothes and poor house, his lack of education other than in the allied<sup>5</sup> experiences that go with his

---

<sup>1</sup> Not ordinary or common.    <sup>2</sup> Skilled, adept.    <sup>3</sup> Act of passing judgment upon the merits of.    <sup>4</sup> Skilled worker.    <sup>5</sup> Related.



trade. But he is a free man when it comes to the expression of the things he has learned in making saleable products, for he is much more his own master than an occidental workman would ever be able to be. He works at everything he has learned in his trade and really creates, while the Occidental of this age is merely a part of the great machine in turning out someone else's ideas.

It is my own humble belief that the only sort of industrial school for China is one which closely imitates the apprentice system of teaching; which places students in an environment<sup>1</sup> the next step ahead of the present Chinese shop; which is self-supporting, makes the students work hard or get out, and pays the students market rates for the work they do; which adds to the apprentice system two essential and different qualities: First, systematic education of the boy in the trade he is following, by means of closely supervised<sup>2</sup> work on all parts of the trade being learned, and by means of explanatory lectures and quizzes<sup>3</sup> following the work being undertaken; second, the giving of a broadening course<sup>4</sup> of liberal<sup>4</sup> education, for not too long a time, each day.

I do not wish anyone to gain the opinion that I think all schools should be turned into workshops. Not at all. There is room in the country for all kinds of education. Even many of the present industrial schools, which turn out so few people into the industrial field, serve their purpose in making more practical men in other

---

<sup>1</sup> Surrounding. <sup>2</sup> Superintended. <sup>3</sup> Exercises conducted as an examination. <sup>4</sup> Broad or general as opposed to technical.



walks of life.<sup>1</sup> I do, however, plead for a realization of the fact that the country's economic progress does depend on the progress of industry; that this progress depends upon the broadening of the present successful system of apprentice education to a point where the apprentice really learns his trade, and also learns enough, or more, to enable him to get above the common mass and pull China out of her present muddle,<sup>1</sup> using as his tools the things which China has at hand to be used, things which can be used only by a practical man who has learned that work. And work only can accomplish results.

— *Chinese Social and Political Science Review.*

### QUESTIONS

1. Explain the differences between vocational, industrial, and technical education.
2. What is the distinctive and essential feature of industrial education?
3. Give some of the reasons why most of our so-called industrial schools are failures?
4. What are the essential factors in a successful industrial school in China to-day? How does it prove its success?
5. Give the reasons for the success of the graduates of such industrial schools?
6. What are the particular kinds of work which the "kung ch'ang" is carrying on; and what is its contribution to China?
7. Describe the system of apprenticeship.
8. Do you consider such a system good or bad? Give reasons for your opinion.

---

<sup>1</sup> State of being confused.

9. What kind of industrial school would you suggest for China?
10. On what does China's economic progress depend?

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- 106 a. *To turn out*: expel, drive out.
- „ b. *Against odds*: against difficulties and obstacles.
- 108 c. *At hand*: near the place or time.
- „ d. *To make the best of*: to do as well as possible under given circumstances.
- „ e. *Over and above*: besides; beyond what is supposed or limited.
- 109 f. *To have a say*: to be allowed to express one's opinion; to participate in.
- „ g. *Odds and ends*: remnants; fragments.
- 111 h. *Broadening course*: liberalizing course of study.
- 112 i. *Walk of life*: vocation, profession.

## LESSON XIII

## GENERAL ENGINEERING EDUCATION

T. S. YEH

China, in common with<sup>a</sup> some other countries, lacks educational institutions that will turn out men fitted to work under the conditions incidental to<sup>b</sup> her stage of development. The old-fashioned literary man, who was supposed to be capable of doing everything, has utterly failed in the solution of new technical<sup>1</sup> problems, and a need is felt throughout the country for specially trained men. As a result, there are established schools bearing specific<sup>2</sup> names such as railroad college, telegraph and postal service school, mining college, etc.; and recently

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to the useful or mechanic, arts, or any science, business, or the like. <sup>2</sup> Definite, precise.



a proposal has been made to establish a school of hydraulic<sup>1</sup> engineering for the specific purpose of improving rivers. The writer, however, believes in a general engineering education, and proposes to discuss in this article the need for general engineering schools that will train men to undertake work of an engineering nature instead of schools having specific names and failing to fulfill their purpose.

Engineering, as defined by Tredgold, is "the art of directing the great sources of power in nature for the use and convenience of man." On the basis of this definition, the nature and extent of the study of engineering can readily be ascertained. The laws governing matter form the fundamentals<sup>2</sup> of modern engineering, and a failure to grasp these laws on the part of an engineering student is a sure guarantee of his failure as an engineer.

Half a century ago there were only two divisions of engineering — military and civil. The latter has divided and subdivided itself into numerous branches, and to enumerate<sup>3</sup> and define all of them would be a Herculean task.<sup>c</sup> There are, however, principles and laws which underlie all these little branches of engineering. The interdependence of one branch upon the other in any engineering undertaking of to-day has served to emphasize the need of a broad knowledge<sup>d</sup> on the part of a successful engineer. Name an engineering work of some magnitude<sup>4</sup> and you will quickly appreciate the vastness of the profession.

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to fluid in motion.    <sup>2</sup> Essential or important elements.    <sup>3</sup> To count, to number.    <sup>4</sup> Greatness.



The object of an engineering school, then, is to give the men choosing engineering as their profession a clear understanding of the fundamental laws of nature with particular application to those branches of engineering which they wish to follow on their graduation. Misunderstanding the function of an engineering school, many men believe that schools can turn out engineers. A little examination of the nature of practical work will convince anyone that engineers are never produced ready-made<sup>o</sup> in schools. On the contrary, many engineers of wide renown never had the chance of a formal<sup>1</sup> school education.<sup>f</sup> This, however, by no means lowers the practical value of a sound and thorough school training.

The undergraduate courses in American engineering schools are not highly specialized,<sup>2</sup> and as a result graduates can readily enter into any branch of engineering. Such a plan is highly desirable and it is only to be deplored<sup>3</sup> that it has not been carried out to its fullest extent, and that the present tendency<sup>4</sup> seems to be in favor of a too early specialization. A student of engineering may have some reason for choosing engineering as his profession, but he can never have any reason for choosing civil or mining instead of electrical or mechanical engineering. A criticism often made by some of the older professional men is that many young college graduates fail to give an answer when asked about their aims and objects. Such a criticism seems to be entirely unnecessary, and a failure to give an intelligent answer to that question reflects no discredit<sup>e</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> According to form or organization.    <sup>2</sup> Applied to a particular branch of knowledge.    <sup>3</sup> Regretted.    <sup>4</sup> Drift, disposition.



on the character and ability of the youths. The needs of any community are often complicated and diversified,<sup>1</sup> and a young man should always hold himself ready to serve the community to the best of his ability. In other words, he ought to adapt himself to the needs of the community of which he is an integral<sup>2</sup> part. He may contribute the best of his life in one way at one time and in another way at another time. Engineering students are not necessarily bound to enter the profession of engineering on their graduation, and, in fact, a perusal<sup>3</sup> of the record of graduates of any engineering institution will show that they represent a diversified life. In short, an engineering education should aim to develop a broad sphere of usefulness, diametrically opposite<sup>4</sup> to a trade or apprenticeship course which narrows a man's usefulness to only one certain field of human activity.

A study of the existing conditions of China will show that men of broad engineering training are in great demand. Problems of city improvement, transportation, communication, irrigation,<sup>4</sup> prevention of floods, and many other things can only be solved by men of scientific training and good judgment. The former can best be obtained from a general engineering course, and the latter from experience. The best course for the Chinese youths to take, if they wish to follow engineering as their profession, would be a four-year course starting with the elements of mathematics, physics, and chemistry, and followed by the elements of engineering—

---

<sup>1</sup> Made diverse or various. <sup>2</sup> Essential to completeness. <sup>3</sup> Act of reading. <sup>4</sup> Act of watering (land) by causing a stream to flow over it.



civil, mechanical, electrical, and mining. A two-year postgraduate course might be followed, but this seems to be hardly necessary when we consider the diversified and interesting applications that one can make of the elementary principles while engaged in practical work. The object of such a four-year course should be to unlock the door to knowledge, train the mind to correlate<sup>1</sup> theory<sup>2</sup> with practice, and awaken a keen desire for study. The graduates from such a course may enter into any field of engineering, and they will be just as efficient as, if not more efficient than, the men from special schools. It must be clearly understood that no school, however specialized it may be, can turn out men that are perfect engineers. Experience alone can make an engineer, provided, of course, a thorough knowledge of the basic<sup>3</sup> principles has been secured either in school or side by side with the practical work. The laboratory exercises, shop work, drafting,<sup>4</sup> designing,<sup>5</sup> and other courses of a practical nature should be designed to develop the student's ability in logical thinking and correct presentation of facts discovered, rather than to teach the practical work itself. In fact, so far as practical work itself is concerned, the college is far behind the actual practice, and the writer sees no reason why the former should keep pace with<sup>1</sup> the latter when there is an impossibility and unnecessariness to do so.

The common sense of engineering should be emphasized throughout the entire college course. Problems with

---

<sup>1</sup> Put into mutual relation. <sup>2</sup> Hypothesis, scheme of things.  
<sup>3</sup> Fundamental, essential. <sup>4</sup> Drawing the plans or skeletons. <sup>5</sup> Preliminary sketch, delineation.



such data as to lead to ridiculous answers (which are not uncommon in some textbooks) should be avoided. Simple and straightforward reasoning, whenever possible, is infinitely better than an involved discussion full of mathematical formulae<sup>1</sup> and jugglings<sup>2</sup> which only confound the student's mind. Lectures concerning the scope and nature of engineering as a profession (similar to those contained in a book entitled "Addresses to Engineering Students" and edited by two American engineers of national reputation) should be freely given. Such lectures will not only develop in the student a keen sense of dignity and responsibility, but will inspire him to greater efforts for achievement and stronger determination to render service to the community.

A thorough knowledge of the mother tongue is most essential in addition to, and notwithstanding, a good technical training. While a study of classics and literature, which formed the only study of Chinese students not long ago, is impossible and unnecessary, the ability to write and speak forcibly and concisely<sup>3</sup> is the keynote to success. This ability should, of course, be developed in the preparatory school and only be strengthened during the college course. How often we see in America college graduates who write incorrect English, and who, whenever called upon to make a brief address, look half dumb, scratching their heads and attempting to cough. And yet we find that such men have gone through all courses in English, including works of Shakespeare and other great writers!

---

<sup>1</sup> Rules or principles expressed algebraically. <sup>2</sup> Deception by trick or artifice. <sup>3</sup> Briefly, shortly.



Such a condition seems to indicate that the method of teaching the language is wrong, representing in a much smaller degree the miserable state of affairs that existed in our country when our boys could recite volume after volume of classics without being able to write a simple sentence. Many people, including some of the engineering profession, claim that attainment<sup>1</sup> in classics and in Greek and Latin is essential to develop the thinking power and analytical<sup>2</sup> ability. What an absurdity<sup>3</sup> it is to say that a man of the twentieth century, without being conversant with<sup>4</sup> the modern style of expression, could think and analyze in these old and dead languages! The writer's opinion is that no advanced study can be profitable nor should be attempted without having a well-grounded<sup>4</sup> fundamental knowledge. If a graduate feels he is weak in the elementary knowledge and can afford the time for further study, let him go through over again those fundamentals instead of any advanced postgraduate work.

Under the wrong impression that schools can turn out perfect engineers, the Chinese authorities, whenever charged with<sup>k</sup> a certain undertaking of an engineering nature, make it a starting point to establish a school bearing the name of that engineering undertaking, and cases are on record<sup>1</sup> where the undertaking itself collapsed<sup>5</sup> before the school had turned out its first class of graduates. On the other hand, little effort

---

<sup>1</sup> Acquirement, anything obtained by exertion. <sup>2</sup> Resolving into elements or constituent parts. <sup>3</sup> Foolishness, inconsistency.

<sup>4</sup> Well-established. <sup>5</sup> Fell together suddenly.



has been made to give the young men a broad engineering education as outlined in this paper, which, I believe, is the only solution of the problem of meeting the nation-wide demand for technically trained men. Furthermore, some people are inclined to think that the equipment of a general engineering institution needs to be so complete that the present financial conditions do not warrant any attempt of such a nature. As a matter of fact, most of the American colleges had a humble beginning, and in some of them the laboratories and shops are still poorly equipped. This is an avoidable condition and must be clearly impressed upon our people. In a provincial preparatory school which the writer attended some years ago, the bulk<sup>1</sup> of apparatus<sup>2</sup> for physics and chemistry could not be equalled in some of the American college. Of course, most of such apparatus was never used, either by the teachers for demonstration<sup>3</sup> or by the students for experimentation. When the school closed its doors on account of lack of funds, the way of disposing of that collection of apparatus was not known. The idea of slow progress and constant accumulation<sup>4</sup> is apparently lacking in some of our people; and, unless such an idea prevails, years will have to pass without seeing any extension of our educational facilities.<sup>5</sup> The practice of spending large sums of money for constructing a school building, and closing its doors after a few years' operation, or stopping the construction before its completion, should be condemned. We should make no jump, nor should

---

<sup>1</sup> Greater part. <sup>2</sup> A set of implements or appliances for a specific use. <sup>3</sup> Act of explaining. <sup>4</sup> Increase. <sup>5</sup> Aids.

we stop climbing. The goal can only be reached by persistent and painstaking effort on our part.

—*The Chinese Students' Monthly.*

### QUESTIONS

1. What kinds of men does China at present need to solve her modern problems, and what has been done to meet the situation?
2. Define the term engineering, and state the fundamental principle governing modern engineering.
3. Why should an engineer need a broad knowledge of engineering?
4. What is the true object of an engineering school? Is it true that mere formal education can produce good engineers?
5. Give your reasons why a general engineering education for the undergraduate is desirable.
6. Can a mere general education in engineering fit a man for particular service (such as transportation, communication, irrigation, flood prevention, etc.) in the community? How?
7. What is the aim of a general engineering course, and for what particular purpose should courses of practical nature (such as laboratory exercises, shopwork, etc.) be introduced?
8. Explain what is meant by common-sense engineering.
9. Is a thorough knowledge of the English language necessary in the study of engineering? What is the reason why many of our students in colleges to-day are so deficient in their English?
10. Is a specialized engineering school with a well-equipped laboratory necessary in order to turn out technically trained men?



## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- 113 a. *In common with*: equally with another, or with others.  
 „ b. *Incidental to*: accidental to.  
 114 c. *A Herculean task*: a very difficult task.  
 „ d. *A broad knowledge*: knowing something about everything;  
 a general knowledge.  
 115 e. *Ready-made*: ready for use.  
 „ f. *Formal school education*: education acquired in a regular  
 educational institution by following a certain prescribed  
 curriculum.  
 „ g. *To reflect discredit*: to cast reproach or blame upon.  
 116 h. *Diametrically opposite*: directly opposite; differing widely.  
 117 i. *To keep pace with*: to move at the same speed; to progress  
 with equal rapidity.  
 119 j. *Conversant with*: familiar with; versed in.  
 „ k. *To be charged with*: to be entrusted with.  
 „ l. *To be on record*: to have been noticed; to have happened.

## LESSON XIV

THE IMPORTANCE OF MEDICINE IN THE  
DEVELOPMENT OF CHINA

PROFESSOR VICTOR C. VAUGHAN

*Dean of Medical Department of Michigan University and President  
of American Medical Association*

If the Chinese people are wise enough to see and understand the importance of scientific medicine in national development, it may be of great service to them. No nation which neglects the health of its citizens can be great, or, having won greatness, can long retain it. The history of the world shows that disease has been a most potent factor in national deterioration.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Degeneration, state of growing worse.

It is now quite certain that the most potent factor in the decline of the ancient civilizations of Egypt, Greece, and Rome was disease.

The hundreds of medical missionaries, who in isolated parts of China have carried the blessings of scientific medicine, have demonstrated<sup>1</sup> its value in race betterment. Two Chinese women, Dr. Kahn and Dr. Stone, who studied medicine in this country some years ago, have demonstrated the great value of scientifically-trained Chinese physicians. It is stated—I know not how accurate these statements are—that there are many thousands of people in China blind as a result of smallpox. I believe that in certain parts of China inoculation<sup>2</sup> for smallpox is still practiced. This should be supplanted by vaccination,<sup>3</sup> and this horribly disfiguring disease should be eradicated.<sup>4</sup>

Tuberculosis<sup>5</sup> in some parts of China is doing exceedingly deadly work. We have no statistics<sup>6</sup> giving the death rate from this or any other disease, but it is the testimony<sup>7</sup> of medical men who have visited China that tuberculosis is one of the most formidable foes to the health of the people. China should take heed<sup>a</sup> to what has been done in the United States, where in the last thirty years the deaths from consumption have been decreased more than fifty per cent.

Amœbic dysentery† is another powerful cause of death in China. Scientific medicine has placed in the hands

---

<sup>1</sup> Shown. <sup>2</sup> To communicate disease to a person by inserting infections matter in the skin. <sup>3</sup> Act of inoculating virus as preventive measure. <sup>4</sup> Rooted out. <sup>5</sup> A constitutional disease producing common consumption. <sup>6</sup> Tabulated, classified facts. <sup>†</sup> Proof, evidence.



of the physician quite a sure cure for this disease when taken in its early stages.

Certain parts of China, especially the seaport towns, are largely infected with venereal<sup>1</sup> disease. Thorough scientific education will do much to eradicate this plague.

The successful fight against the bubonic plague,† or "black death," in Manchuria a few years ago should impress a lesson of great value upon the Chinese people. While missionary physicians are doing much in China, no great system of preventive<sup>2</sup> medicine can grow up in that country until a relatively large number of its own sons and daughters take up the study of medicine and put its scientific principles into practice.

We are expecting much of China. It has been, as it were, asleep for centuries. Now it has awakened. Full of vigor and strength, its sons and daughters are flocking to the United States of America in order to become initiated in<sup>b</sup> Western science. Certainly these people should not wholly neglect scientific medicine. In China medicine must become a social service.<sup>c</sup> To return one incapacitated<sup>3</sup> by illness or injury to the condition of self-support benefits not only the individual but the community, inasmuch as it increases its productive<sup>4</sup> capacity. Sickness is a direct burden on the individual and scarcely less direct on the community. It seems to me that there is a golden opportunity for China to utilize to the fullest extent scientific medicine both for curative<sup>5</sup> and preventive purposes. The medical schools

---

<sup>1</sup> Arising from sexual intercourse. <sup>2</sup> That prevents. <sup>3</sup> Disabled.  
<sup>4</sup> Capable of producing. <sup>5</sup> Tending to cure.



being established in China by Harvard University and the University of Pennsylvania should be supported not only by gifts from this country but by the intelligence and appreciation of the Chinese people.

Profiting by the experience of the West, China should avoid some of the pitfalls<sup>d</sup> into which Western civilization has fallen. Chinese law should see that quackery<sup>1</sup> never has any support in that country, and should demand that the medical man shall possess intelligence of a high order,<sup>e</sup> shall manifest industry without stint,<sup>2</sup> and show the highest integrity in all that he does.

China is quite right in insisting that large numbers of the students coming to this country should take up engineering, but engineering without a knowledge of scientific medicine is of but little avail.<sup>f</sup> This is demonstrated in the history of the Panama Canal. The French were great engineers, and were able to cope with<sup>g</sup> every engineering problem connected with the construction of that canal, but they not only failed to build the canal but left the bones of thousands and tens of thousands of Frenchmen to testify to their ignorance of preventive medicine. It was not until scientific medicine and engineering combined that the building of the Panama Canal became an accomplished fact.<sup>h</sup>

China should not be content with adopting Western medicine, but should improve upon it. Medicine consists of those facts gathered from the various sciences which can be utilized in the prevention and cure of disease. All else which may come under the name of

---

<sup>1</sup> Pretension to medical skill. <sup>2</sup> Limit.



medicine is sham<sup>1</sup> and fraud. Without advancement in the physical, chemical, and biologic<sup>2</sup> sciences there can be no progressive movement in medicine. Scientific knowledge is gained only by observation and experiment. Before the time of Jenner,† we are told by the historians, it was unusual to meet in London one whose face was not marked by smallpox. There was a popular belief that one who had cowpox was immune to<sup>1</sup> smallpox. Jenner put this belief to a scientific test, and the result was the discovery of vaccination, and this secured the abolition of this disfigurement<sup>3</sup> and a marked reduction in mortality.

In 1849 a village doctor with a crude microscope studied the blood of animals sick with anthrax<sup>4</sup> and compared it with the blood of healthy ones. He discovered the anthrax bacillus.<sup>5</sup> This work was extended by many investigators, and in this way the science of bacteriology has been developed. The particular causes of many infectious diseases have been recognized, isolated, and their effects on animals demonstrated. Many of the mysteries of contagion<sup>6</sup> have been cleared up<sup>1</sup> and conditions of the transmission of disease made known. In this way the fundamental principles of preventive medicine have been developed into a science which is to-day the most potent factor in the progress of civilization. Finlay suspected a certain mosquito to be the carrier of the virus of yellow fever. Reed and his co-workers demonstrated the truth

---

<sup>1</sup> Delusion, imposture. <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to the science of life. <sup>3</sup> De-facement, blot. <sup>4</sup> Carbuncle; an infectious disease of cattle. <sup>5</sup> A variety of microscopic organism. <sup>6</sup> Infection, transmission of disease from one person to another.



of this theory, and the work of Gorgas† freed Cuba† from the pestilence<sup>1</sup> and rendered the construction of the Panama Canal possible. Laveran, a French army surgeon at an isolated post in Algiers, discovered the plasmodium malarias.† The Englishman, Ross, studied its life history and now the fetters of this disease, which has so long retarded the progress of man, have been broken.<sup>k</sup> Mitchell and Reichart investigated the poisonous properties of snake venom. Sewall immunized animals with it. Ehrlich studied similar bodies, and Behring and Roux gave the world diphtheria<sup>2</sup> antitoxin,<sup>3</sup> the magical curative value of which had greatly reduced the mortality<sup>4</sup> from this disease. The French experimenter, Villemin, demonstrated the contagious nature of tuberculosis, which had long been suspected but frequently denied. The diligent research of the German professor, Koch,† resulted in the recognition and isolation of the bacillus of this disease, and since this discovery the mortality from the Great White Plague in Europe and in the United States has been diminished more than half, and we are justified<sup>5</sup> in looking forward to the time when the former "Captain of the Hosts of Death" will be known only by the fearful records he once made in the history of man's struggle to be relieved of the heavy tribute<sup>6</sup> paid<sup>1</sup> to infection.

As I have stated, China must not only adopt scientific medicine as developed by Western civilization, but in

---

<sup>1</sup> Plague. <sup>2</sup> A very dangerous disease of the throat. <sup>3</sup> Remedy against poison. <sup>4</sup> Death. <sup>5</sup> Proved to be just or right. <sup>6</sup> A sum paid by one ruler or nation to another in token of submission.



time she must add to it. She must build and equip laboratories, encourage investigation, make a sanitary<sup>1</sup> survey of every part of the great empire, remove all conditions which are detrimental to health, and make her people strong and vigorous in body; and as a natural result they will gain strength in mind and in morals. There is a moral obligation resting upon every nation to contribute to scientific discovery, because it is only through such discoveries that physical, intellectual, and moral growth becomes possible. There is a moral obligation resting upon the individual, the community, the nation, to be intelligent. Ignorance is a vice, and a government which does not attempt to replace ignorance by intelligence is not rendering its people the highest service. When ignorance results in injury to anyone or to any group of individuals, it becomes a crime, a moral, if not a statutory<sup>2</sup> one, and that nation which does not take care of the health of its people can have no proper claim<sup>m</sup> of high intellectuality or morality. The purpose of government is to protect its citizens, and a government which fails to shelter its citizens against infection is neither intelligent nor moral. It may have a certain fictitious<sup>3</sup> growth in commerce, and possibly in politics, but it can never become a great factor for good in the uplift of mankind.

In the various provinces of China the government must, sooner or later—the sooner the better—install<sup>4</sup> intelligent health commissioners, whose business it shall

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to health. <sup>2</sup> Enacted by regulation or decree. <sup>3</sup> Imaginary, not real. <sup>4</sup> Establish.



be to prevent disease, to conserve the public health, to collect morbidity<sup>1</sup> statistics, to hunt out all abnormalities<sup>2</sup> such as feeble-mindedness,<sup>3</sup> tuberculosis, insanity, etc. The health of the children must be watched and guarded if a nation is to grow great. In every province not only must there be this health officer with sanitary inspectors, but provision must be made<sup>4</sup> for laboratories in which not only routine work must be done but where research can be carried out. Every nation has its own peculiar health problems. In a nation so vast in extent, so diversified<sup>4</sup> in soil and climate, so densely populated, as China, the health problem is one which most seriously affects the future welfare and development of the people.

If China be wise beyond Western civilization, it will provide for the examination of all its citizens once or twice a year. The benefits which would result from such a service are so evident, even to the laity,<sup>5</sup> that detail hardly seems desirable. When recognized in their earliest stages, most of the diseases which now make up our high mortality lists are amenable to<sup>6</sup> treatment. Even in our own country, the early recognition of tuberculosis, cancer,<sup>6</sup> diabetes,<sup>7</sup> Bright's disease,<sup>†</sup> heart disease, with the elimination<sup>8</sup> of the more acute infectious diseases, would add something like fifteen years to the average life besides saving much in invalidism<sup>9</sup> and suffering. The ultimate goal of science

---

<sup>1</sup> Unhealthy state. <sup>2</sup> State of not being normal or ordinary.  
<sup>3</sup> Mental weakness. <sup>4</sup> Distinguished by various forms. <sup>5</sup> Non-professional people. <sup>6</sup> Malignant disease. <sup>7</sup> Disease attended by persistent excessive discharge of urine. <sup>8</sup> Act of expelling. <sup>9</sup> State of sickness.



is the domination<sup>1</sup> of the forces of nature and their utilization in promoting the welfare of mankind. Science must discover the facts and medicine must make the application for either cure or prevention.

The highest function of any government is to advance to the highest degree the health, intelligence, and morality of its citizens, and this can be accomplished only by the encouragement of scientific discovery and the application of these discoveries in preventive and curative medicine. — *The Chinese Students' Monthly*

### QUESTIONS

1. Wherein lies the importance of medicine in the development of a nation?
2. What is the difference between inoculation and vaccination?
3. What do you understand by tuberculosis and what do you think is the cause of it?
4. What is amœbic dysentery? and what is the cause of this disease?
5. Point out what are the effects of venereal disease, and how is it best eradicated?
6. What is meant by preventive medicine?
7. What do you understand by "social service"?
8. In what way does sickness become a loss to the community?
9. Wherein lies the danger of quackery in medicine?
10. Show that medicine is equally important with engineering in the development of a country.
11. What are the necessary factors in the progress of medicine?

---

<sup>1</sup> Exercise of power in ruling, rule.

12. Who discovered the method of vaccination? and with what result?
13. What is anthrax bacillus, and to what did it lead?
14. What are the individual contributions of Finlay, Reed, Gorgas, Laveran, Ross, Mitchell and Reichart, Ehrlich, Behring and Roux, and Villemin?
15. Who was Koch and what did he accomplish?
16. How can China develop the health of the people in the country?
17. Is there any relation between medicine and morality? How?
18. What is the most important duty of a government? Why?
19. What are the duties of a health commissioner?
20. Give your reasons why a system of physical examination of citizens is most desirable?
21. What is the highest function of any government? And how can this be accomplished in regard to our own government?

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

### Page

- |     |    |   |
|-----|----|---|
| 123 | a. | <i>To take heed:</i> to take care; to pay attention.                        |
| 124 | b. | <i>To become initiated in:</i> to acquire knowledge of.                     |
| ,,  | c. | <i>Social service:</i> service to society.                                  |
| 125 | d. | <i>To avoid pitfalls:</i> to avoid errors.                                  |
| ,,  | e. | <i>Intelligence of a high order:</i> great intelligence.                    |
| ,,  | f. | <i>Of little avail:</i> of little use; productive of no results.            |
| ,,  | g. | <i>To cope with:</i> to find a solution, to find a way out of.              |
| ,,  | h. | <i>To become an accomplished fact:</i> to be realized.                      |
| 126 | i. | <i>To be immune:</i> not to be affected.                                    |
| ,,  | j. | <i>To clear up:</i> to explain.   |
| 127 | k. | <i>To break the fetters:</i> to free, to liberate.                          |
| ,,  | l. | <i>To pay a heavy tribute:</i> to make a great sacrifice, pay a high price. |
| 128 | m. | <i>To have a claim:</i> to be entitled.                                     |
| 129 | n. | <i>To make provisions:</i> to prepare for; to find ways and means.          |
| ,,  | o. | <i>To be amenable:</i> to be subject to, to be responsive (to treatment).   |



## LESSON XV

## MODERN INDUSTRY IN CHINA

MISS W. T. ZUNG

*Industrial Secretary, Y. W. C. A.*

Until the opening up of the country to foreign trade China was for centuries satisfied with everything her own—her art and literature, her mode of living, her social customs, her ways of manufacturing articles, and what not. Being shut away from the rest of the world, how could anything from the West affect<sup>1</sup> her? It was therefore but natural for China to be absolutely calm while the West was pretty much disturbed by the industrial revolution in the latter part of the eighteenth century.

But things changed when China began to have contact with the outside world. Just a little over three decades<sup>2</sup> ago, along with the introduction of new ideas from the West, came modern methods of industry. Although the history of modern industry in China is yet young, still its development has proven to be marvelously rapid and indications<sup>3</sup> are that it has come to stay.

Perhaps mere comments<sup>4</sup> on the rapidity of development without being accompanied by some cold figures<sup>5</sup> would not be very comprehensible<sup>5</sup> to us. The following, which may help us to form some idea of the development of modern industry in China, is taken from a report—"Commercial, Industrial, and Economic

---

<sup>1</sup> Act upon, produce an effect upon. <sup>2</sup> Ten years. <sup>3</sup> Signs. <sup>4</sup> Remarks, criticism. <sup>5</sup> Understandable, capable of being understood.

Development" — by M. T. Tchou, Head of the Industrial Department of the National Y. M. C. A. of China. He writes:

"A recent estimate in China puts the number of modern factories at 1,400 (not including thousands of semi-modern ones); among these may be mentioned 80 cotton spinning and weaving mills, 218 silk filatures, 95 flour mills, 82 electric lighting plants, 121 oil mills and bean cake factories, 43 albumen factories, 51 cement and brick works, 58 printing presses, 54 soap and candle factories, 51 telephone companies, and numerous other factories manufacturing goods of all kinds that were formerly imported from other countries.

"During the last few years the lace, embroidery, and hairnet industries in Shantung have been developed to a considerable degree and have given remunerative<sup>1</sup> employment to hundreds of people in that province."

From the commercial point of view, the above figures promise an encouraging future for the economic development of the country. But on the human side, despite the shortness of time, this industrial development has brought those urgent problems of which only modern industry can be the cause.

Aside from the "problems" that seem to characterize<sup>2</sup> modern industry, people's minds in industrial centers have gradually and unconsciously undergone a change towards the time-honored<sup>b</sup> customs and systems. Carpenters in Shanghai or Canton can scarcely be seen these days feasting and worshipping in the Temple

---

<sup>1</sup> Profitable. <sup>2</sup> Distinguish, show the character of.



of Lupan; but instead, they will be more frequently found meeting in some labor union headquarters to discuss their wages or the high cost of living. The guilds, which have been considered by some as possible factors to remedy<sup>1</sup> the labor problems in China, are losing their importance and significance.<sup>2</sup> This may not be true in places where modern industrialism<sup>3</sup> has not yet penetrated.<sup>4</sup>

Since the Student Movement of May 1919, news of strikes and labor unions has often been seen in the newspapers. Just after the movement there appeared within a year nearly three hundred different kinds of publications dealing with socialistic<sup>5</sup> propaganda<sup>6</sup> and the literary revolution. A large number of students became so influenced by the socialistic views of Marx† Lenin,† and others that they began to see the evils of the present social system. They considered the organization and education of workers the main factors in solving the economic problem; and moreover, they acquired a new consciousness of human value. Thus, in such places as Canton, Wuhan, Changsha, and Shanghai, students were often seen helping the workers in organization and education.

On the other hand, the workers found themselves in a new position. They began to see that they did not belong to the same camp as their employers whose chief interest was money-making. The cost of living gets higher every day, but their wages remain the same. The

---

<sup>1</sup> (v) To cure, to correct. <sup>2</sup> Meaning. <sup>3</sup> Principle or policy applied to industrial pursuits. <sup>4</sup> Made way, pierced. <sup>5</sup> Pertaining to socialism. <sup>6</sup> Any organisation or plan for spreading a particular doctrine or principle.



instinctive<sup>1</sup> desire to live urges them to take the step of collective bargaining.<sup>2</sup> Stimulated<sup>3</sup> by the success of pursuing this method, workers' organizations came into being. It may be said that many labor unions are the direct result of successful strikes.

But labor unions are not encouraged except in the south, where the government has altered its code<sup>4</sup> in order to legalize<sup>5</sup> labor unions. After the tragedy<sup>6</sup> of the Peking-Hankow Railway strike in the spring of 1923 the Peking government, in view of the rebukes received from all over the country, undertook to draft the regulations<sup>7</sup> that govern the gathering of laborers. These regulations were sent to Parliament for deliberation<sup>8</sup> on April 18, 1923.

LABOR CONDITIONS. With very few exceptions modern factories do not pay much attention to the health of the workers. Since there is no legislation and no inspection,<sup>9</sup> employers are left to use their own discretion<sup>c</sup><sup>10</sup> with respect to constructing<sup>11</sup> factory buildings. Consequently, overcrowding, bad ventilation,<sup>12</sup> high temperature, and unsanitary<sup>13</sup> conditions are often found in the work places.

In most match factories yellow phosphorus<sup>14</sup> is still used and the inhalation<sup>15</sup> of the fumes causes cases of "phossy jaw."<sup>d</sup> In cotton mills, in wool and fur-cleaning

---

<sup>1</sup> Natural, pertaining to the instinct. <sup>2</sup> The bargaining that takes place between employers and employees acting in groups. <sup>3</sup> Encouraged, urged, roused. <sup>4</sup> Any system of rules or regulations. <sup>5</sup> Render lawful. <sup>6</sup> Any fatal or mournful event. <sup>7</sup> Rules. <sup>8</sup> Careful consideration. <sup>9</sup> Act of examining. <sup>10</sup> Prudence. <sup>11</sup> Building. <sup>12</sup> Openings for passage of air. <sup>13</sup> Unhealthful. <sup>14</sup> A poisonous, non-metallic element of the nitrogen group. <sup>15</sup> Act of breathing into the lungs.



factories little is done to remove dust and fluff. As in most cases no dining rooms are provided, so it is quite usual for the dust and fluff to get into the cold food of the workers. On account of the presence of boiling water in the silk-reeling rooms, the temperature is always kept high there. It becomes intolerably so in the summer time, so that substitutes<sup>1</sup> are always provided in case workers faint.

The matter of fencing the machinery is very much neglected in the modern factories, resulting in frequent accidents. In places where children are employed such accidents<sup>2</sup> are more frequent. There is a lack of provision<sup>3</sup> of seats in most factories, which seems to be unnecessary. As hours are generally long, the health of the workers is greatly impaired<sup>4</sup> by standing.

Aside from a very few unusual instances the "three-eight-system" is almost unknown here. In machine industries the hours are still frequently as much as fourteen to seventeen per day, though it is becoming usual in the large factories to work twelve hour shifts,<sup>5</sup> generally with no fixed or regular break. Where, however, only one shift is worked per day it is frequently more than twelve hours. Thus in the silk filatures<sup>6</sup> in Shanghai a working day of fourteen and a half hours is quite common; and knitting machinery is often run fourteen, sixteen, and even seventeen hours a day.

---

<sup>1</sup>(n) One that is put in the place of another. <sup>2</sup>Mischances, casualties. <sup>3</sup>Act of supplying or furnishing. <sup>4</sup>Made worse; decreased in strength or health. <sup>5</sup>(n) Spells of a certain length (said of workmen in factory, . . . factory where this is done). <sup>6</sup>Drawing out into threads.

Note. According to an order issued by the Ministry of Agriculture and Commerce the use of yellow phosphorus was prohibited from January 1, 1925.



In the old-fashioned small-scale mines, the tendency has been to work long hours because of the difficulty of entering and leaving the mines. In one district in Shantung, a curious arrangement of twenty-four hours under ground followed by twelve hours above ground has been adopted, but this system has been followed only in name. In actual practice the men have been down for about twenty hours, of which anywhere from sixteen to twenty have been spent in work, the time varying with the speed at which the miner can accomplish the task set him. Owing to the smallness of wages, the men work long hours even where the technical<sup>1</sup> arrangements in the mine are based upon an eight-hour shift. It was found in the case of one large mining corporation<sup>2</sup> that the miners were working on an average forty-five eight-hour shifts in a month. In the Hong-kong investigations it was found that some girls were working ninety-six and a half and eighty-two and a half hours a week in alternate weeks.

Steel workers are employed for from twelve to eighteen hours, and other engineering work runs from ten to fourteen hours a day. But overtime may bring this up to fifteen or sixteen.

The evils of long hours are intensified<sup>3</sup> by the fact of night shifts. The textile<sup>4</sup> workers in recent busy years have been called upon<sup>5</sup> to work at night every other week, and this applies to the women and even to the children. Some match factories work their employees

---

<sup>1</sup> Especially appropriate to any art, science, or business. <sup>2</sup> Body of men united for business purposes. <sup>3</sup> Become more intense. <sup>4</sup> Pertaining to weaving or to woven fabrics.



from 4 a.m. to 8 p.m., including the young children, and this in the conditions already referred to.

The very fact that the Christian Church in China is agitating for one day's rest in seven in connection with industrial betterment shows that the majority of the factories work continuously throughout the year. Only a few factories under Christian management stop work on Sundays. Some of the larger and more modern factories usually stop work twice a month for the purpose of cleaning and repairing the machinery. In silk filatures working periods are very unsatisfactorily distributed. During the busy season workers have to be on the job seven days a week, twelve to fourteen hours a day. But when the slack<sup>1</sup> season sets in workers stay idle at home or hunt for some casual<sup>2</sup> labor so as to earn a little money. Recently the silk workers agitated for shorter working hours and two days' holiday every month—but with little success. As to how they agitated more will be mentioned below under the topic "Agitation."

**WOMEN AND CHILDREN.** In silk reeling, spinning, cotton textile work, embroidery, knitting, manufacture of toilet articles, and curing of tea leaves, the majority of the workers are women and children. As working hours are unusually long and conditions are bad, many women and children become physical wrecks<sup>4</sup> after working for a few years in factories. There are several factors<sup>3</sup> which draw women and children into factory life. On one hand, they are working because of absolute<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Being slow or dull, not active. <sup>2</sup> Coming without regularity.  
<sup>3</sup> Circumstances contributing to produce a result. <sup>4</sup> Real.



necessity — they can supplement<sup>1</sup> the family income to some extent. But on the other hand, they are in great demand because of the low wages they are willing to accept. So every time that a man's position can be filled by a woman we find the woman there. And, in turn, if a woman can be replaced by a child, in ninety-nine cases out of a hundred the child is found there. Thus the majority of the workers in cotton and silk factories in Shanghai are women, and on account of the extreme poverty and famine in the north, thousands of young children are found in Tientsin cotton mills working on what is called the "apprentice system." The system means that no regular wage is required to be paid to the apprentices. As long as there is no provision for protecting the women and children from being exploited,<sup>2</sup> the standard<sup>3</sup> of wages will be kept low.

Child labor is one of the problems that most urgently needs to be solved. Little tots<sup>4</sup> of seven or eight are frequently found working night and day in match, silk, and cotton factories. Through no fault of their own they are denied play, education, and all other opportunities which their more favored brothers and sisters enjoy. They become old before their time. It is unbelievable that the public can be so indifferent<sup>5</sup> to such an undesirable system which was only tolerated<sup>6</sup> more than one hundred years ago in the West.

AGITATION. The general public may be said to be indifferent to the labor conditions prevalent<sup>7</sup> in the

---

<sup>1</sup> Add something to.    <sup>2</sup> (v) To draw an illegitimate profit from.  
<sup>3</sup> That which is established as a rule.    <sup>4</sup> Anything small; a little child.    <sup>5</sup> Careless, unconcerned.    <sup>6</sup> Put up with, suffered to be done.  
<sup>7</sup> Widespread, prevailing.



majority of the modern factories, but there are groups of people who take quite a different attitude. Among these are those who are directly concerned—the workers themselves. During the last three years news of strikes has become common. Although the strikes were not primarily directed against the existing system, they were nevertheless for the immediate betterment of their conditions. Aside from the partial success of the seamen's strike in the early spring of 1922, the persistent<sup>1</sup> agitation of the silk workers in Shanghai deserves particular mention. After the failure to get their employers to concede<sup>2</sup> to their demands they sought the help of both the civil governor and the Provincial Assembly of Kiangsu. This resulted in the issuing of some sort of regulations known as the "Regulations for the Protection of Merchants and for the Welfare of the Workers." The tragedy is that they are not enforced by any means at present, but the possibility is that the silk women will persist until those regulations are observed by their employers.

The joint committee of the social service departments of the Y. W. C. A., the Shanghai Women's Club, the American Women's Club, and the British Women's Association in Shanghai has been agitating for the protection of factory children in the settlement. The executive body of the Municipal Council was approached by this group with the result that a Child Labor Commission<sup>3</sup> was appointed by the council. The commission had been sitting for some time in June, 1924,

---

<sup>1</sup> Tenacious of purpose or position.    <sup>2</sup> Yield.    <sup>3</sup> A company of persons joined in the performance of some duty.



probably made some constructive<sup>1</sup> recommendations<sup>2</sup> to the council. Doubtless in no distant future regulations will be formed for the well-being of the factory children, including provision for their education.

The Christian organizations are not behind other forces in agitating for better conditions in factories. The Young Women's Christian Association decided in June, 1921, to refuse to do any welfare<sup>3</sup> work so long as undesirable conditions prevailed<sup>4</sup> in the factories. The organization therefore determined "to begin at once to make a direct and accurate study of industrial conditions in typical<sup>5</sup> centers to equip it [i.e. the Y. W. C. A.] with the knowledge which will enable it to serve both employers and employees in the most constructive ways and to help to create public opinion which must precede<sup>6</sup> legislation." Departments for industrial service have been established in the Young Men's Christian Associations at Shanghai, Hankow, Tientsin, and other chief centers of industry in a variety of ways.

The Christian Church as a whole, represented at the National Christian Conference in May 1922, adopted a three-fold recommendation regarding labor standards with a forward look towards the ultimate<sup>7</sup> inclusion of China in the international labor standards. The three points are (1) no child labor under twelve full years of age, (2) one day's rest in seven, and (3) the improvement of working conditions and hours of labor. The National Christian Council, which unites the Protestant

---

<sup>1</sup> Capable of forming or building up. <sup>2</sup> Act of commending to the attention, care, or acceptance of another. <sup>3</sup> Happiness, well-being. <sup>4</sup> Was prevalent. <sup>5</sup> Representative. <sup>6</sup> To go before. <sup>7</sup> Final.



agencies<sup>1</sup> at work in China, appointed a commission of "Church and Industry" in May 1923. This Commission on September 11, 1923, recommended a policy<sup>2</sup> and program to the executive committee of the council, which was indorsed and adopted. The gist of the policy and program may be summed up in the following paragraphs:

"That the National Christian Council utilize<sup>3</sup> every effort at its disposal<sup>4</sup> to promote the three standards adopted by the National Christian Conference in May 1922; to coördinate<sup>5</sup> activities of various organizations<sup>6</sup> in local centers for bettering industrial and social conditions or relationships; to give advice to those centers where experiments<sup>7</sup> are being made for working toward a better social order; and to take immediate steps<sup>8</sup> toward establishing a center or centers for social and industrial research.

"Some definite methods are proposed to carry out the above lines of service, such as conferences<sup>8</sup> in various places, preparation of literature, visits to special centers, institutes,<sup>9</sup> or summer schools, and courses of lectures. From time to time foreign specialists will be brought to China to examine into and report on special conditions and problems, and in other ways to render expert help as the occasion demands and opportunity offers. In order to equip China with specialists in this field, chances should be given to promising students for technical training either in China or abroad."

---

<sup>1</sup> Instrumentalities. <sup>2</sup> System or method. <sup>3</sup> Make use of. <sup>4</sup> Power of disposing, control. <sup>5</sup> (v) To give common action; harmonize. <sup>6</sup> Organized groups, associations. <sup>7</sup> Practical tests. <sup>8</sup> A meeting for consultation or discussion. <sup>9</sup> Occasional meetings of teachers or others for instruction by lectures, classes, etc.



The National Christian Council invited Dame Adelaide Anderson, late Chief Lady Inspector of Factories of Great Britain, to come to China, asking her to help and give advice in matters of legislation. Dame Adelaide has given more than thirty years' service to her government in factory inspection and traveled around the world investigating factory systems.

WELFARE WORK. Although very little has been done to improve the welfare of the workers, some employers are beginning to realize their responsibility to better the conditions of their employees. There are a number of firms which are already doing something in that direction, such as the Yangtze Engineering Works in Hankow, the Pacific Alkali Company in Tangku, the British-American Tobacco Company in Shanghai, in giving medical care to the workers and educational facilities to their children. The Commercial Press in Shanghai has provision for pensions,<sup>1</sup> for maternity<sup>2</sup> allowance, medical care, educational facilities, and recreational<sup>3</sup> and social amenities<sup>4</sup> for its staff, while a considerable amount is set aside out of its profits and distributed in bonuses.<sup>5</sup>

The Christian employers in Chefoo are doing something for the welfare of the employees. The workers are given Sundays free with pay and a possible Sunday program is being considered by the employers. Day nurseries<sup>6</sup> are provided in some cotton mills in Shanghai and in a silk filature at Wusih. Some of the leading

---

<sup>1</sup> Stated allowance or payment of money to a person in consideration of past services. <sup>2</sup> State of being a mother. <sup>3</sup> Pertaining to amusement or sport. <sup>4</sup> Civilities pleasantness. <sup>5</sup> Extra dividends paid out of accumulated profits. <sup>6</sup> A place devoted to the care of children of women employees.



mines also have housing schemes, coöperative stores, facilities for amusement and recreation, baths, savings banks, educational facilities, pension schemes, compensation<sup>1</sup> systems, etc.

It must be admitted that in so great a country this is only an insignificant beginning. It is nearly all on a paternalistic<sup>2</sup> basis without active participation<sup>3</sup> on the part of the workers. There is danger of such activities being resented<sup>4</sup> by the workers in the future, especially if they are substituted for something more fundamental. There is real fear that employers may be content to assist social and religious agencies that are deeply interested in the welfare of the industrial classes instead of putting industrial relations on a sound basis.<sup>1\*</sup>

LEGISLATION. As far as the industrial situation is concerned there is every reason to say that history does repeat itself. One cannot see without wonder the faithful repetition of eighteenth century thinking in this age when men are supposed to be wiser and more enlightened through trial-and-error methods and the experiences of their predecessors. It is a poor argument for people to say that the bad labor conditions here are due to the fact that modern industrialism is an imported innovation.<sup>5</sup> But this poor argument took hold of people's minds so strongly that even the Government never gave a thought to<sup>1</sup> the question until this spring when, through the Ministry of Agriculture and Commerce, two sets of regulations—one for the factory workers and the other

---

<sup>1</sup> Recompense or reward for some loss or for service. <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to the theory or practice of paternal government. <sup>3</sup> Act of taking part. <sup>4</sup> Felt angry at, consider as injury. <sup>5</sup> Act of introducing something new, changes.

for the miners—were promulgated.<sup>1</sup> Although they are far from being satisfactory, they serve as a beginning toward the right solution<sup>2</sup> of the problem. They will be mere scraps of paper<sup>k</sup> if they are not enforced.<sup>3</sup>

China is to become the world's market. Her national resources<sup>4</sup> are immense and almost inconceivable.<sup>5</sup> Whether the development of these natural resources will, in the future, be a blessing to mankind or a curse to humanity will greatly depend upon the attitude of mind of so-called thinking people. Shall modern industry serve a few people at the expense of thousands of human beings? Should modern industry in China take such a course?

—*The Chinese Social and Political Science Review.*

### QUESTIONS

1. What is the true cause or causes of China's conservatism and when did China begin to be influenced by modern ideas?
2. Mention some of the modern industrial enterprises in China to-day.
3. Name some concrete instances to prove the great changes which modern industry is bringing about in the minds of the people.
4. How does it affect the consciousness of the laboring class, and with what result?
5. Describe the conditions in most of the Chinese factories to-day.

---

<sup>1</sup> Published, declared. <sup>2</sup> Clearing up. <sup>3</sup> Given effect to, put in force. <sup>4</sup> Available means. <sup>5</sup> Unimaginable, incapable of being understood.

† See Appendix I.

‡ See Appendix II.

\* See International Labor Review, Vol. VIII, No. 1, July 1923, pp. 12, 13.



6. What are the conditions found in the mining areas?
7. What is the Christian church trying to do in connection with industrial betterment?
8. What are the unsatisfactory results in connection with the working system in the filatures?
9. Why are women and children employed in many of the industries in China?
10. Should children be employed in the factories? Give your reasons why they should or should not be employed.
11. What classes of people are at present interested in the labor problem? What did the silk workers in Shanghai do to ameliorate their hard conditions, and with what results?
12. What is the part played by the Christian forces in the industrial conditions in China?
13. State the policy and program of the National Christian Council in connection with the labor problem.
14. Name some of the important firms that have already begun such welfare work in China; and mention also the kinds of program which some are carrying out.
15. When and how can industry in China be a blessing and not a curse to our people?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |     |    |  |
|-----|----|--|
| 132 | a. | <i>Cold figures</i> : exact numbers.   |
| 133 | b. | <i>Time-honored</i> : honored by reason of antiquity.  |
| 135 | c. | <i>To use one's discretion</i> : to exercise one's judgment.   |
| 136 | d. | <i>Phossy jaw</i> (phosphorus necrosis): death of tissue in the jaw bones due to phosphorus poisoning. |
| 137 | e. | <i>To call upon</i> : to require.  |
| 139 | f. | <i>Physical wreck</i> : ruined in body.  |
| 142 | g. | <i>At one's disposal</i> : ready for use, available.   |
| ,,  | h. | <i>To take steps</i> : to prepare for, arrange.  |
| 144 | i. | <i>To put on a sound basis</i> : place in a strong position.   |
| 145 | j. | <i>To give a thought to</i> : to think of in the least.  |
| ,,  | k. | <i>Scrap of paper</i> : useless document.  |

## LESSON XVI

WHAT THE GOVERNMENT SHOULD DO TO  
ENCOURAGE NEW INDUSTRIES

H. A. PAN

Embracing<sup>1</sup> a territory from the latitude<sup>2</sup> of Newfoundland† to that of Cuba, and having marvelous natural resources, a variety of climates, and hordes<sup>3</sup> of intelligent people, China has been figuratively<sup>4</sup> greeted with such names as the Celestial Empire† and the Flowery Kingdom. Complimentary as these appellations<sup>5</sup> are, China does not honestly deserve them. Arable<sup>6</sup> lands are depleting<sup>7</sup> in fertility;<sup>8</sup> mountains have been denuded<sup>9</sup> of forests; mineral resources are not utilized; various climatic conditions which would permit every type of industrial enterprise have not been taken advantage of;<sup>a</sup> and for lack of diversified<sup>10</sup> industries, poverty is prevalent throughout the country.

That this ought not to be should constantly be in our minds, for just the opposite state of affairs prevails here in this country. [U. S. A.] And yet the United States is by no means more favorably endowed<sup>11</sup> by nature. She lies in the zone of power,<sup>b</sup> and so does China. Her resources are not more bountiful;<sup>12</sup> her people are not more intelligent; while her area is but two-thirds as large as China proper. If we are to account for<sup>c</sup> the differences in the economic conditions of the two countries, nothing but the industrial progress

---

<sup>1</sup> Comprising. <sup>2</sup> Distance north and south of the equator. <sup>3</sup> Large numbers. <sup>4</sup> Metaphorically, representatively. <sup>5</sup> Names. <sup>6</sup> Fit for plowing or tilling. <sup>7</sup> Exhausting, reducing. <sup>8</sup> Productivity. <sup>9</sup> Made bare. <sup>10</sup> Varied. <sup>11</sup> Furnished with. <sup>12</sup> Plentiful.



of the one and the industrial backwardness of the other will do. It is the industries of the United States that turn her resources into wealth; it is the industries that furnish the people with necessities; and it is the industries that give her people outlets for their energy. Industry is the basis<sup>1</sup> of prosperity, material but substantial.<sup>2</sup>

It has been said that the United States owes her wonderful industrial advancement solely to her republican form of government. This is not true. The A. B. C.† countries are republics, but none of them can vie with the United States in industrial progress. Russia had an absolute<sup>3</sup> government, and now has a form of democracy yet with all her resources and wealth her economic conditions are unsatisfactory. Again, Germany had an autocratic government and at the same time she was, and still is one of the great industrial nations of the world.

The point I am seeking to establish is that the industrial achievement of a nation does not depend upon the form of government, too much emphasis of which has caused the unsettled conditions in our country at present. The truth is that while industries do not depend upon the form of government, they do depend upon whether the government can maintain progress and the security<sup>4</sup> so necessary to the growth of industries; and that they do depend to some extent upon what the government will do directly to foster<sup>5</sup> their growth.

---

<sup>1</sup> Fundamental condition.    <sup>2</sup> Real, true.    <sup>3</sup> Despotic.    <sup>4</sup> Safety.  
<sup>5</sup> Encourage, cherish.



Naturally, therefore, what the government should do to encourage new industries at all times, and at the present juncture<sup>1</sup> in particular, is to preserve its own stability,<sup>2</sup> thereby insuring social order and progress. . . . We have been relying upon foreign nations for manufactured articles; and inasmuch as the imports from these sources have been greatly cut down since the war, it is high time for us to manufacture what we want for ourselves. Strangely enough, no new industries have sprung up as might be expected. Our government has not realized the situation, and has not permitted the industries to get started. . . . Our would-be captains of industry simply would not take the risk of launching their enterprises under the present conditions, for the industries already existing are actually suffering a double blow from the inevitable effects of the Great War and the instability of our own government. . . . It is urged, therefore, that the government make up for<sup>d</sup> the blunder, prove itself equal to the task<sup>e</sup> of maintaining stability; and let new industries take advantage of the situation.

The part of the government, if it wishes to encourage industries, should not be limited to allowing free rein<sup>f</sup> to industrial initiative. If new industries are to develop at all, it must rest with the enterprising energy of the people. But the government can definitely encourage new industries, not by issuing mandates<sup>3</sup> couched<sup>4</sup> in wise or unwise paternal phrases, but by aiding them in

---

<sup>1</sup> Point of time, crisis.    <sup>2</sup> Firmness.    <sup>3</sup> Governmental orders.  
<sup>4</sup> Phrased, worded.



their fundamental needs, namely, capital, labor, and marketing.

*Raw material* and *power* abound in the country, and capital is the first item to consider. In terms of<sup>c</sup> per capita<sup>b</sup> wealth the Chinese people are poor, but not a few have hoarded colossal<sup>1</sup> amounts of bullion.<sup>2</sup> Hence the government should so diffuse<sup>3</sup> banking facilities,<sup>4</sup> that the savings of the people may combine into capital, and that the combination of capital may be put to effective<sup>5</sup> use. Industries need the assistance of banks for circulating capital and multiplying.

Equally important for gathering capital is the governmental regulation<sup>6</sup> of corporations<sup>7</sup> and joint-stock companies. Western countries have demonstrated that modern industries can hardly rely upon the resources of one or a few. The general tendency is to use the device of dividing capital stock into shares of small amounts. Japan before the Meiji era had no joint-stock companies† to speak of, but at present there are over seven thousand such companies. It might be well for us to have such organizations also. But to insure success, the government should protect all small investors.<sup>8</sup> The corporate feature is not without drawback as is shown in this country. The impersonal<sup>9</sup> feature of the corporation has led to frequent mismanagement. To avoid the same trouble, we should make directors and managers personally liable<sup>10</sup> for failures. Wise

---

<sup>1</sup> Enormous.    <sup>2</sup> Gold or silver uncoined.    <sup>3</sup> Spread, extend.  
<sup>4</sup> Conveniences.    <sup>5</sup> Effectual.    <sup>6</sup> Ruling.    <sup>7</sup> Combined enterprises.  
<sup>8</sup> Those who lay out money in business for profit.    <sup>9</sup> Not connected with any particular person.    <sup>10</sup> Responsible.



legislation<sup>1</sup> is necessary, therefore, not only to protect the investors from fraud and mismanagement, but also to raise the moral tone of the whole nation by making grafting<sup>2</sup> and nepotism<sup>3</sup> difficult in the management of corporate affairs.

For all industries, old and new, labor is an essential factor. In China of 400,000,000 people, labor is known to be as cheap as it is plentiful. But we must not forget the fact that cheap labor is not always to be sought for in industries. The quality of labor is the feature not to be overlooked. Labor without training and industrial experience is inefficient, and inefficiency of labor is always reflected<sup>4</sup> in the quality of the goods. The truth is that while labor is cheap, production may not be as cheap as the wages are low. The question of labor for new industries is, therefore, one of a skilled and efficient labor supply for the reduction of the cost of production and the diversification<sup>5</sup> of industries. Hence, the government is looked up to for the establishment of more industrial and technical schools. At least general education should be disseminated<sup>6</sup> among the teeming millions throughout our country. Without doubt the problem of training labor will be increasingly important, as all new industries will be based on modern scientific principles and the use of more complicated machinery.

Marketing is another matter of great importance. No new industries will grow if there is no market for their products. To speak in short-sighted manner,<sup>1</sup> China,

---

<sup>1</sup> Enacting of laws.    <sup>2</sup> Appropriation of money unlawfully.  
<sup>3</sup> Favoritism to relatives.    <sup>4</sup> Mirrored.    <sup>5</sup> Variation.    <sup>6</sup> Scattered or spread abroad.



even without the foreign market for the goods, would itself constitute a market large enough to warrant the up-building of gigantic<sup>1</sup> industries. But the question of marketing is rather this — whether our home market can be national. In other words, have we a system of transportation that will carry the products of one section to another without excessive delay and exorbitant<sup>2</sup> freight cost? To build up new industries, we can no longer depend upon clumsy wagons, squeaking wheelbarrows, and slow-pacing draft animals. Nor is our present railway system adequate. The government will be doing wisely to extend the present system, linking together all the sections<sup>3</sup> of the country. A network of railroads supplemented by waterways will, for practical purposes, reduce the size of our country,<sup>4</sup> extend our own market, and serve the needs of diverse industries. The United States government aided the railroad companies to open up<sup>k</sup> the West, and industries began to develop by leaps and bounds.<sup>1</sup> Shall we not develop the interior provinces by affording transportation facilities to new industries?

We have recommended in a general way what the government should do to encourage new industries in the way of gathering capital, training skilled labor, and extending our home market. The scope of the government is as wide as the nation, and we might suggest many other possible undertakings, such as a higher tariff, the abolition<sup>4</sup> of the likin,<sup>5</sup> the exemption<sup>6</sup> from

---

<sup>1</sup> Very great or large.    <sup>2</sup> Excessive.    <sup>3</sup> Parts, portions, divisions.  
<sup>4</sup> Act of doing away.    <sup>5</sup> Domestic duties on goods (China).  
<sup>6</sup> Freedom.

taxation of certain industries, and so on. Yet, while these measures are practicable and even important, they are, in our opinion, in no way as fundamental as a stable<sup>1</sup> government, the fostering<sup>2</sup> of banking facilities, and the development of a system of transportation.

— *The Chinese Students' Monthly.*

### QUESTIONS

1. Why is China called the Flowery Kingdom?
2. Do you think China at present deserves this name? Give your reasons why?
3. Can China become as prosperous as the United States and other progressive countries? Give your reasons why?
4. What, then, made America, England, and even Japan prosperous?
5. How do you prove that the form of government has little to do with the prosperity of a nation? On what, then, does it depend?
6. What are the A. B. C. countries?
7. How could our Government best encourage industries?
8. Why would not our people launch enterprises under present conditions?
9. Name the various practical methods by which the Government can encourage industries.
10. What is the meaning of joint-stock company? What are its advantages, and how can we insure its success?
11. Is cheap labor always beneficial to industry? Why?
12. How can we produce efficient labor?
13. What are the essential factors in insuring and extending markets for our goods?
14. Besides the general recommendation for encouraging industry, name also other suggestions no less important.

---

<sup>1</sup> Firmly established. <sup>2</sup> Encouraging.



## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- 147 a. *To take advantage of*: to utilize to one's benefit or profit.
- „ b. *Zone of power*: that region or part of the globe which produces superior or dominant races (the temperate or subtemperate zone) as contrasted to the region (tropical) where the races are inferior in capacity and hence subjugated by dominant races.
- „ c. *To account for*: to explain.
- 149 d. *To make up for*: to make good; to correct; to supply the deficiency.
- „ e. *Equal to (the task)*: able to undertake.
- „ f. *To allow free rein*: not to impose any kind of restriction.
- 150 g. *In terms of*: measured by; from the view point of; as an equivalent of.
- „ h. *Per capita*: per head, individual.
- 151 i. *In a short-sighted manner*: in a manner which lacks foresight; thoughtlessly.
- 152 j. *To reduce the size of a country*: (fig.) to make means of transportation and communication more rapid, so as to take less time to cover more distances.
- „ k. *To open up*: to render habitable; to make possible for trading purposes.
- „ l. *By leaps and bounds*: very rapidly or quickly.

## LESSON XVII

## IMPROVING THE CATTLE INDUSTRY IN CHINA

S. H. TAAM

The cattle industry of China is still in its infancy.<sup>a</sup> Modern methods of artificial<sup>1</sup> selection† and stock breeding have not yet been adopted, and the fundamental<sup>2</sup> requisite<sup>3</sup> for the success of the cattle industry — the pasturage system — has not been introduced.

---

<sup>1</sup> Made or contrived by art, not natural.    <sup>2</sup> Important.    <sup>3</sup> Requirement.

Undoubtedly religious dogmas and practices, notably the Buddhistic, and the primordial<sup>1</sup> superstition go far in explaining the backwardness of China's cattle industry. What seems to be the underlying cause is, however, the industrial condition in China. Without modern agricultural machinery, China depends mainly on her oxen for the tilling of the fields. Used as tools and safeguarded<sup>2</sup> by custom, oxen are seldom killed for their meat. Strength, the ability to bear the yoke, is the only requisite, and the quality of the animal is neglected. Ignorance of scientific crossbreeding† and artificial selection in turn aggravate<sup>3</sup> the situation, until now we have a veritable<sup>4</sup> infantile cattle industry.

The "water buffalo" and the so-called "yellow cow" of southern China are striking examples of China's backwardness in the industry. Instead of being a huge animal, our "water buffalo" has a drooping narrow short rump, a paunchy<sup>5</sup> body and prominent shoulders giving a minimum<sup>6</sup> leverage<sup>7</sup> in pulling. In fact it corresponds, as its features show, to the worst "scrub"<sup>8</sup> in America. Yet it is the only draft animal in southern China. The "yellow cow" is commonly used for milk and beef. At her best<sup>b</sup> she gives not more than twenty pounds of milk daily, while the British dairy breeds yield an average of thirty pounds, and the Holstein, forty-five. As a beef type she is greatly undersized<sup>9</sup> and matures very slowly.

---

<sup>1</sup> Of earliest origin. <sup>2</sup> Protected. <sup>3</sup> Make worse. <sup>4</sup> Real that may be verified. <sup>5</sup> Pertaining to the stomach. <sup>6</sup> Least amount possible. <sup>7</sup> Mechanical advantage gained by the lever. <sup>8</sup> Something small and mean. <sup>9</sup> Below the common size.



Such a backward condition requires improvement, and China should profit by<sup>1</sup> the experience of England. Noted English cattle improvers, like the Colling Brothers, the Tomkins, and Hugh Watson, experimented upon different animals; each breeder excelled his predecessor,<sup>1</sup> until finally England was able to arrive at ideal types of animals. Once the types of cattle have been determined, improvement is facilitated.<sup>2</sup>

At present the Chinese farmer knows neither the principles of selection nor the art of breeding. The Government Agricultural Experiment Stations should take the initiative<sup>3</sup> in making a general survey<sup>4</sup> of the cattle industry in each province, and propagating<sup>5</sup> methods of scientific selection and breeding, by which some of our cattle, when rightly chosen and carefully mated, will produce foundation sires<sup>6</sup> and dams.

Owing to the long period of unprogressive development, the blood lines of our cattle are feeble. Even if we breed our cattle scientifically, it will take a long time to bring them from the present stage up to the level of the British and American breeds. Besides, the question of undersize and late maturing still exists. The absence of any genuine<sup>7</sup> dairy type and the slow and expensive method of producing a dairy type from the "yellow cow" or "water buffalo" make the introduction of foreign breeds necessary. By introducing foreign breeds, China reaps the fruits of the labors other countries; and by crossing these imported breeds with native cattle, she may promote early maturity, improve

---

<sup>1</sup> One who comes before. <sup>2</sup> Made easy. <sup>3</sup> Spreading knowledge of. <sup>4</sup> Male parent of a beast. <sup>5</sup> Real.



the quality and flavor of the beef, and invigorate<sup>1</sup> the species. Having a better constitution<sup>2</sup> and vitality,<sup>3</sup> the crossbreeds may be immune<sup>4</sup> against<sup>5</sup> certain cattle diseases, and may, as has been shown in the cross between Indian zebus<sup>5</sup> and Philippine dams, be many times more efficient.

Improvement in the breed is of little avail<sup>6</sup> if the greatest obstacle to the development of the Chinese cattle industry—the lack of food supply—is not removed. The insufficient supply of feed, not from any scarcity of land, labor, or unfavorable climate, comes but mainly from absence of a pasturing system. Rich pasture can be obtained by sowing pure grass seeds in the mountainous regions and on the uplands, which are unsuitable for rice cultivation and mostly lying waste. For instance, in the province of Kwangtung, about one half of the total area is upland, a large part of which has been turned into graveyards. Such land, if carefully cultivated and sown with pure grass seeds or legumes,† alfalfa,† clover, etc., will produce feed sufficient for many times the present number of cattle. Possibilities with the canes<sup>6</sup> are very promising, and sorghum,† kafir, milo,† or faterita may be even better adapted there than in the plain regions of the United States. Pit silos† also afford a cheap and convenient means of handling feed in a desirable condition, and will provide a reserve<sup>7</sup> calculated<sup>8</sup> to put the industry upon a permanent basis. Besides providing feed, such a

---

<sup>1</sup> Give vigor to. <sup>2</sup> Physical nature. <sup>3</sup> Power of enduring. <sup>4</sup> Free, exempt. <sup>5</sup> Animal resembling the cow. <sup>6</sup> Sugar cane. <sup>7</sup> Retention, reservation. <sup>8</sup> Reckoned, expected.



pasturing system is the most effective method for opening up uncultivated land, the capital required being comparatively small and the returns high.

The question of food supply constitutes one of the fundamentals<sup>1</sup> in a normal national life. Without a reasonable amount of self-sufficiency, a nation can be said to be on its way to starvation. To depend upon foreign supply for food is dangerous, and not to utilize a nation's potential powers is foolish. The tremendous number of "open mouths"<sup>h</sup> in China and her backwardness in manufacture point to the improvement of her cattle industry as a partial solution, which can be most effectively made by determining the ideal types of cattle, propagating modern knowledge of scientific selection and breeding, introducing foreign breeds, and improving and enlarging our pasturage.

*The Chinese Students Monthly.*

### QUESTIONS

1. What is the fundamental requisite for the success of the cattle industry?
2. State the real causes of China's backwardness in the cattle industry.
3. In what respects do our buffalo and cow prove the backwardness of our cattle industry.
4. How does the British cow and the Holstein compare with our Chinese cow in the way of milk production?
5. What should the government be urged to do in the way of improving our cattle industry?
6. Can we by scientific method of breeding bring our cattle up to the British standard in a short time? If not what is the best and quickest way to effect it?

---

<sup>1</sup> Essentials.

7. What are the advantages in crossbreeding our cattle with foreign ones?
8. What is the greatest obstacle to the development of the cattle industry in China?
9. How can rich pasturage be obtained?
10. How can our cattle industry help to solve the problem of food supply?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- 154 a. *In its infancy*: at its beginning.
- 155 b. *At her best*: the best she can do.
- 156 c. *To profit by*: to be benefited by; to take advantage of.
- „ d. *Take the initiative*: be the first to act; to take the first step.
- „ e. *To make a survey*: to make a general examination; to make a general investigation.
- 157 f. *To be immune against*: to be proof against; able to resist.
- „ g. *To be of little avail*: to produce little effect; to be of little use.
- 158 h. *Open mouths*: starving people.

## LESSON XVIII

### MANCHURIA'S GOLDEN FLEECE

PHILIP KERCY

One fifth of the total number of sheep in the world, approximately 27,000,000 head, are found on the high fertile steppes<sup>1</sup> of Western Manchuria and Inner Mongolia. This represents considerably more than one half of the total number of sheep in all China and Turkestan,† and the buying and selling of sheep,

---

<sup>1</sup> Vast, elevated plain.



the exportation of mutton and wool, both to China and abroad, forms one of the most lucrative<sup>1</sup> industries of that large territory north of the Great Wall.

Sheep herding has always been carried on in a more or less desultory<sup>2</sup> fashion by the wandering nomadic<sup>3</sup> tribes of the north because sheep skins are the prime<sup>4</sup> requisite of clothing both in summer and in winter, and in times gone by were utilized as one of the chief articles of barter.<sup>5</sup> Even to-day in some localities a good strong wife may be bought for ten ewes and three rams, considered as the nucleus<sup>6</sup> of a flock, or for thirty prime skins.

A great impetus<sup>7</sup> was given to the sheep industry during the Great War because frozen mutton in large quantities was shipped to the fighting armies while sheep skins were used as a protection from cold in the trenches.<sup>8</sup> Prices advanced at a rapid rate and for the first time Manchurian sheep appeared on the markets of the world.

It was only then that both Chinese and foreign firms<sup>9</sup> took into consideration the potential<sup>10</sup> buying power of foreign markets, and efforts were made to bring the Manchurian sheep up to the standards<sup>a</sup> maintained by other countries. Progress has only been gradual because both incentive<sup>11</sup> and education were required to make the sheep herders realize the importance of proper crossbreeding,<sup>b</sup> different and better lambing methods to

---

<sup>1</sup> Profitable. <sup>2</sup> Loose, unsystematic. <sup>3</sup> Wandering. <sup>4</sup> (adj.) First in importance. <sup>5</sup> (n) Exchange. <sup>6</sup> Central or material portion. <sup>7</sup> Incentive, impulse. <sup>8</sup> Ditches dug in warfare. <sup>9</sup> (n) Business companies. <sup>10</sup> Existing in possibility. <sup>11</sup> Stimulus, encouragement.



insure the survival of a larger number of both ewes and lambs, and attempt the standardization<sup>1</sup> of wool.

In this connection great credit is due to the sheep experiment breeding farm at Kuchuling, conducted under the auspices<sup>2</sup> of the South Manchuria Railway. The director is a youthful Japanese, who has made an intensive<sup>3</sup> study of the best sheep raising methods in England and America and brings to his task limitless enthusiasm coupled with a wide vision<sup>4</sup> for the future. Some six weeks ago I spent a day on his farm and learned from him the splendid results accomplished during the three years he has been in charge of the station.<sup>5</sup> Shortly after his appointment he realized that the only way to improve the breed of Manchurian sheep was through proper crossbreeding. He received permission to make a trip to America, attended several of the most important cattle shows in the western states, and returned to his farm in central Manchuria with several champions,<sup>6</sup> including southdowns,<sup>†</sup> merinos,<sup>†</sup> and shropshires.

Experiments conducted during the past two years have completely proved the Mendelian theory of monohybridism,<sup>†</sup> namely, that the Manchurian sheep, when crossed with the best breed, never revert to type but partake of the best elements of the thoroughbreds.<sup>7</sup> In order to assist the sheep herders to profit by these experiments, graphic<sup>8</sup> charts translated into Chinese

---

<sup>1</sup> Reducing to a standard.    <sup>2</sup> Patronage and care, guidance.  
<sup>3</sup> Intensified.    <sup>4</sup> Outlook.    <sup>5</sup> Place where a person is appointed to remain.    <sup>6</sup> Leaders.    <sup>7</sup> Pure blooded.    <sup>8</sup> Characterised by clear and vivid description.



and Mongolian have been prepared and are sent broadcast throughout the sheep country, and several assistants conduct lectures in many of the *hsiens*, showing how the breed of sheep may be improved. In the next few years it is proposed to open several branch stud farms in order that the herdsmen may have their best ewes participate in the advantage. This service is entirely gratuitous<sup>1</sup> and has already demonstrated<sup>2</sup> its great efficiency<sup>3</sup> in raising the standard.

The western Manchurian and Mongolian sheep are for the most part short and fat tailed. They are comparatively light, a ram weighing from 75 to 100 lbs, and a ewe one-third lighter. The wool is fairly coarse, with comparatively little soft and stringy hair which makes shearing difficult. Through crossbreeding, however, even the first generation shows a marked change for the better, while in the second generation nearly all of the stringy wool has disappeared, the fleece is long and soft, and more than four times as abundant. Sheep are sheared twice, with the exception of lambs, usually between May and June, when the average yield is about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  lbs per animal, and again in August, when the yield is between one quarter and one half pound.

These Manchurian sheep require practically no attention on the wide ranges, and frequently one or two herders will take care of a flock numbering five thousand and more. They are assisted, of course, by fifteen or twenty dogs which are a species of wolf-collie<sup>4</sup> and bear a strong resemblance to the Alaskan

---

<sup>1</sup> Given without pay.    <sup>2</sup> Shown.    <sup>3</sup> Quality of being efficient or productive of results.    <sup>4</sup> A shepherd dog resembling a wolf.



"huskies."<sup>1</sup> The hardiness<sup>2</sup> of these sheep and their ability to subsist on very scanty food during the winter and on their own fat accumulated during the summer, together with their immunity<sup>3</sup> from disease, make sheep raising a very profitable investment.

Hailar and Manchouli on the western section of the Chinese Eastern Railway are the great sheep centers of trade of Northern Manchuria. Hailar is the center of the great caravan<sup>4</sup> routes to both Inner and Outer Mongolia as well as eastward to Blagoveschensk† and southward to Tsitsihar. Manchouli is the terminus<sup>5</sup> of the China Eastern Railway with the Trans-Siberian line and is one of the most important shipping points.

At the present time there are several important firms who have established branches at both Manchouli and Hailar for the purchase of sheep and wool, but these firms do not operate directly but through Chinese compradores.

Buying sheep in western Manchuria and Mongolia is carried on in the present day in much the same way as it was five hundred years ago. Payments for purchases are usually effected in silver slabs<sup>6</sup> cut from the original sycee,<sup>7</sup> or from the silver bar. Silver is weighed on the old-fashioned silver lever scale, the color of the lever having been previously agreed upon. There are three colored bars in daily use, white, black and brown. The white is known as the correct one, the brown

---

<sup>1</sup> Nickname for kind of dog.    <sup>2</sup> Ability to endure, boldness.  
<sup>3</sup> Freedom, exemption.    <sup>4</sup> A company of people organized for long journey.    <sup>5</sup> End of a railroad line.    <sup>6</sup> A thin piece of anything having plane surface.    <sup>7</sup> Silver in shoe-shaped ingots used for money.



showing overweight and the black under weight. In doing business with each other, foreign firms usually specify<sup>1</sup> the white beam, receive payment from the Mongols by the brown, and pay it out by the black, thereby netting a profit of 10 to 12 per cent. In order to make the payments the silver bars or sycee are heated in the local blacksmiths forge and when red-hot bits are chipped off with a cool chisel. When cool these fragments are weighed with the colored scale beam agreed upon and the transaction is complete.

This method which seems fairly rudimentary<sup>2</sup> is only practiced in the larger towns. On the wide ranges the payments are usually effected by a system of barter. Before the Russian Revolution, when political conditions in Inner Mongolia were more normal than at present, black brick tea was the equivalent<sup>3</sup> of silver. Its price was uniform. Now its price fluctuates<sup>4</sup> even more than the silver and the tribesmen are refusing to accept it except at a heavy discount.<sup>5</sup> Other articles used in barter include a species of Chinese millet known as "buda" and low grades of wheat or barley flour. Frying pans, tea kettles, mirrors and colored sweetmeats have a more or less definite value.

There is a story of one newly-arrived and ambitious *compradore* who believed that better bargains could be driven with soap than with other more standard articles. He transported several cases of pink, green, and yellow soap some hundred miles into the interior and

---

<sup>1</sup> Designate particularly. <sup>2</sup> Elementary, imperfectly developed.  
<sup>3</sup> That which is equal in value or worth, etc. <sup>4</sup> Wavers, vacillate.  
<sup>5</sup> Deduction.



began his bargaining. He was inordinately<sup>1</sup> successful by promising the novelty, but when the natives started devouring the pretty cubes<sup>2</sup> despite<sup>3</sup> his most frenzied<sup>4</sup> explanations that they were to be used for washing purposes only, he departed hastily across the mountains leaving bag and baggage behind, pursued by the frothy<sup>5</sup> imprecations<sup>6</sup> of an outraged people. From that time soap has been barred as an article of barter.

There is no standard in bartering, and compradores spend much time in driving their bargains. Sometimes in years of poor harvests half a bowl of poor quality Chinese millet will be worth one sheep while in times of plenty nine or ten bowls are required. The same applies to other articles as well since conditions vary widely in different localities.

Despite the large numbers of sheep, the exportation of wool is very small in comparison. It was not until four years ago that any attempt was made to export wool in large quantities. Practically all the wool produced in Manchuria was consumed<sup>7</sup> in the local market and the excess shipped into Chihli or Shantung. The difficulty was that there were no wool washing or baling plants until the Chinese Eastern Railway established both in the vicinity<sup>8</sup> of Hailar.

At the present time shipments of wool are received at various stations along the Chinese Eastern Railway, including Manchouli, and are routed to Hailar where the loosely-packed bundles, weighing from one-third to half a

---

<sup>1</sup> Excessively.    <sup>2</sup> Regular solid bodies of six equal square sides.  
<sup>3</sup> In spite of, notwithstanding.    <sup>4</sup> Madly frantic.    <sup>5</sup> Foamy.    <sup>6</sup> Curses.  
<sup>7</sup> Used up, exhausted.    <sup>8</sup> Neighborhood.



ton, are picked, sorted,<sup>1</sup> and weighed, and then washed by hand either at the railway plant or at one of the other plants established by private capital. In view of the fact that hand labor is so cheap in this section of the country it has been found more economical to use this method than to import expensive machinery from abroad, thereby entailing<sup>2</sup> also the employment of high-priced operators.<sup>3</sup> A special dike has been constructed across the Emigol river where the current is rapid, and from this dike are suspended two woven wire cages. The laborers, squatting down, wash the sorted wool in these cages, and rinse<sup>4</sup> it in the swift stream by passing it one to the other against the current.

The wet wool is then either hung up to dry on long ropes or is spread across a wire screen constructed about eighteen inches above the ground to prevent mildew.<sup>5</sup> The dry wool is again sorted and reclassified<sup>6</sup> before it is sent to the hydraulic<sup>7</sup> presses for baling in quarter-ton bales. Several Russians, who have traveled in Europe and America and know the requirements of the overseas markets, supervise<sup>8</sup> both the washing and baling at the Chinese Eastern Railway plant, which charges 30 yen a ton for washing and yen 12.40 for baling.

The wool that is washed and pressed in the Chinese Eastern Railway plant may be sent in any direction except to Russia without further disinfection.<sup>9</sup> Russia demands that all wool crossing the frontier be disinfected

---

<sup>1</sup> Selected. <sup>2</sup> Incurring. <sup>3</sup> Worker. <sup>4</sup> Cleanse the second time by applying water. <sup>5</sup> Growth of powdery fungi on decaying matter. <sup>6</sup> Rearranged according to classes. <sup>7</sup> Machine operated by water power. <sup>8</sup> Superintend, oversee. <sup>9</sup> Act of freeing from contagious matter.



and therefore it was found necessary to erect a special plant to comply with<sup>c</sup> this law. Wool sold for exportation to Russia after being washed and dried is passed through formaline stream under high pressure. An additional charge of 14 sen per pood (36 lbs.) is made for this service.

Where is this wool sold? With the exception of intramural<sup>1</sup> China, America and Canada are the largest consumers, taking nearly 35,000 tons last year. Japan came next with England, France, and Germany in the order named. Figures are not available for the amount shipped into Russia, but it is a well-known fact that since the revival<sup>2</sup> of the N. E. P. in Moscow, shipments have nearly trebled.

During the past year the price for washed wool averaged between eight and nine cents gold per pound at Hailar, and at the close of the season went to nine and one-half cents. This of course is a remarkably low price, but after paying various export duties<sup>3</sup> and transportation charges, which amount to between 76.41 and 89.32 gold per ton before a ton of wool arrives in Shanghai ready for shipment abroad, it will be seen that the price must necessarily be low in order for the purchaser to realize any profit at all.

Until foreign banks give some aid in the matter of credits<sup>4</sup> by assisting in both the purchasing and the financing of transportation of both wool and mutton shipments, the present rather "hit or miss" system<sup>d</sup> must continue. The banks argue quite rightly that the

---

<sup>1</sup> Within the wall.    <sup>2</sup> Renewed performance of.    <sup>3</sup> Taxes, tolls, imposts or customs.    <sup>4</sup> Trust in business transaction.



market fluctuates considerably and they are unable to obtain any tangible<sup>1</sup> security<sup>2</sup> for purchases. The sheep are owned largely by native tribes loosely joined together in leagues<sup>3</sup> which, due to the nature of their nomadic existence, are<sup>e</sup> unable to give any definite assurance<sup>4</sup> of time of delivery or grade of wool. A banker demands something more than the headman's word that he will have his people deliver a definite number of sheep on or about a certain date six to eight months later.

The ratio<sup>5</sup> between the actual cost of the wool and its shipment appears quite out of proportion,<sup>e</sup> and until an adjustment<sup>6</sup> of the carrying charges is made, the sheep-raising industry cannot assume its proper role in world markets. — *The China Weekly Review*.

#### QUESTIONS

1. What is the proportion of sheep between western Manchuria and Inner Mongolia and China and Turkestan?
2. What are the uses of sheep among the Mongolian nomads?
3. What brought the sheep industry in Mongolia to the attention of the world? And why is the progress of this industry so slow?
4. Describe the sheep experiment breeding farm at Ku-chuling.
5. What is the Mendelian theory of Monohybridism?
6. What are the present and future programs with regard to the sheep breeding industry in Manchuria and Mongolia?
7. What effect does crossbreeding produce upon the original characteristic of the Manchurian and Mongolian sheep?

---

<sup>1</sup> Evident.    <sup>2</sup> Guarantee, assurance.    <sup>3</sup> Confederacies, compacts. Pledge.    <sup>5</sup> Proportion.    <sup>6</sup> Systematic arrangement.

8. How are these sheep cared for, and what makes their raising a profitable investment?
9. What makes Hailar and Manchouli such important centers in sheep trading? Point out on the map where these places are.
10. Describe how the sheep trade is conducted in these places?
11. How is the sheep business conducted in the wide ranges?
12. Why is the exportation of wool small in comparison to the great number of sheep, and how has this been increased?
13. Describe the method of washing and exporting wool in Manchuria?
14. To what countries is wool most exported?
15. What are the difficulties at present in the way of introducing the credit system in the wool industry?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |     |    |   |
|-----|----|---|
| 160 | a. | <i>Up to the standard</i> : meeting the requirement as established by rule.   |
| ,,  | b. | <i>Crossbreeding</i> : a process of breeding by which plants or animals of different species are mated, with the result that a new and better species is created. |
| 167 | c. | <i>To comply with</i> : to accede to, to acquiesce in or agree to.  |
| ,,  | d. | <i>"Hit or miss" system</i> : system without any certain method or plan.  |
| 168 | e. | <i>Out of proportion</i> : beyond the ratio.  |

## LESSON XIX

### THE SUCCESS OF FACTORY ORGANIZATION AND BUSINESS MANAGEMENT

M. H. LI

It is plain that the modern business world constantly devotes its attention to developing a better system of



management. A few decades<sup>1</sup> ago business was done in a non-systematic manner; but beginning with the Twentieth Century, the advocates<sup>2</sup> of scientific management have called the attention of nearly all factory managers to the consideration of the best system for promoting<sup>3</sup> trade. "Efficiency" has been a word overused and overadvertised at the present day by business people, yet efficiency has a real significance<sup>4</sup> of its own. The substitution of machinery for the tools and implements<sup>5</sup> worked with by hands has brought into existence the factory system, which, unlike the handicraft<sup>6</sup> period, has highly differentiated<sup>7</sup> the manufacturing stages from the raw material to the finished product, and has complicated the administrative<sup>8</sup> functions from ordinary accounting<sup>9</sup> to time keeping. It is the established<sup>10</sup> system to which modern business success is due.

A factory is an institution in itself<sup>11</sup> — social, economic, and technical. Thousands of people are employed in one plant;<sup>12</sup> hundreds of carloads of goods are turned out<sup>a</sup> in one day; capitalists are eager to grasp every chance of profit; stockholders<sup>13</sup> are anxious to share the declared dividends; and competitors are ready to attack from every side. Is it possible that a company can handle its business successfully by running the entire organization in a conservative<sup>14</sup> way? Is it possible that a company can continue by leaving everything to

---

<sup>1</sup> Ten years. <sup>2</sup> One who supports any cause by argument. <sup>3</sup> Advancing helping. <sup>4</sup> Meaning, importance. <sup>5</sup> Tools. <sup>6</sup> Manual work. <sup>7</sup> Effected a difference in. <sup>8</sup> Pertaining to administration or management. <sup>9</sup> System of keeping accounts. <sup>10</sup> Made permanent. <sup>11</sup> Organized society or corporation. <sup>12</sup> Manufactory. <sup>13</sup> Shareholders. <sup>14</sup> Unprogressive.



chance, tradition, and imitation, without adjusting itself to meet current<sup>1</sup> conditions and fluctuations of the market? A great industrial captain, sitting at his office desk and busy in talking through the telephone, may dictate an overturning policy to withstand financial stress,<sup>2</sup> to increase the selling capacity, to improve the working conditions, and to differentiate the qualities and quantities of the goods. He may also, by reading the morning news, going over the agents' reports, and examining the daily factory records, determine such measures<sup>3</sup> as will enable his entire administration to pass along the most efficient track. If there be no system established for factory organization and business management, how can he control this situation as the brain controls the motion of your hands, or as the brake controls the speed of your automobile? No definite rules can be laid down for such business success, for what seems beneficial to one factory may not be needed in all the others, depending upon the nature of the particular industry, the location of the plant, and the amount of the business done. But there are three elements vital<sup>4</sup> to any business organization. These are coöperation, responsibility, and efficiency.

*Coöperation* means harmony, mutual understanding, and mutual help among different departments. A salesman should understand the fundamental<sup>5</sup> principles of how his goods are made and how his goods are different from the goods of the competitors from the

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to the time. <sup>2</sup> Pressure, distress. <sup>3</sup> Policies. <sup>4</sup> Important. <sup>5</sup> Essential.



point of view of quality, although he need not manufacture the goods personally. A purchasing agent should try to secure the material so cheaply and of such desirable quality that the manufacturing department can make the best possible products out of it. *Responsibility* means "sticking to the job."<sup>b</sup> A fireman should only know the business of shoveling coal, for it is his duty to keep the fire in good condition. A foundryman<sup>1</sup> should make his casting<sup>2</sup> sound, no matter how the forge boss manipulates the steam hammer or the hydraulic press.<sup>3</sup> By *efficiency* is meant the "dollars and cents" policy<sup>c</sup>. The waste blast-furnace gas can be used to heat the stove, to fire the boiler, to run the blowing engine, and even to replace other gases for making steel in the open hearth. Again, the best scientific management in the shop should teach how to eliminate<sup>4</sup> waste motions with at the same time the least injurious effects upon so-called human efficiency. An industrial army always takes twenty or thirty years before it has trained veterans,<sup>5</sup> for it is the old guard that understands the real business and insures the evolution<sup>6</sup> of a better system at the sacrifice of a lifetime of service.

Industries at home have suffered ups and downs.<sup>d</sup> Trouble has usually come from faulty business management and the persistence of our traditional system rather than from technical failure. Let us quote a passage from an article by an American observer recently published in the *Engineering Magazine*, relating

---

<sup>1</sup> One employed in casting metals. <sup>2</sup> Shaping of metals. <sup>3</sup> Press run by fluid in motion. <sup>4</sup> Do away with. <sup>5</sup> Experienced men. <sup>6</sup> Development.



to an important industry of our country: "With skilled labor of a character that would command from six to ten dollars a day in the United States—and, say, two thirds of those amounts in Europe—available at from forty to ninety cents, and with unlimited unskilled labor at hand for ten to fifteen cents a day, the works themselves, under the highly competent European management which they have, should be able to make the products at a fraction of the cost in foreign plants. There is no doubt, however, that much of the advantage is lost through the cumbersome,<sup>1</sup> inefficient, and probably corrupt system of the Chinese business department. That even under that handicap<sup>2</sup> their concerns<sup>3</sup> have no difficulty in securing contracts in the open market<sup>e</sup> in competition with foreign companies would seem to indicate that experience and systematic management would, in time, give its products—and those of other domestic companies—a commanding advantage<sup>f</sup> in supplying the demands of New China in this line." It is not the lack of technical ability<sup>4</sup> which offers a drawback<sup>5</sup> to our manufacturers. It is not the lack of capital that limits the development of our industries. It is the lack of good business organization that has discouraged the interest of investment<sup>6</sup> at home in the business enterprise. Recently in the United States, there has been evinced a strong desire to train college graduates to enter business. Movements have already begun for the establishment of

---

<sup>1</sup> Clumsy. <sup>2</sup> Disadvantage. <sup>3</sup> Business. <sup>4</sup> Skill. <sup>5</sup> Discouragement or hindrance. <sup>6</sup> Laying out money in business.



some model colleges of business and to include<sup>1</sup> some commercial and business studies with the engineering course. No longer does the rule of thumb play an important part<sup>2</sup> in recent technical development.

It has generally been admitted that in order to organize a factory, four steps are quite essential: (1) choice of location and site, (2) layout and construction of building, (3) type of organization, and (4) the handling of men and materials. But the maintenance of an efficient factory organization and the insurance of good business management depend entirely upon the executive,<sup>2</sup> the managing, and the technical forces, the relations and the functions of which are shown by the following table. This tabulation<sup>3</sup> is made from the physical analysis of some manufacturing plants, and from available information, together with the writer's idea for additions. A general name is adopted for each department, for in different companies there are different names given to the same department which performs different functions. Some new functions of certain departments are sometimes created in the following table. By no means is this table complete, but it may, with some modifications, serve as a guide for our technicians, or remain as an interesting subject for serious discussion and criticism by our reading public.

---

<sup>1</sup> Add to. <sup>2</sup> Administrative. <sup>3</sup> Putting facts in tabular form.

**Table Showing Physical Analysis of the Operating Forces  
in a Factory**

**EXECUTIVE FORCE**

<b>DIRECTORS</b>	<b>SECRETARY</b>
<b>PRESIDENT</b>	<b>ASSISTANT TO SECRETARY</b>
<b>ASSISTANT TO PRESIDENT</b>	<b>TREASURER</b>
<b>VICE-PRESIDENTS</b>	<b>ASSISTANT TO TREASURER</b>

**MANAGING FORCE**

**AUDITING AND ACCOUNTING DEPARTMENT**

**COST DEPARTMENT**

**PURCHASING DEPARTMENT**

**SALES DEPARTMENT**

District Sales

Export Sales

Traveling Sales

**ADVERTISING DEPARTMENT**

Magazine and Newspaper Advertising

Post Advertising

Exhibit and Demonstration Advertising

Motion Picture Advertising

**ORDER DEPARTMENT**

**INVOICE DEPARTMENT**

**CLAIM DEPARTMENT**

**TRAFFIC DEPARTMENT**

**COMMUNICATION DEPARTMENT**

Filing of Patents

Buying of Patents

Patent Attorneys



## DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC FUNCTIONS

Providing of Exhibits

Athletic Games

Clubs

Housing

Lunch Rooms

Motion Picture Shows

Conventions.

## TECHNICAL FORCE

GENERAL SUPERINTENDENT

ASSISTANT GENERAL SUPERINTENDENT

DEPARTMENTAL SUPERINTENDENT

(that is, superintendents of those departments which supervise and carry on the manufacture of such products as are related to that particular line of industry concerned)

SUPERINTENDENT OF SHOPS

Machine Shops

Forge Shop

Foundry

Oil House

Pipe Fixtures

SUPERINTENDENT OF MOTIVE POWERS

Boilers

Steam Turbines

Gas Engines

Steam Engines

Refrigerators

Blowing Engines

Air Compressors

Locomotives

Generators

Different Transmission Systems

# ELECTRICIAN

Motors

Electric Cranes

Telephone Systems

Electric Lights

# CHIEF MASON

# ENGINEERING DEPARTMENT

Designing and Drafting

Contracting

Estimating

Maintenance Work

Extension Work

# STOREKEEPER

# TIMEKEEPER

Time Recording

Bonus System

Motion Study

Director of Chemical and Physical Laboratories

# RESEARCH DEPARTMENT

Consulting Staff

Committee on Special Problems

Apprenticeship Courses

Advanced Technical Training

Editing of Journals

# FINISHING DEPARTMENT

# SHIPPING DEPARTMENT



## EMPLOYMENT DEPARTMENT

Labor Agencies

Information Bureau

## DEPARTMENT OF SAFETY AND RELIEF

Safety Bulletins

Safety Devices

Safety Instructions

Training the First Aid

Hospitals

Pension Funds

## POLICE DEPARTMENT

Watchmen

Porters

Guide to Visitors

Detectives, in case there is a trade secret

Fire Stations

Sanitary Measures, especially where women laborers  
are employed

Detailed descriptions for each department are not given here, but we can easily perceive that there are always some interrelations between different departments and forces. Industrial efficiency is accompanied by human efficiency, technical development must go hand in hand with social betterment, and financial success depends entirely upon a good business system. May we see that government protection, public patronage, systematic management, and scientific solution exert their combined efforts to foster our infant industries at home — *The Chinese Students' Monthly*.

## QUESTIONS

1. What are the characteristic elements in the factory system?
2. Prove the importance of system in the management of modern industry.
3. Name and define the three elements essential to business organization.
4. What is the real cause of frequent failures in our industries?
5. What are the four important steps necessary in organizing a factory?
6. Upon what depends the maintenance of efficient factory organization or business management?
7. Into how many main departments may the operating forces in a factory be divided?
8. Name the different departments in connection with the managing force.
9. Name the different departments of the technical force.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- 170 a. *To turn out*: to produce; to finish.
- 172 b. *To stick to the job*: to be constant or faithful to an undertaking.
- „ c. *“Dollars and cents” policy*: the policy or method of practising economy; avoidance of wastefulness.
- „ d. *To suffer ups and downs*: to experience the vicissitudes or changes of fortune.
- 173 e. *The open market*: the world market, without exclusive privileges.
- „ f. *A commanding advantage*: a superior position.
- 174 g. *To play an important part*: to be an important factor in.



## LESSON XX

## THE FRONTIER MOVEMENT

YU TINN-HUGH, PH.D., LL.B.

*Professor of Sociology, Peking Normal College*

Those of us who have intimately<sup>1</sup> studied the social, political, and economic conditions of China should have very little doubt, indeed, that there are two fundamental problems confronting the country to-day. One of these problems is the reunification<sup>2</sup> of the country, and the other is the opening up of the great Chinese frontiers.<sup>3</sup> By the term frontiers is meant the great territories comprising Manchuria,† Mongolia,† Chinese Turkestan, Tibet,† and the waste areas located<sup>4</sup> within the borders of the Chinese republic. These regions are twice as large as China proper. The agitation<sup>5</sup> and the schemes to be carried out for the opening up of the Chinese frontiers is what I call the frontier movement.

All of us who have stayed in this country for a certain length of time know that the social and political conditions of the country are being upset.<sup>6</sup> Many causes have been assigned for the existence of these conditions, but none of them are valid.<sup>7</sup>

As to the remedies for curing these conditions, many schemes have been proposed. Among these proposals are revolutionary violence, socialism,<sup>8</sup> anarchism,<sup>9</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In an intimate or thorough manner. <sup>2</sup> Act of reuniting. <sup>3</sup> Borders of the settled and cultivated part of a country. <sup>4</sup> Situated. <sup>5</sup> Act of stirring up. <sup>6</sup> Overturned, disturbed. <sup>7</sup> Founded in truth; sound, justified. <sup>8</sup> A theory or system of social reform advocating a more just and equitable distribution of property and labor. <sup>9</sup> The doctrine or practice of a system wherein there is no law or supreme government.



bolshevism,<sup>1</sup> the overthrowing of the present political and military system, troop disbandment, student agitation, and so forth. All of these proposals may sound very well on paper, but when we came to practice them, things would be different as they are not fundamental remedies. I am sorry that we have no time to discuss these proposals in detail.

To the present writer the fundamental social problem of China to-day is the problem of production rather than of distribution, as some writers maintain. At present about 95 per cent of the population of China are living under the so-called poverty line. This is due to the congestion<sup>2</sup> of population in certain areas, the agricultural products of which are not sufficient to meet their needs. Before we go any further it will be necessary to establish the standard of living<sup>a</sup> and the poverty line in China. A family of five individuals, consisting of a husband and a wife and three children, needs at least two hundred and fifty dollars a year to maintain its physical and mental efficiency in the simplest way. This sum only includes fuel, water, food, clothing, shelter, and common education for the children, and does not include anything for luxury, sickness, insurance, or savings of any kind. So we may say that the two hundred and fifty dollars mentioned above constitutes the lowest standard of living for a family of five individuals, and that any family or the head of any family who receives an annual income of less than this sum, is necessarily living under the poverty line.

---

<sup>1</sup> Russian communism.    <sup>2</sup> State of being overcrowded, overfullness.



Although the minimum<sup>1</sup> standard is so low, according to common observation there is less than five per cent of the population living above this poverty line. This is proved by the scale of wages of various occupations. We may take Peking as an example. The wages of the servant, the ricksha puller, the ordinary laborer, etc., range from one dollar a month, including board, up to ten or twelve dollars excluding board. The majority of the population is engaged in these occupations. Besides these, there are thousands of peddlers<sup>2</sup> each with an income of less than one dollar, and thousands of beggars who are absolute parasites,<sup>3</sup> depending upon society to feed them.

Now it seems that the source of all troubles in China lies with this class of individuals. The characteristic<sup>4</sup> man of this class is a jack of all trades.<sup>b</sup> Sometimes he is a servant, sometimes a ricksha puller, a peddler, a cook, a small trader, a farmer, or a beggar, and at other times he is a bandit,<sup>5</sup> or a soldier. He is a product of poverty, and a product of modern Chinese society. Since the members of this class are as they are, they would do anything and everything to make their existence secure.<sup>6</sup> Under such circumstances, individual self preservation comes before social order, and the result is social chaos.<sup>7</sup>

Soldiering is a dangerous occupation. The soldier knows it, too. Since he knows it to be so, why does he engage in it? The psychology of the soldier and the

---

<sup>1</sup> The least quantity possible. <sup>2</sup> Hawker, traveling trader. <sup>3</sup> One who lives at the expense of others. <sup>4</sup> (a) Typical, representative. <sup>5</sup> Robber. <sup>6</sup> Livelihood. <sup>7</sup> Disorder, confusion.



bandit is simply this—that under the present social conditions in China, making a comfortable living is not easy, and begging is even harder, and it would result in hunger and death. Becoming a soldier, should he be killed in battle he would die with a full stomach and perhaps as a hero, since he might kill some of his opponents before he died. But on the other hand, if he should not be killed, he might make a fortune for himself; and if Dame Fortune should smile on him, he might become a military potentate.<sup>1</sup> The soldiers are bandits and the bandits are soldiers; when you recruit<sup>2</sup> them for the army they are soldiers, and when you disband them, they become bandits. So this soldier-bandit system is an endless thing and an incurable evil. One solution is to send them to the frontiers to open up the millions of waste acres in Manchuria, Mongolia, Chinese Turkestan, and Tibet.

The fecundity<sup>3</sup> of the Chinese population is very great. The population multiplies in a geometric ratio, but on the other hand, the agricultural production of the country is very slow and cannot sufficiently feed the population, as China has been an agricultural country for the last forty-five or more centuries. The population of the country doubles many times during these centuries, yet the geographical area remains more or less the same; consequently the production of the country becomes less and less in proportion to the increasing population. According to estimates based upon studies of the subject the population of the country

---

<sup>1</sup> Ruler. <sup>2</sup> (v) To enlist (as new soldiers). <sup>3</sup> Power of bringing forth in great abundance, fertility.



doubles several times during each century. Because of of this, as the population increases, the food supply becomes scarcer and scarcer. If in normal<sup>1</sup> times the conditions are already thus, when a flood or drought comes the game of social disorder begins.

On the average throughout Chinese history, every thirty years there occurred a small rebellion, and, every century or more, a great rebellion, and every three centuries, a dynastic<sup>2</sup> change. Usually these rebellions and dynastic changes occurred either during or immediately following a flood or a famine. Rebellions usually commenced in a small area, and gradually spread throughout the country, and when they reached a certain level, the authorities escaped and the country went through a process of chaos and disintegration.<sup>3</sup> After this process of disintegration was been completed, the process of reintegration<sup>4</sup> began again, when all the chiefs of rebels or bandits became exterminated,<sup>5</sup> excepting one, the strongest one, who assumed the throne, and became the founder of a new dynasty and the giver of law and order. So the present chaos in the country is, in every respect, similar to the past dynastic changes, as it is also due to the insufficient supply of products for the increasing needs of the population, a process known as the law of diminishing returns or Malthusianism.<sup>6</sup>

As to the immediate method for the solution of our present-day problem, I shall let others conceive it, as it

---

<sup>1</sup> Regular, ordinary.    <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to dynasty or line of kings.  
<sup>3</sup> Act or process of breaking up.    <sup>4</sup> Act or process of building up again.    <sup>5</sup> Destroyed utterly.



is a political problem. As to the future solution of the population problem, and the possible prevention of further social disorders in the future, I suggest the opening up of the Chinese frontiers, and the removal to those regions of the surplus population of the interior regions, in order to solve the social and political problems.

The frontier movement is an actual affair, and if we try to carry it out, various problems will arise. There are at least two problems which need to be commented upon here :

1. *The internal<sup>1</sup> problem or national unity.* Before there is national unity, the frontier movement can hardly be carried out. So the opening up of the frontiers depends upon national reunification.

2. *The international problem or the problem of capital.* Since Manchuria is under the control of Japan, and Tibet under the sphere of influence of England, various problems would arise should China wish to develop these regions without the assistance of the various nations concerned. Besides this, foreign capital would be needed for the development of these regions, as capital is very scarce in China. If we expect to raise money in China, we shall have to pay a high rate of interest, as banking interest in China is about 17 per cent or more, whereas banking interest in foreign countries ranges from 5 to 6 per cent. That is why foreign capital is preferable to Chinese capital.

As to the ways and means<sup>d</sup> of opening up the frontiers, the work should be done along the following lines, and in the following stages :

---

<sup>1</sup> Inner, domestic.



1. *Publicity stage:*

- a. Publication of articles, collection of publicity material, delivering of public lectures and organization of frontier societies.
- b. Organization of a frontier school for the training of students to handle the future administrative<sup>1</sup> affairs of the frontiers.
- c. Collection of books relating to the frontiers, and the organization of a frontier library.
- d. Establishment of chairs (professorships) on the frontiers, in the various colleges and universities throughout the country.
- e. Organization of a governmental organ<sup>2</sup> for the administration of the frontier movement.
- f. Organization of surveying<sup>3</sup> parties and traveling groups to investigate<sup>4</sup> detailed<sup>5</sup> conditions in the frontier regions.

2. *Preparatory stage:*

- a. Pooling together of Chinese and foreign capital for the development of the Chinese frontiers.
- b. Organization of frontier banks.
- c. Organization of frontier plantation companies.
- d. Organization of frontier railroad companies.
- e. Organization of frontier industrial and mining companies.
- f. Construction of frontier roads.
- g. Organization of frontier transportation companies.
- h. Organization of frontier employment agencies.

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to the management. <sup>2</sup> Medium of communication.  
<sup>3</sup> Measuring land. <sup>4</sup> Look into. <sup>5</sup> In particular.

- i.* Organization of frontier missionary associations, Y. M. C. A.
  - j.* Transportation of disbanded soldiers to the frontiers.
  - k.* Transportation of criminals, beggars, bandits, lawless individuals, refugees, etc., to the frontiers.
  - l.* Distribution of labor in the different regions.
3. *Practical stage:*
- a.* Organization of police administration.
  - b.* Establishment of a taxation system.
  - c.* Employment of disbanded soldiers for labor of various sorts.
  - d.* Organization of frontier educational institutions.
  - e.* Organization of local government and community centers.

If the above-mentioned scheme could be carried out, in fifty years' time the Chinese frontier, which is as yet an unknown area, would become a prosperous region like China proper. I am sorry that this paper is too short to convey to you all of my ideas concerning the development of the Chinese frontiers. At any rate, I hope that I have given you a clear idea of this movement. I hope that all of you will be able to assist us in it.

—*The Chinese Social and Political Science Review.*

#### QUESTIONS

1. What are the two important problems confronting our country to-day, and what is meant by frontier movement?



2. What are among the schemes proposed for the betterment of our social conditions? Are they practical?
3. Explain what is meant by living under the poverty line, and to what cause it is due?
4. What is the percentage of our population that is living above the poverty line? Illustrate.
5. What is meant by jack-of-all-trades, and how is this class of individuals brought about?
6. What is the general idea of the man who becomes a soldier or a bandit, and how can we remedy the soldier problem?
7. Explain the relation of population to the problem of food supply.
8. Can you explain the causes of rebellion and dynastic changes?
9. What would you suggest as the best solution to the present social disorders in the country?
10. What are the necessary steps to the successful carrying out of our frontier movement?
11. Enumerate the practical ways and means of opening up the frontiers.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- 181 a. *Standard of living*: requirement of living according to the ordinary standard of civilization.
- 182 b. *Jack of all trades*: a person who can turn his hand to any kind of business.
- 184 c. *Law of diminishing returns or Malthusianism*: the theory, according to Malthus, that by reason of population increasing faster than the means of subsistence, starvation must result, unless some check is put on the former.
- 185 d. *Ways and means*: methods, resources.

## LESSON XXI

POSSIBILITIES IN PLANT IMPROVEMENT IN  
NORTH CHINA

CHUNJEN C. CHEN

*Director, Agricultural Experiment Station, Tsinghua College*

Of all the problems—social, political, and economic—that confront China to-day, none is as important and urgent as that of her agriculture. It is believed that two-thirds of China's population live on the land and obtain their living directly from the land. Hence, the primary significance in our problem is the necessity of using every acre of available<sup>1</sup> land for food production. Nowhere else in the world, I think, does the population press so hard upon<sup>a</sup> the soil for sheer<sup>2</sup> subsistence,<sup>3</sup> nowhere is the margin<sup>4</sup> between life and death by starvation so narrow.

Under these conditions, the problem of how to increase and to improve the crop in production and in quality must be considered first. Of all the sciences that contribute to the great task of efficient scientific farming toward the goal of high production and quality, none is more important economically than plant breeding. One may not overlook<sup>5</sup> the fundamental relation borne by the sciences of mathematics, physics, chemistry, botany,<sup>6</sup> zoölogy,<sup>7</sup> geology,<sup>8</sup> meteorology,<sup>9</sup> and economics,

---

<sup>1</sup> Capable of being used to advantage. <sup>2</sup> Mere. <sup>3</sup> Means of support, livelihood. Border, verge, edge. <sup>5</sup> Neglect. <sup>6</sup> Science which treats of the nature, growth, and classification of plants. <sup>7</sup> That part of biology relating to animal life. <sup>8</sup> The science which treats of the structure and mineral constitution of the earth. <sup>9</sup> Science which treats of the atmosphere and its phenomena.



to the production and distribution of raw materials. But I confidently assert that the science which underlies the improvement of plants for agricultural purposes is destined to receive increasing attention in agricultural education and in agricultural practice. Without doubt vast possibilities await realization through the more thorough and systematic development of our living economic resources. Such development is directly dependent upon the successful utilization<sup>1</sup> of essential principles of plant breeding. Growing appreciation of the importance of plant breeding in relation to the high production of crops has come to the thoughtful minds of agricultural leaders in the world. In making a rough study of the crop statistics of China during the past few years, I have noticed that the yearly crop production is on the decline.<sup>b</sup> Furthermore, according to the eleventh year statistical report of the Ministry of Agriculture and Commerce, it is shown that an acreage<sup>2</sup> of 642,206 *mow* of crops has been destroyed by diseases in 1918. In the same year, there was an acreage of 19,140,071 *mow* of crops killed by drought.<sup>3</sup> I attribute the principal cause of the decrease in production to the poorly-selected seeds which are inferior in variety, strain, and in disease and drought resistance, though it may be due to some aspects of inefficient cultural method. These troubles can be easily overcome by the science of plant breeding.

EARLY PLANTS AND SEEDS. Historically, plant breeding is not a new science in China. The oldest records of

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of utilising or making use of. <sup>2</sup> Acres (43,560 square feet of land) collectively. <sup>3</sup> Scarcity of water.



intentional preservation of superior plants are found, according to Darwin, in ancient Chinese encyclopedias<sup>1</sup> which were translated by the Jesuits† during the eighteenth century. The best plants and fruit trees were used for propagation,<sup>2</sup> and the imperial edicts<sup>3</sup> were issued to recommend the choice of large seed. In the history of China, it is stated that a variety of rice noted for its early maturity was introduced into China from South Annam in the Sung dynasty (A.D. 988). Another species of rice, now known as "imperial rice," was selected for its special fragrance for imperial court use by the Manchu emperor, K'ang Hsi. Cotton was introduced and acclimatized<sup>4</sup> for clothing purposes in place of hemp during the early part of the Yüan dynasty, in A.D. 1228. Potatoes were first introduced into the province of Hupeh by a French priest. At present a more systematic breeding work has been organized by the University of Nanking and Southeastern University in eastern and central China, and by Canton Christian College in South China. Their work is principally with cotton, rice, wheat, and fruits. The Agricultural Experiment Station of Tsing Hua College, in Peking, has also started some wheat-, corn- millet-<sup>5</sup> and kaoliang-breeding investigations.

Turning my attention now to the discussion of possibilities in plant breeding for North China, I am fully conscious that my experience is too little to allow of any adequate presentation of this great, important

---

<sup>1</sup> A work discussing alphabetically all branches of knowledge.

<sup>2</sup> Act of diffusing or increasing. <sup>3</sup> Decrees, proclamations of a law made by a sovereign authority. <sup>4</sup> Habituated to a climate not native. <sup>5</sup> Cereal bearing small roundish grains.



subject. It may be well, however, for me to bring before you some points relating to this subject for discussion.

In the study of the possibilities in plant breeding for North China, it may be better for all of us interested in the subject to make a survey<sup>c</sup> of some important crops now being cultivated in North China that can be improved in quality as well as in quantity. The great wheat-growing region lies in North China. Corn, sorghum,<sup>1</sup> peanuts, soy bean,<sup>2</sup> sweet potatoes, and millet are also among the main crops of this section of the country. Cotton is no less important as a crop in North China. In fact the American Upland cotton is believed to be best adapted to grow along the north of the Hwangho valley. There are many kinds of fruit, such as peaches, pears, apples, apricots,<sup>3</sup> cherries, persimmons, and grapes, grown in the provinces of Chihli and Shantung, particularly near the cities of Chefoo, Poutouchên, Tehchow and Peking. Around the locality of Peking many valuable vegetables and ornamental flowers are grown; notably, the *pei-tsai*, strawberries, and peonies. In the case of the above-mentioned plants, is there any room left for improvement by means of plant breeding for increase in production and quality?

Besides plant selection, due attention should also be paid to the study of soil and climatic conditions in North China. The climate of this section<sup>4</sup> is generally dry and has a rather short summer season. Plants, if they are

---

<sup>1</sup> A variety of millet possessing sweet juice. <sup>2</sup> Bean out of which Chinese sauce is produced. <sup>3</sup> Fruit allied to the plum. <sup>4</sup> Portion, division.



grown advantageously in this region, must have the characteristics of early maturity and drought resistance. Failure of crops due to the attack of disease is also the prevailing<sup>1</sup> problem. These conditions should be an incentive to plant breeding for increase in agricultural output and for raising the quality of raw materials in North China. No doubt, by the science of plant breeding, more plants of high productive<sup>2</sup> type can be produced and maintained; more plants adapted to drought and disease resistance can be obtained; and better agricultural conditions in general can be insured.

What are the methods of procedure in such a movement? There must be a plan. First, a working collection of all available species and varieties within a group in which improvement is desired is of immediate necessity. The importance of systematic study of local variety traits has to be realized and the collections of cultivated varieties at various places will prove very useful for purposes of selection of better adapted sorts, as well as for some work in hybridization.<sup>3</sup> At the same time, we can introduce desirable plants from foreign countries and acclimatize them through careful study. The second method on the program is mass selection. It simply picks out choice plants from the main crop and sows the seed from them *en masse*.<sup>4</sup> It has long been used, especially in improving small grain, cotton, and corn, but it has also been used with many other crops and has proved to be very effective and satisfactory. However, with this method it is found

---

<sup>1</sup> Predominant, prevalent.    <sup>2</sup> Capable of producing.    <sup>3</sup> Act of producing offspring by the union of two distinct species.



necessary to continually repeat the selection of the best plants from year to year in order to maintain the improvement already gained. It is, in fact, the easiest and most practical method for crops, like cotton, if long and uniform staple<sup>1</sup> and high lint<sup>2</sup> percentage are desired.

The third method which requires more technique<sup>3</sup> in actual practice is the line selection or progeny<sup>4</sup> test. This is the first application<sup>5</sup> of the pure-line theory<sup>6</sup> in genetics.<sup>6</sup> Many new strains are to be secured through mass selection from a general field and planted out separately for the rigid tests of several consecutive<sup>7</sup> years, in which the most promising strains are compared with each other and with the best commercial varieties. It results in securing but few really superior varieties. Those well-known popular cultural methods like plant-to-row, and ear-to-row are founded on this principle of line selection. This method has already made a valuable record in increasing wheat production and in improving grain quality throughout the northern part of the United States and in Canada. Why not do likewise with our wheat and other grain here? Hybridization is another general method of plant breeding in the light of<sup>8</sup> genetical science which holds great promise of future possibilities.

Lastly, the clonal<sup>8</sup> selection method also gives the keynote<sup>8</sup> to the success of improving the most of our

---

<sup>1</sup> The fiber of cotton. <sup>2</sup> Raw cotton after ginning. <sup>3</sup> Method or style of performance in any art. <sup>4</sup> Offspring, descendants. <sup>5</sup> Act of making use of. <sup>6</sup> The branch of biology which deals with heredity and variation. <sup>7</sup> Successive. <sup>8</sup> Adj. from "clon," a group of cultivated plants composed of individuals propagated vegetatively from a single or original seedling or stock.



horticultural plants. This method of plant improvement is based upon the utilization of a sexual means of multiplication, whether by selecting the most favorable clons from a mixed population, or by selecting and propagating favorable variations within the progeny. To improve the crop production in North China, we must employ the foregoing methods jointly, not separately. When one considers the extent and diversity of agriculture in the regions of North China and the low average production per acre as well as the poor quality of most of our important crops, it is evident that there is ample room<sup>1</sup> left for the possibilities of plant breeding enterprises and abundant opportunity for the plant breeder's work. Many great sections of the north which are now nearly barren could be made productive if varieties of plants could be developed which are resistant to drought and disease. Economically much of the rural<sup>1</sup> depression<sup>2</sup> can thus be relieved.

However, it must always be remembered that the full possibilities of practicing the art of plant breeding must await the gradual development of scientific research<sup>3</sup> and instruction. Therefore, the need of a strong course in plant breeding for preparing specialists and a research organization for carrying out the breeding experiments in the agricultural colleges of North China is now deeply felt. — *The China Weekly Review*.

### QUESTIONS

1. Why is the problem of agriculture the most important one in China?

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to the country or farm.    <sup>2</sup> Discouragement; slackness of business.    <sup>3</sup> Inquiry.



2. Why is the question of plant breeding gaining closer attention of scientists?
3. To what causes do you attribute the decline of our crop production?
4. Show that the art of plant breeding is not a new science in China.
5. Where is the study of plant breeding systematically carried out, and in what particular varieties is the work especially concerned?
6. What kinds of plants are peculiarly adapted to North China?
7. What kind of cotton could you recommend for North China?
8. Name the kinds of fruits grown in the northern provinces.
9. What is the peculiarity of the northern climate in China, and what kind of plant is best suited to this kind of climate?
10. Name and explain the different methods of plant improvement.
11. Upon what does successful plant breeding largely depend?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- 190 a. *To press upon*: to ply hard, to exact from, make demands upon.
- 191 b. *To be on the decline*: to decrease, to get worse.
- 192 c. *To make a survey*: to examine, to study.
- 193 d. *"En masse"*: in a body.
- 194 e. *Pure-line theory*: theory based upon the principle that purity of race is necessary to avoid degeneration.
- „ f. *In the light of*: from the view point of: by means of.
- „ g. *To give the key note*: to afford the means of solution, to give the principal fact or idea.
- 195 h. *Ample room*: abundant opportunity.

## LESSON XXII

## THE AGRICULTURAL OUTLOOK IN CHINA

H. H. HU, Sc. D.

*Dean of Botanical Department, Southeastern University*

The scope<sup>1</sup> of agriculture<sup>2</sup> is immensely broad. In its widest sense agriculture consists of all the productions of plants and animals useful to man. It thus includes agronomy,<sup>3</sup> horticulture,<sup>4</sup> forestry, and animal husbandry. By these we even mean fish culture,<sup>5</sup> bee keeping, textile<sup>6</sup> productions, etc. Likewise, many industries are included, such as butter making, sugar manufacturing, cheese making, etc. In short, the productions of shelter, clothing, and food are all within the scope of<sup>a</sup> agriculture.

Knowing the scope and importance of agriculture in general, we may now consider its importance for China. Not infrequently do we hear people over-emphasize the importance of manufacturing with constant reference to Germany and Great Britain, without knowing the real situations in those countries. With a kind of pleasant illusion<sup>7</sup> even the ex-minister of commerce and manufacture, Liu K'un-Yih, claimed that our country should be an industrial country. I rather hesitate to agree with his ideas, for there are many more difficulties to be met with in developing industries than in developing agriculture.

---

<sup>1</sup> Extent. <sup>2</sup> Art or science of cultivating the land. <sup>3</sup> Management of land, agriculture. <sup>4</sup> Art of cultivating gardens or orchards. <sup>5</sup> Cultivation. <sup>6</sup> Pertaining to weaving; woven fabrics. <sup>7</sup> Deceptive appearance.



First of all, we know that in countries where industries are in their infancy,<sup>b</sup> the latter can be maintained and developed only by a protective tariff†; thus, often a tax of two hundred per cent is collected from foreign goods in countries where protection is made the safeguard<sup>1</sup> to infant industries against foreign competition. But, since our country is subject to<sup>c</sup> the treaty made after the Boxer Rebellion, which stipulates that only five per cent of customs duty can be charged against all foreign goods, a protective tariff is out of the question<sup>d</sup>; the safeguard is thus lacking and the development of industries becomes almost impossible. If we still insist upon extending industry, nothing but loss will be the ultimate result.

Secondly, the development of industry depends upon the advancement of agriculture, for the percentage of the working population which can be spared from engaging in agriculture and turned to industry depends upon the improvement of agricultural practice. To supply the total population of our whole country with food we need from seventy to eighty per cent of the whole working population to engage in<sup>e</sup> agriculture; yet, not infrequently do we become short of food supplies, and famine occurs every few years. It is a shame to have to state that many vessels coming from Japan empty their full cargo of peanuts into our country every year. In the United States, the working population engaged in agriculture is only thirty-six per cent, yet the agricultural production is not only sufficient for home consumption<sup>f</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Protection.



but also enough to support another population as large as her own. This signifies<sup>1</sup> that unless we can improve, we cannot take away say sixty per cent of our working population engaged in agriculture at present to engage in industry, if we want enough food supply for domestic consumption.

Besides, it is not industry alone that can make a country well off.<sup>2</sup> If a country is suited to agriculture, the latter pays even more than industry. Just look at the United States. Is she not prosperous, and yet is she not an agricultural country? The Argentine Republic is another good example. Our own country is similar to these two in physical conditions, but different from England and Germany. It is rather to our advantage that our country is bound to be<sup>3</sup> an important agricultural one. We are fortunately endowed<sup>2</sup> by nature with what England and Germany lack. Henceforth we are not unwise when we endeavor to develop agriculture with our whole strength without attempting to venture in industries at present.

Now comes another question: whether Western or so-called scientific agriculture is really better than the old-fashioned agricultural practice in our own country. The answer is positive<sup>3</sup> for it is not the manipulation<sup>4</sup> of agricultural principles that is much better than the old-fashioned<sup>5</sup> farming, but the generalized principles, which are not understood by our farmers. Generally speaking, our farmers are inferior to scientific farmers

---

<sup>1</sup> Means, denotes. <sup>2</sup> Furnished with. <sup>3</sup> Affirmative. <sup>4</sup> Operation, handling. <sup>5</sup> Obsolete, out of date.



in many respects, especially in ability in administration and scientific knowledge.

We know that in a less-advanced stage of social development a man works only for his own needs; there is little division of labor<sup>1</sup> and little exchange or commerce. The products are consumed by those who produce them. At present the case is different; yet, through the inevitable<sup>1</sup> development of economical conditions this will be the case in our own country also. Soon farmers will not consume all they produce and not produce all they consume, but sell their products and buy other commodities<sup>2</sup> in return. This will be the case especially when special farming is more and more practiced. Then farmers will be fruit growers, poultry farmers, animal husbandmen, or grain farmers, etc., exclusively. Then ability in administration<sup>3</sup> will mean success, and deficiency, failure. But how much do our farmers know about administration of this kind, or, putting it into technical terms, farm management? Not only are farmers in the old country ignorant of farm management but even the majority of American farmers fail in this respect. As was well stated by Professor Warren of Cornell University, the farmer is a combination of business man, mechanic,<sup>4</sup> naturalist,<sup>5</sup> and laborer. We may disregard the ability of the mechanic for the present as farm machinery cannot be used in China nowadays, but the other three qualities are necessary for successful farming. The farmers in

---

<sup>1</sup> Unavoidable, certain.    <sup>2</sup> Goods, articles.    <sup>3</sup> Management.  
<sup>4</sup> Artisan, one skilled in machines.    <sup>5</sup> One versed in natural history.



China have only one of those, that of a laborer. Do they know how to keep farm accounts and to what extent they gain or lose? Do they know the tendency of markets and how to make more money by growing the crops which command a higher price? Do they ever dream of farm coöperation and the methods of preventing the shrewd merchants from sucking their blood.<sup>1</sup>

Our farmers are entirely without scientific knowledge. They practice what they are taught by their elders, understanding what they practice no more than wasps and bees understand their instincts. They never stop to think what they could improve in their farms nor what they might do in cases of emergency.<sup>1</sup> They have no foresight<sup>2</sup> beyond the present year. They have no idea of the rotation of crops,<sup>†</sup> amendment<sup>3</sup> of soils, reclamation<sup>4</sup> of marsh and alkali<sup>5</sup> land, the use of underground tile-drainage, control of injurious insects, selection of breeds<sup>6</sup> of farm animals, or varieties of crops, in short everything that can improve their farming conditions and insure their prosperity. So they are exceedingly poor, whereas the farmers in the United States have automobiles and flower gardens.

Now, as we are convinced of the deficiency of agricultural knowledge of our farmers, we should discuss the remedy for it. As our farming class is usually ignorant and conservative,<sup>7</sup> it is impossible for them

---

<sup>1</sup> Unforeseen occurrence; necessity. <sup>2</sup> Power of seeing beforehand. <sup>3</sup> A technical agricultural phrase meaning; to put into the soil some substance which changes its qualities or supplies what is lacking. <sup>4</sup> Act of recovering or restoring. <sup>5</sup> Soda ash. <sup>6</sup> Race or variety. <sup>7</sup> Opposed to change.



to do any reform work. Moreover, there are certain phases of agricultural reformation which can never be accomplished by individuals. It is up to<sup>k</sup> our government to undertake these achievements if we want to enrich our country at all.

The first important step in developing agriculture is the development of Manchuria and Mongolia. American economists<sup>1</sup> frequently say that the future food supply for the increasing population of the world will come from three regions: Canada, Argentina, and Siberia. We know what a severely cold climate Canada and Siberia have. If these two regions are the coming producing centers<sup>2</sup> of food supply, why not Manchuria and Mongolia? Manchuria is well adapted to<sup>l</sup> grain growing and similar field crops, while Mongolia is very good for animal husbandry even at present. By careful and ingenious<sup>3</sup> management it can be developed for even agronomical purposes. If these territories are well developed, our national resources will be greatly increased. Besides that, we can stop our relentless<sup>4</sup> neighbors' ambition.

Secondly, we need to rejuvenate<sup>5</sup> the North. In ancient times the northern provinces were the most productive regions in the country, while the southern provinces were considered poor and worthless; but gradually the southern provinces were more developed and attained great agricultural importance, and the fertility<sup>6</sup> of the soil gradually decreased in the north.

---

<sup>1</sup> Those versed in economics. <sup>2</sup> Points of concentration. <sup>3</sup> Shrewd, clever. <sup>4</sup> Without pity. <sup>5</sup> Render or make young again. <sup>6</sup> Productiveness; ability to produce.



Now, for the last thousand years our country has been dependent entirely upon southern agriculture. Fortunately the South has been able to bear the burden, but how much more fortunate we would be if we could restore the soil fertility of the northern provinces by introducing a better system of farming such as crop rotation, green manure,<sup>1</sup> leguminous<sup>2</sup> cover crops, and reclamation of accumulated alkali?

Thirdly, the restoration of forests is another urgent problem. We might say forestry is one thing practically unknown to our country. A continuous and inexhaustible<sup>3</sup> resource from forests has never been heard of. The people have never known the relation of forests to man. We would rather suffer flood as a kind of inevitable misfortune than to protect and maintain forests. At the best, the people wait for the trees in the mountains to attain their full growth, then cut them down at once, and sometimes replant some seedlings<sup>4</sup> carelessly to cover the barren range. More unfortunate still, trees five or six inches in diameter are cut down and split for fuel only! In short, deforestation instead of afforestation is the only thing our people practiced for thousands of years. The result is not only that there is not enough timber for home use, but the destruction wrought by the floods of the Yellow River and the money used to prevent it make a great burden for our people to bear. At present when thousands of miles of railroad are being constructed, the result of deforestation becomes more strongly felt.

---

<sup>1</sup> Fertilising substance. <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to legumes or pod-bearing plants. <sup>3</sup> Unfailing. <sup>4</sup> Plants reared from the seed.



How ashamed we should feel when we think of a great agricultural country such as ours with so many great wooded mountains, and then of how we are obliged to buy timber from foreign countries to build our own railway trucks! By reforestation our wealth will be immensely increased. We could at least save a great sum in flood prevention along the Yellow River.

As stated before, animal husbandry is adapted to Mongolia; but animal husbandry and dairying<sup>1</sup> can be extended in both Mongolia and elsewhere. Although these apparently are of comparatively small importance, yet if we could develop these industries, we could hope to find foreign markets, especially when the canning and cold storage business gradually increases. The beef of Argentina is sold in the markets of London. Ours should have the same chance. Since woolen and leather industries are of growing importance to our country, animal husbandry becomes still more urgent; and since it is not well developed in our country, the poorer classes usually become involuntary vegetarians. By promoting animal husbandry and dairying the poor people could enjoy more animal products.

In connection with animal husbandry one more thing needs to be mentioned. California alone produces 5,500,000 pounds of honey yearly. Supposing that the wholesale price is nine cents per pound, the total value becomes \$495,000 (gold), or a little more than 1,000,000 dollars of our currency. Yet honey is a crop without relation to climate, soil fertility, or capital. Women

---

<sup>1</sup> Business of producing milk, butter, and cheese.



and children can produce a handsome profit from it; still how little our farmers have utilized this industrious little farm animal! From this industry alone we could get \$1,000,000 if all of the farmers tried to raise honeybees even just for pleasure.

Horticulture is still more promising<sup>1</sup> in our country. Vegetable gardening is of much more importance here than in other countries. Although we do not consume fruit as a matter of necessity, we can find foreign markets for it, especially when the canning and cold storage business is well developed. Tea and silk, upon which two industries the prosperity of our commerce depends, are included in this category.<sup>2</sup> Besides, vegetable oils of different kinds will become of much greater importance if we can produce more of them.

Besides these promotional works, we need to pay the same amount of attention to the preventive side. The injury from insects and fungus diseases is startling. The loss of farm products in the United States chargeable to insect pests<sup>3</sup> amounts to \$1,272,000,000 (gold). The same tax paid in our country cannot be smaller but surely greater, because we do not know how to control insects at all. Mr. T. T. Chang said that a small *lichi* orchard in Canton loses a thousand dollars annually from a single kind of insect. Just think, if so small an orchard can afford to lose so much, how great must be the total loss to our farmers! Even if our loss did not exceed what the United States suffers, it still means that those hexapoda<sup>4</sup> tax us six times as

---

<sup>1</sup> Hopeful. <sup>2</sup> Class. <sup>3</sup> Plagues. <sup>4</sup> Insects having six feet.



much as the European powers charged our country for the Boxer war! Fungus disease does no less damage. Grain rust<sup>1</sup> alone causes the United States a loss of \$20,000,000. Two kinds of grain smuts<sup>2</sup> destroy twenty per cent of the total production of grain in this country, without regard to the other plant diseases injuring other crops. If we only knew how to prevent such a drain, our country would be blessed to an unlimited extent.

Our government as well as our farmers should introduce new, useful plants and animals; they should produce and maintain better breeds and varieties of farm animals and crops. Better breeds and worthier varieties seem to be of no great importance at first glance, but one example will suffice. There is one breed of the so-called O. I. C. swine which attains a weight of 2,806 pounds. Under the same conditions and treatment one variety of crop or one breed of animal is often a great deal more profitable than another. We know from our splendid history how much our people are indebted to the famous Emperor Sung Jen Tsuang of the eleventh century for introducing early rice into the country; and how much we are obliged to the great Emperor Han Wu Ti of the first century before Christ for introducing into our country clover and grapes. Since then no more of such work has been undertaken by the government. This kind of work should be greatly encouraged and rewarded, for it means greater prosperity to the nation.

---

<sup>1</sup> Minute mold forming reddish spots on the leaves and stems of cereals or grass. <sup>2</sup> Disease of grain caused by parasitic fungus.



Most important of all, however, is rural<sup>1</sup> education. Not only should college students be taught agriculture whenever they elect to, but high school and grammar school students should be taught in like manner. It was well said by a professor of agricultural education, that "agriculture for boys corresponds to home economics for girls." The farming class should be educated to such an extent that they may be able to read and understand bulletins<sup>2</sup> published by the government experimental stations, and have the readiness to receive this kind of information and practice such knowledge without hesitation. They should always endeavor to find out some better farming methods for their own benefit as well as for that of their country. They should be able to manage their farms as business men manage their shops. Then a general betterment of the farming class and the prosperity of the country will be insured.

These are the urgent problems for us to solve immediately. They are the problems for not only agricultural students but for political, economic, educational, and industrial leaders as well. They are the fundamental<sup>3</sup> principles governing the general prosperity and betterment of our country. It is not by the efforts of the agricultural students alone that these blessings can be obtained. If they all work together toward this direction, the destiny of our country will be like the rising sun of the summer morning, forever glorious and beautiful.—*The Chinese Students' Monthly*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to the country or farm.    <sup>2</sup> Public notices.    <sup>3</sup> Basic, essential.



## QUESTIONS

1. What is agriculture in its widest sense? and what does it include?
2. What is protective tariff? and why is it necessary for a country in which industry is still young?
3. When can China have a protective tariff?
4. Give reasons why the development of industry depends upon the advancement of agriculture?
5. Does a country's prosperity depend largely upon her industry? Illustrate.
6. What will be the effects of our advanced stage of social development upon our farmers?
7. What are the necessary qualifications of a successful farmer? What qualifications does our Chinese farmer possess?
8. What is the first important step toward development of our agriculture? and why?
9. Why is the restoration of forests an urgent problem to us Chinese?
10. State the advantages of developing animal husbandry in China; and prove the fact by concrete illustrations.
11. Give reasons why the preventive measures are as important as the promotion enterprise in agriculture.
12. What should the government do to assist our agriculture?
13. What is the importance of rural education in China?

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Page

- 197 a. *To be within the scope of:* to be involved in; to be covered by.
- 198 b. *At or in infancy:* in the beginning period.
- „ c. *To be subject to:* to be controlled by; to be under.
- „ d. *Out of the question:* impossible.

## Page

- 198 *e.* *To engage in:* to be employed in.  
 „ *f.* *Domestic consumption;* home use; national use.  
 199 *g.* *To be well off:* to be in good circumstances; to be rich.  
 „ *h.* *Bound to be:* destined to become.  
 200 *i.* *Division of labor:* a modern economic method of specialization by which a certain group of men undertake only certain parts of the work.  
 201 *j.* *To suck one's blood:* to squeeze money excessively; to fleece.  
 202 *k.* *To be up to one:* to be one's duty.  
 „ *l.* *Well adapted to:* suitable for; well suited for.

## LESSON XXIII

## BETTER AGRICULTURE IN CHINA

JOHN H. REISNER

*Dean of Agricultural College, University of Nanking*

China's outstanding<sup>1</sup> commercial asset<sup>2</sup>—whatever else it may also be—is her agriculture. The national necessities not provided directly from the land and procured from foreign countries are for the most part indirectly provided by exchange of her agricultural products. A study of the Maritime Customs's<sup>3</sup> import and export returns will indicate how true the above statement is. The relation between China's trade and commerce, on the one hand, and her agriculture, on the other hand, is more intimate than is generally recognized. It is a fact that should engage more of the interest and thought of both foreign and Chinese commercial leaders interested in the development of China trade.

---

<sup>1</sup> Prominent. <sup>2</sup> Entire available property. <sup>3</sup> Duties or tolls on commodities imported from or exported to foreign countries.



Can China's agricultural production be increased? This is an easy question. The answer is an unqualified<sup>1</sup> yes. How China's agricultural production can be increased is a more difficult and baffling<sup>2</sup> problem, though it lends itself easily to the making of many schemes and programs of agricultural improvement. There are a few outstanding instances which can be cited<sup>3</sup> where improvements in production have been introduced and have not only been accepted and used by the farmers, but have been, and still are, extending their influence over an increasing area and are closely related to national commerce. It is interesting to note also the part which foreign introductions have played in these improvements.

Improved seeds lead the list of projects<sup>4</sup> which have resulted in increased production and have influenced commerce and trade. Consider foreign cotton seed. The name of the benefactor who introduced it into North China (presumably into an area not far east of Tientsin) is unknown. From there it was introduced into Shensi and, from the same or a new source, into Hupeh. Shensi cotton for many years has been considered one of the highest grade China cottons, and until recently has sold at a premium.<sup>a</sup> The value of Laohokou (Hupeh), which is often sold on the market for Shensi, and Shensi cottons must be estimated in terms of millions of dollars. The present disrepute of the Shensi cotton may be due to mixing with inferior grades or to deterioration<sup>5</sup> of seed, but at any rate, its contribution

---

<sup>1</sup> Unconditional.    <sup>2</sup> Elusive, perplexing.    <sup>3</sup> Mentioned.    <sup>4</sup> Plans.  
<sup>5</sup> Act of growing worse, degeneration.



to trade and industry has been very great. Nor is there sufficient evidence to indicate that its contributions have all been made and that honesty in marketing would not get back its previous position on the market lists.

The remarkable contributions made and being made increasingly each year by the foreign peanut was the object of comment in the editorial columns of *The China Press* a short time ago. The original four pounds of peanuts brought to Shanghai by Archdeacon Thompson about thirty-five years ago from Virginia, one half of which was introduced into North China by the late Dr. Chas. R. Mills, another missionary, have been increased many millions of times, and are now widely distributed, especially in North China, playing an important part in China's daily subsistence<sup>1</sup> as well as in her commerce and trade.

The introduction of foreign tobacco seed into areas already noted for this product has resulted in very greatly increased production and improved product. This increase has been due almost wholly to the efforts put forth by the British-American Tobacco Company.

The "Irish potato" is another introduction whose production is rather rapidly extending and which, in many localities, has become indigenous<sup>2</sup> and enters regularly into the diet<sup>3</sup> of the local people.

Silkworm "seed" or eggs, of selected varieties, and tested for pebrine<sup>4</sup> disease, are beginning to make themselves felt as a factor in increased and improved

---

<sup>1</sup> Means of support, livelihood. <sup>2</sup> Native, produced or growing naturally in a country. <sup>3</sup> Food. <sup>4</sup> A fatal disease among silkworms due to internal parasites.



silk production in China. The demand for such seed has already greatly outdistanced the supply. In South China silkworm egg cards offered by the Canton Christian College demand a premium in the local markets over locally produced eggs. The International Committee for the improvement of Sericulture<sup>1</sup> in China not long ago produced over a million layings of tested eggs for use principally in the important silk-producing provinces of Kiangsu and Chekiang. Recently, the farmers about Nanking came directly to the Department of Sericulture of the University of Nanking and bought up all the summer crop seed the latter could supply, and gladly paid for it. The great difficulty in bringing about<sup>b</sup> a rapid improvement in silk production is the present inability to provide more than a very small proportion of the disease-free eggs needed, and the inability to control the unsanitary<sup>2</sup> conditions in the homes where the silkworms are reared. The statement is attributed<sup>3</sup> to an expert of the above International Committee that China's present silk production could be increased four times if only disease could be eliminated.<sup>4</sup> This increase would largely be net gain<sup>c</sup> so far as the farmers are concerned, and would make its influence felt at once in the silk export market. Little has yet been attempted in a thoroughly scientific way to increase silk yields within a variety of cocoons<sup>5</sup> by careful selection, but the opportunity for unusual results is most alluring.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The raising of silkworm. <sup>2</sup> Unhealthy, unwholesome. <sup>3</sup> Ascribed. <sup>4</sup> Caused to disappear. <sup>5</sup> The oblong case in which the silkworm chrysalis lies. <sup>6</sup> Tempting.



Improvement in wheat yields and increased production to meet the growing demand are clearly indicated by results of two projects at the University of Nanking. Wheat improved by selection and harvested from the increased fields on the University farm this spring for distribution among the farmers averaged one hundred sixty catties per *mow* (23.5 bushels per acre) as against eighty-four catties per *mow* (12.3 bushels per acre) for the surrounding farmers. This last figure was secured at the time the University threshed<sup>1</sup> the farmers wheat in their small-power American threshing machine, which performance, by the way, marked the first time that wheat of these farmers, back to the first ancestor, was not threshed on a dirt floor; and they greatly appreciated the fact that the wheat was clean. About eighty piculs of this improved wheat will be given out for fall seeding.

The second project had to do with the irrigation<sup>2</sup> of winter wheat in northern Anhwei where almost invariably the yield of this important crop is reduced because of lack of water at some critical time during the growing season. The results this year were especially significant in view of the fact that many fields of wheat, weakened by drought, were attacked by plant lice and were plowed under. Thousands of acres of wheat were thus a total loss to the farmers. The average yield for the region was below normal, whereas the irrigated wheat withstood the attacks of the plant lice and had a high production of grain.

---

<sup>1</sup> Beat the straw or husk of grain with a flail. <sup>2</sup> Act of watering land by causing stream to flow over it.



So far as the writer has been able to learn, very little increased production has been accomplished through suggested improvement of cultural methods as now practiced by the farmers in crop production. This is interesting in view of the commonly accepted idea that Chinese methods of growing crops are not "scientific" and could be greatly improved by adopting western practices of soil and crop management.

Increased agricultural production in China will come most easily and quickly through increasing yield by scientific plant selection; the elimination of losses due to external factors such as floods, droughts, insects, and diseases; and to a limited extent by improving cultural practices especially along the lines of soil fertility.

A flourishing agriculture will mean a flourishing commerce. — *The China Press*.

#### QUESTIONS

1. Where was the foreign cotton seed first introduced and how did it spread?
2. How did the Shensi seed fall into disrepute?
3. Give the history of the foreign peanut.
4. Where is the original home of foreign tobacco? For what purposes is this tobacco now used in China?
5. Where are the principal places in China where silk is produced?
6. What makes it difficult to bring about a rapid improvement in silk production in China?
7. What are the projects undertaken by the University of Nanking with regard to improvement in wheat?
8. How can we in general effect increased agricultural production in China?

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Page

- 210 a. *At a premium:* at a rate far and above the ordinary price.  
 212 b. *To bring about:* to effect, to cause.  
 „ c. *Net gain:* gain made after deducting incidental expenses.

## LESSON XXIV

## THE OUTLOOK FOR HORTICULTURE IN CHINA

Y. B. LI

Thousands of years of experience in farming, a most wonderfully favorable soil and climate, and an abundance of labor make China one of the most promising agricultural countries of the world. In nearly all parts of the country, the tilling of the soil is one of the chief occupations. By no means the least of China's great agricultural interests is her horticulture.<sup>1</sup> Almost every kind of fruit, flower, or garden crop known to men can be grown in China. Besides those common to the more temperate climates, the subtropical, and many of the tropical species, China has many valuable horticultural products which are found in no other land.

But before we enter upon<sup>a</sup> a discussion of China's future in the field of horticulture, let us ask, what is horticulture, and what does it include?

Horticulture, of all lines of agricultural work, is one of the broadest in scope, and one of the first in importance. It not only includes in its field all kinds of fruits and nuts used for food, together with the vegetables, garden and truck crops, but it also concerns

---

<sup>1</sup> The cultivation of a garden or orchard.



itself<sup>b</sup> with the permanent preservation and improvement of the natural beauty of a region, so as to make it pleasant and attractive to mankind. This work is known as landscape gardening and floriculture.<sup>1</sup> Horticulture also includes other important industries, such as the greenhouse<sup>2</sup> and nursery business.

Horticulture is also one of the most scientific of all the agricultural industries. For example, let us look at the many scientific methods of propagating<sup>3</sup> plants. Plants are propagated from seed, by offsets,<sup>4</sup> by tubers,<sup>5</sup> by division, by separation, by suckers,<sup>6</sup> runners, proliferous<sup>7</sup> buds, layers, circumposition,<sup>8</sup> by the various methods of grafting<sup>9</sup> and budding, inarching,<sup>10</sup> and by cuttings from the leaf, branch, root, or stem. And then we remember that propagation covers only a very small part of the work of the horticulturist.

The horticulturist must give his attention to such varied matters as the care of plants—spraying, pruning, training, planting, cultivation, etc.; to the formation of flowers—forcing, retardation,<sup>11</sup> double flowers, etc.; to the formation of seed—fertilization,<sup>12</sup> artificial fertilization, pollination,<sup>13</sup> cross-fertilization,<sup>14</sup> hybridization.<sup>15</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The art of cultivating flowers. <sup>2</sup> A house where tender plants are cultivated. <sup>3</sup> Generating, producing. <sup>4</sup> A short prostrate shoot, which takes root. <sup>5</sup> A fleshy rounded stem or root, (as the potato). <sup>6</sup> A shoot from the root or lower part of the stem of a plant. <sup>7</sup> Reproducing by the growth of a plant directly from the older one. <sup>8</sup> Pot-layering, a form of propagation by which a branch that cannot be laid on the ground is rooted in a box or pot of moist earth or moss which is fastened to it. <sup>9</sup> Act of implanting a branch or a tissue on another. <sup>10</sup> A method of grafting by bringing scion and stock into contact while both are growing on their own roots. <sup>11</sup> Act of delaying. <sup>12</sup> Act of making fertile or fruitful. <sup>13</sup> Fertilisation by means of pollen. <sup>14</sup> Fertilisation between plants of different species. <sup>15</sup> Act of producing offspring by the union of two distinct species.



reversion,<sup>1</sup> germination,<sup>2</sup> selection, etc.; and to the care of crops—harvesting, storing, packing, marketing, and shipping.

The application of rational and scientific methods to horticultural work opens up<sup>c</sup> unlimited possibilities and opportunities. By means of scientific breeding of the apple, it is believed that the number of valuable varieties may be greatly increased. This work is now being carried forward at various agricultural experiment stations. The perfection of cold storage methods<sup>†</sup> has made it possible to keep fruit fresh, not merely for a few days, or for a month or two at best, but for a year or even more. By means of refrigeration<sup>3</sup> of cars and on steamships, it has been made possible to market the fruit of one district to all parts of the world. Due to experimental work, the Bartlett and other early pears are now exported from the United States annually to the value of more than a million dollars, while but a few years ago the fruit was available<sup>d</sup> only for home consumption.

One feature of horticultural crops that is of great advantage to the grower is that they may be placed on the market in so many different forms. Fruit in the fresh state is most desirable, and facilities for broadening our market for fresh fruits have improved greatly with the perfection of modern methods of packing and cold storage. The advent of the refrigerator and the opening of the Panama canal<sup>†</sup> have made it possible for us to market Chinese fruits in all parts of the world in the

---

<sup>1</sup> A return to some ancestral type.    <sup>2</sup> Act of sprouting or budding.

<sup>3</sup> Act or process of cooling.



best condition, and with a minimum<sup>1</sup> of loss and expense in transportation. Then, if we cannot market all of our products fresh, there is still a good market for them canned or dried; or they can be made into such products as jellies, preserves, juices, etc. Even the dried stones of some fruits have been used as nuts, and they are said to be of excellent quality. Thus we see that nothing need be wasted—every bit of our product can be utilized.

The canning industry, which goes hand in hand with horticultural production, is very rapidly gaining in importance. Where in 1900 California produced two and three-fourths million cases of canned fruit, and eight hundred thousand cases of canned vegetables, in 1912 they canned nearly five million cases of fruit and over two and three-fourths million cases of vegetable—that is to say, California's† output of canned goods more than doubled in two years. The demand for this product is almost unlimited. When the city of New York† alone uses annually \$150,000,055 worth of canned fruit, the amount used in the entire United States must be something enormous.

I regret very much that we do not have statistics<sup>2</sup> showing the production and value of farm products of our own country. However, we can use the agricultural statistics of this country [U. S. A.] to bring out<sup>e</sup> the points we wish to show. The United States Department of Agriculture's statistics of 1909 and subsequent years indicate an annual value of farm products of more than

---

<sup>1</sup> The least quantity possible in a given case.    <sup>2</sup> Classified facts respecting the condition of people, etc., in a state.



five billion dollars. Of this amount, over two hundred and twenty-two million dollars is from fruits and nuts; truck<sup>1</sup> crops amount to nearly twice as much, over four hundred and eighteen million dollars. The state of Massachusetts† alone produces sixty-five million dollars worth of garden products. As to floriculture, the 1909 report gives the value of flowers and plants as thirty-four million dollars. The value of nursery products is given as twenty-one million dollars making the total value of horticultural products about seven hundred million dollars.

Let us now turn from these figures and look at our own country. There we have a far greater abundance, and many more varieties of fruits, flowers, and garden crops than we find here. On account of our many festivals and our custom of giving fruit and flowers as presents to each other, we certainly use two or three times as much of these products as the people of this country [U. S. A.]. The people of this country like flowers as well as we do, but the climatic conditions make the price so high that they can use them only on special occasions. In our country, on the other hand, the climate is so favorable that we find many flowers on the market every day, so that every family can keep their vases filled with flowers. The people of our country also use far more vegetables on the table than do the Americans. We have more dishes at every meal, and about half of them are made from garden crops. In estimating the cost of food in China, let us consider

---

<sup>1</sup> Barter, goods for small trade; (in U. S. A.) garden produce, etc.



only the most common people. Estimating that the cost of vegetables used for food averages five cents per day for each person, we find that China consumes<sup>1</sup> annually \$7,842,500,000 worth of garden products alone.

Besides the horticultural crops produced and consumed<sup>1</sup> at home, there is an important import and export trade. The total value of fruits imported into the United States in 1912 was \$44,000,000 and the exports for that year amounted to \$30,000,000. Besides fresh fruits, the United States exports annually about \$5,000,000 worth of canned fruits and about \$1,500,000 worth of canned vegetables.

Except for tropical fruits, the apple is probably the only fruit imported into China in the fresh state. The ports of Hongkong, Shanghai, and Tientsin import annually \$70,600 worth of apples. I could get no data<sup>2</sup> on dried and canned fruits, but the importations probably amount to several times that amount. China's importations of horticultural products are quite small, but I believe that she exports an enormous quantity of them. For example, the exports of potatoes alone from Foochow to Hongkong and Singapore amounts to more than a million dollars annually. Of fruits, such as the famous Foochow orange, olive, Kwang orange, grapes of Tiensang, loquat of Lingnan, Shantung pear, pears, *lichee*, *lung-yen*, peaches, plums, apricots, etc., thousands and thousands of barrels and cases are exported every year.

---

<sup>1</sup> Eaten.    <sup>2</sup> Facts given as basis of an argument.

In order to get some idea of the wonderful possibilities of the horticultural industry in China, let us consider one or two special crops.

The English walnut, which in China we call *hu-t'ao*, offers a marvelous field for development. The United States imports annually from twelve to thirteen million dollars worth of nuts, besides what she produces herself. "This amount," says *Better Fruit*, "is more than the value of all the apples exported in any one year from both Canada and the United States. A mature<sup>1</sup> English walnut orchard pays larger profits per acre, with less work and expense, than any crop of which we know."

The olive tree, which furnishes one of our chief horticultural products for export, gives another notable example of what may be done. I have an intimate friend who has twelve olive trees. He told me that those twelve trees brought him an average annual income of \$900. Once when I was in his olive orchard on the bank of the Min River of Fukien, he pointed down the river to some vigorous, densely-leaved trees on the opposite bank and said: "Every one of those trees bears from \$120 to \$150 worth of olives a year." With the different varieties of olives, the returns vary from \$5 to \$150 per tree.

Just think of it, my dear countrymen! Supposing I plant only twenty olive trees on an acre, and place the average return at \$50 per tree; that means I get \$1,000 per acre every year. And the olive is only one

---

<sup>1</sup> Full-grown, adult.



crop; equally great opportunities can be found in the cultivation of other fruit, such as orange, jujube, *lichee*, grape, pear, peach, plum, apple, *lung-yen*, etc.

The various garden and truck crops present another wonderful field for the horticulturist. Manchuria annually exports millions of dollars worth of beans in the form of bean cake, bean oil, and different kinds of garden beans prepared for food. Large quantities of the popular Shantung cabbage are exported for use throughout the country. The manufacture of vermicelli<sup>1</sup> is a notable industry in Shantung, the yearly trade representing more than Tls. 2,000,000 or about \$2,800,000 in the Hwan-hsien district alone. The best vermicelli is made from green beans. The trade in vermicelli is growing owing to the rapidly increasing demand for it both for home consumption and for foreign markets.

Another great field is open in the introduction and development of fruits which are not at present widely grown in China. For example, it has already been proven that in some sections<sup>2</sup> of China the soil and climate are adapted<sup>3</sup> to apple growing. There is no reason in the world why China should not produce an abundance of apples for her own use, and supply apples to the rest of the Orient as well. Why should we pay from \$5 to \$8 a box for inferior apples, when we could produce the very best at less than one-tenth of that price?

---

<sup>1</sup> Wheat flour made into slender wormlike form; noodles. <sup>2</sup> Divisions, parts. <sup>3</sup> Suited, fit.



The most perfect utilization of waste ground is another point in favor of horticulture for China which we must not overlook.<sup>1</sup> Fruit and nut trees, as well as truck crops, can be grown on a great variety of soils, from the alluvial<sup>1</sup> loam<sup>2</sup> along the streams to the more barren soil of the foothills. Trees can be planted in out-of-the-way<sup>3</sup> places, such as along roadsides, in fence corners, around buildings, and even on hillsides too steep for any other crops. The *tung*<sup>3</sup> tree is an example of a valuable tree that can be grown on soil too poor for most other crops. The oil of the *tung* tree is used extensively in Europe and America for machine oil, for preserving wood, as a lacquer,<sup>4</sup> and for many purposes. Four million dollars worth of this oil is exported annually from Szechwan alone.

When I say that horticulture is one of our leading and most profitable industries, I am not presenting anything new, for it is as old as history. We read in the *Chow Le* that as early as the Chow dynasty, when officials were appointed to look after the different interests of the country, there was an official in charge of horticulture. Our great historian Ti-Sze Kung said, "With a thousand jujube trees of An-ek, a man would be an equal of the lord of a million households, and with a thousand pear trees in Hwai-Pek and Honan, or with a thousand chestnut trees in Yeng Tseng, he would be equal to the lord of a thousand households."

*The Chinese Students' Monthly.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Belonging to alluvium, or land deposited by running water.

<sup>2</sup> A mixture of clay, sand, and other materials; loose, soft earth.

<sup>3</sup> A tree producing oil suitable for varnish. <sup>4</sup> A varnish.



## QUESTIONS

1. What are the factors that make China especially favorable as an agricultural country?
2. What industries are included in the science of horticulture?
3. Explain why horticulture is considered to be one of the most scientific of all agricultural industries.
4. What opportunities are open to scientific horticulture?
5. Name some of the most important and profitable features of the horticultural industry, and the factors which make such possible nowadays.
6. Trace the progress made by the canning industry in the U.S.A.
7. What do the statistics of the U.S.A. show with regard to value of farm products in that country?
8. How does the condition in China compare with that of the U.S.A. with respect to the horticultural industry?
9. What was the total value of import and export of our agricultural products to the U.S.A. in 1912?
10. What kinds of horticultural products are exported from China?
11. Show by illustration of a few cases the great possibilities for development of our export industry in China.
12. What are the most important of our garden and truck crops?
13. Why should China develop her fruit-growing industry?
14. What kinds of trees should be recommended for lands not suitable to fruit growing, as an additional source of revenue to us?

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Page

- |     |    |  |
|-----|----|--|
| 215 | a. | <i>Enter upon:</i> to begin, to take up.                           |
| 216 | b. | <i>To concern oneself:</i> to involve oneself.                     |
| 217 | c. | <i>To open up:</i> to afford, to give.                             |
| „   | d. | <i>To be available:</i> to be accessible, to be at one's disposal. |
| 218 | e. | <i>To bring out:</i> to produce.                                   |
| 223 | f. | <i>To overlook:</i> to disregard, to neglect.                      |
| „   | g. | <i>Out-of-the-way:</i> irregular; out of the ordinary.             |

## LESSON XXV

THE COUNTRY ROAD IN THE PROGRESS  
OF A NATION

Q. L. YOUNG

Roads were built in ancient times primarily for military purposes. The Babylonians,<sup>†</sup> the Greeks, the Carthaginians,<sup>†</sup> the Chinese, and the Romans all built extensive<sup>1</sup> roads. A few of the Roman roads are to-day still maintained in good condition in Europe and England, and many roads in Asia still mark to-day the routes of China's trade and conquest. Long years of peace have caused most of these extensive roads to disappear. The modern age of commerce and communication<sup>2</sup> has again required the extensive system of roads to connect cities and towns, and to traverse<sup>3</sup> provinces and countries. It must be admitted<sup>4</sup> that in China we have too long neglected this matter of road construction to see its present necessity and its far-reaching benefits. Our farmers and the rural<sup>5</sup> population have perhaps come to look upon<sup>a</sup> the narrow trodden trails as a natural, necessary, and the only form of highway, one that is impossible to remedy and therefore must be accepted. In the eyes of one<sup>b</sup> who has seen more of this modern world, the steam roads, the electric lines, the steamboats, and a hundred and one other means of transportation have belittled this comparatively humble form of public utility—the public highway—so much so, that the common mortal<sup>c</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Stretching out.    <sup>2</sup> Intercourse, interchange of thought.    <sup>3</sup> Cross.  
<sup>4</sup> Acknowledged.    <sup>5</sup> Pertaining to the country or farm.



fails to see the possibilities and the good results that may be invariably expected by improving the mother earth upon which we tread.

It should not be supposed that rural engineering is antiquated,<sup>1</sup> and road building an ancient art. In fact, highway engineering to-day is a highly developed science and art. The United States has to-day in round numbers two million miles of highways, mostly of modern construction, of which the latest is the Lincoln Highway. Neither should it be supposed that with the advent of railroad transportation<sup>2</sup> and steamboat navigation the highway has become obsolete,<sup>3</sup> whereas in reality, both rail and water transportations are vitally<sup>4</sup> related to the country road in the matter of traffic.<sup>5</sup> Besides, the motor-driven vehicle<sup>6</sup> is bound to come into prominence. We cannot emphasize<sup>7</sup> the construction of the railroad without also feeling the necessity of the country road, for the prosperity of the railroad is dependent upon that of the country contiguous<sup>8</sup> to the line of the railroad. The importance of the country road to the well-being of the railroad, as the chief agent to bring to the line its tributary population, is obvious when we recall the observed law of transportation, that traffic on a railroad increases directly as the square of its tributary<sup>9</sup> population.

China is very largely a rural country. Agriculture stands out as the preëminent<sup>10</sup> profession.<sup>11</sup> So when we

---

<sup>1</sup> Obsolete, out of date. <sup>2</sup> Act of carrying from one place to another. <sup>3</sup> Out of date. <sup>4</sup> Fundamentally affecting the value. <sup>5</sup> Trade. <sup>6</sup> Instrument of conveyance; carriage. <sup>7</sup> Stress. <sup>8</sup> Touching, adjacent, near. <sup>9</sup> Contributory. <sup>10</sup> Most prominent. <sup>11</sup> Calling, vocation.



attempt a reform or plan a public utility that will profit the farmer, we are trying to benefit the largest mass of the country. Whereas the construction of a country-wide system of roads is such a utility, its building necessarily should deserve our attention more than any other construction work, as a proposition<sup>1</sup> "that is to bring the greatest good to the greatest number."

Products from the farm, the forest, and the mine have to be hauled<sup>2</sup> over the country roads to the shipping points. To transport the product there is as much a factor in distribution as to bring the product to the consumer.<sup>3</sup> The U. S. Department of Agriculture has shown that on the average<sup>4</sup> the producer's price is about forty-seven per cent of the ultimate price paid by the consumer. We wish to see that the farmers should have access to<sup>5</sup> the products from the city, inasmuch as we ourselves desire a cheaper and more abundant supply of rural products from the farmer. What, then, is more logical than to open up our rural districts with good roads, and educate our farmers to better methods of locomotion?<sup>6</sup>

Statistics<sup>7</sup> are not available to show what our farmers are actually paying in the crude<sup>8</sup> way of hauling<sup>9</sup> their goods on the crude, primitive roads, and how much improved methods and improved roads would cut down the cost of delivery, by increasing the hauling power, the capacity, and the efficiency of the teams. In the

---

<sup>1</sup> Proposal. <sup>2</sup> Transported by drawing as with horses. <sup>3</sup> One who uses up. <sup>4</sup> Act of moving from place to place. <sup>5</sup> Classified facts in tabular form. <sup>6</sup> Unrefined, unimproved, (here) primitive. <sup>7</sup> Carrying in a wagon.



United States the Office of Public Roads estimated the item of cost of hauling the products of the country over the country roads at five hundred million dollars annually, and stated that the improvement of the road conditions to the modern standard would reduce the cost fifty per cent. If we want to see a richer and happier people, we must see to it<sup>1</sup> that our farmers are saved all unnecessary toil and loss of time, that they be enabled to bring larger loads to the market and to do so more frequently without seasonal restrictions.<sup>1</sup> We must help to increase their efficiency in production by increasing the efficiency in transportation. With a more efficient and more mobile<sup>2</sup> rural population comes internal<sup>3</sup> development of the country.

It is poor economic practice to have each farmer or small rural community<sup>4</sup> a self-dependent and self-sustaining unit. It should not be wondered at that our farmers cannot afford spare time for educational, religious, or social functions. The trodden path, the sticky wagon road in impassable condition for most of the year, and the sluggish wheelbarrow to match, are directly responsible for the condition of affairs in the country—ignorance and illiteracy.<sup>5</sup> Monotony<sup>6</sup> and the utter loneliness of the lives of an isolated people are the principal causes of mental backwardness.

In small rural communities where schools may be found, the character of rural communication does not permit the farmers' children of the surrounding villages

---

<sup>1</sup> Limitation. <sup>2</sup> Capable of moving. <sup>3</sup> Domestic. <sup>4</sup> The public, society at large. <sup>5</sup> Inability to read and write. <sup>6</sup> Want of variety; sameness.



to attend school. Hampered<sup>1</sup> by muddy roads, village schools, like dim lights, can serve only small areas. In order that larger rural schools may be established and utilized to their maximum<sup>2</sup> capacity, it is necessary to have good country roads. The school would then become in its locality<sup>3</sup> a social, intellectual, and religious center of the community. Roads, would render possible larger social life among the farmers. They would relieve<sup>4</sup> the loneliness of the rural districts, and give their inhabitants greater opportunity for socialization<sup>5</sup> and consolidation<sup>6</sup> with the surrounding rural population. Modern rural mail service is only possible with good country roads. Newspapers, magazines, and information from the outside world bring enlightenment.<sup>7</sup>

Incidentally, much as the military roads have proved to be of commercial significance in time of peace, the interurban<sup>8</sup> roads should be of military importance in time of war, because the location of the military road follows the same line as the highway of trade, that is, along the line of the least resistance<sup>9</sup> to traffic, and passing through industrial and agricultural centers. Although the railways nowadays have to be depended upon to move most of the troops and all of the equipment<sup>9</sup> and supplies in a large country, the highway is the indispensable<sup>10</sup> auxiliary.<sup>11</sup> It is an absolutely essential factor in the movement of troops in the local theaters of war. The European war amply

---

<sup>1</sup> Impeded, encumbered. <sup>2</sup> Greatest quantity or value attainable.  
<sup>3</sup> Place. <sup>4</sup> Ease. <sup>5</sup> Act of bringing and uniting together in society.  
<sup>6</sup> Act of uniting. <sup>7</sup> State of being instructed. <sup>8</sup> Between cities.  
<sup>9</sup> Outfit. <sup>10</sup> Necessary. <sup>11</sup> Helper.



demonstrated<sup>1</sup> its value in the conduct of military operations in which motor-driven vehicles perform a function<sup>2</sup> in the rapid movement of men and supplies. To train men to construct highways in time of peace should be one of the aspects of "preparedness."

Many other benefits may be looked for,<sup>4</sup> following the construction of good country roads. They would relieve the congestion<sup>3</sup> in the cities and lead to suburban<sup>4</sup> growth. They would tend to draw the city population to the more healthful open neighborhood. It is also a matter of common knowledge that as extensive roads are built in any community, land values steadily and rapidly advance. What does this signify? The increase in land value signifies a measure, in figures, of increased advantages from improved conditions brought about by the introduction of the highway.

Whether China may profit educationally, socially, and economically by the introduction of a system of good country roads of modern construction, running through the length and breadth of the country, depends upon how much and how soon we realize and appreciate their value. Just how much the people of America have come to view the need of extensive road construction is well seen in the country-wide movement for highways, warmly supported by all the states and people. Perhaps nothing is more significant<sup>5</sup> than the proclamation issued by the governor of Pennsylvania, who called on every road supervisor in his employ, every able-bodied citizen in the state, to give one entire day, May 26, 1915 to

---

<sup>1</sup> Showed. <sup>2</sup> Special activity, duty. <sup>3</sup> Overfulness. <sup>4</sup> Pertaining to regions near the city. <sup>5</sup> Suggestive, expressive.



the improvement of highways in the state. As a result, more than eighty-two thousand men, including the governor, prominent<sup>1</sup> business men, and lawyers, turned out to work, organized among themselves about fifteen thousand teams, and worked over more than six thousand miles of road on that day. Similarly on Utah's "Good Roads Day," April twenty-eighth of the same year, the Salt Lake financiers,<sup>2</sup> managers, doctors, and officials of both church and state, in overalls,<sup>3</sup> pushed the Lincoln Highway through their city. We observe in the above cases the general spirit.

To all who have China's educational, religious, social, and industrial needs at heart,<sup>4</sup> this comparatively simple matter of road construction should claim first consideration, even if for no other reason than for the betterment of the class of people which forms the bulk of China's mass. We should realize that civilization follows the lines of communication, and that the field of transportation touches problems not only of navigation, not only of the steam road, but also of what is of great importance, the common country road. Whatever be our stations in life, we can all take active interest in this particular need of our country, and there is hardly the least doubt but that our influence for the building of some system of country highways will be instrumental<sup>k4</sup> in the development of our country.

—*The Chinese Students' Monthly.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Conspicuous, distinguished above others. <sup>2</sup> Those acquainted with money matters. <sup>3</sup> Loose trousers worn over others to protect the latter. <sup>4</sup> Serving as a means.



## QUESTIONS

1. For what purposes were roads primarily built, and who were the road builders among the ancient nations?
2. For what purpose are roads built nowadays?
3. What is the extent of highways in the United States?
4. With the introduction of railroads and steamers are roads still necessary? Give reasons.
5. Show that country roads are necessary to the well-being of railroads.
6. Why is the construction of country-wide road systems so important to China?
7. According to the report of the U. S. Department of Agriculture, what is the average producer's price compared with the ultimate price paid by the consumer?
8. What is the estimated cost of hauling the products of the country over the country roads in the United States? And what would be the result if the condition of the roads were improved?
9. How can we make our people richer and happier?

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- |     |    |  |
|-----|----|--|
| 225 | a. | <i>To look upon:</i> to regard, to consider.                                   |
| ,,  | b. | <i>In the eyes of one:</i> according to the views or idea of one.              |
| ,,  | c. | <i>The common mortal:</i> the ordinary person.                                 |
| 226 | d. | <i>To be antiquated:</i> to be out of date; not to be in vogue.                |
| 227 | e. | <i>On the average:</i> taken as a whole.                                       |
| ,,  | f. | <i>To have access to:</i> to be able to reach; to be entitled to enjoy or use. |
| 228 | g. | <i>To see to it:</i> to take care.   |
| 229 | h. | <i>The line of least resistance:</i> the easiest way.                          |
| 230 | i. | <i>To look for:</i> to expect.   |
| 231 | j. | <i>To have . . . at heart:</i> to be interested in . . .                       |
| ,,  | k. | <i>To be instrumental:</i> to be the means of.                                 |

## LESSON XXVI

## RAILWAYS—CHINA'S GREATEST NEED

JULEAN ARNOLD, LL.D.

*American Commercial Attaché, Shanghai*

In reply to the query, "What is China's greatest need to-day?" an educator would undoubtedly advocate<sup>1</sup> modern schools; the missionary, Christianity; the diplomat,<sup>2</sup> a strong, well-administered<sup>3</sup> central government; the banker, a uniform system of currency,<sup>4</sup> with means for a readjustment of government finances; the business man, the disbandment<sup>5</sup> of China's huge military organizations; and the sociologist, scientific birth control.<sup>6</sup>

There is probably no one agency which can do more to assist in furthering all of these needs than modern economic communications, particularly railways. We have but to look at a map of China to appreciate this situation. Six-sevenths of China's population are congested into one-third of the area of this vast country, greater in size than the United States or Europe, and possessed of a population equal to that of one-third of the globe. Radical<sup>6</sup> dialectic<sup>7</sup> differences among the people in neighboring regions have been developed and perpetuated<sup>8</sup> through poor means of communication. The question of popular education is rendered extremely difficult because of these dialectic differences and of

---

<sup>1</sup> Plead in favor of; support by argument. <sup>2</sup> Person whose duty it is to conduct negotiations between states. <sup>3</sup> Managed or conducted. <sup>4</sup> Circulation of money. <sup>5</sup> Act of dismissing from military service. <sup>6</sup> Pertaining to the root; fundamental. <sup>7</sup> Pertaining to a dialect. <sup>8</sup> Caused to continue.



provincialism, although three-fifths of the people of the country speak what may be regarded as a common language, with, however, varying localisms. The dominant<sup>1</sup> position of the family and clan in the social order of China, which to-day stands in the way of national cohesion,<sup>2</sup> has been accentuated<sup>3</sup> and perpetuated through bad means of communication. The development of popular education in China, so essential to the success of a republican form of government, depends in a large measure upon greatly improved internal means of communication.

Our four or five thousand Christian missionaries in China find that one of the essentials to the success of their work is popular education. Through modern schools and similar institutions they are striving to assist in overcoming<sup>4</sup> the illiteracy<sup>5</sup> of the masses. The success of their efforts depends also in a large measure upon the community of interests<sup>6</sup> among all their organizations. They need to get together and formulate<sup>6</sup> plans and policies<sup>7</sup> which will render their work effective in the light of the potentialities<sup>8</sup> which exist for helping China. Here again lack of internal communications adds enormously to the difficulties which confront them.

China's lack of political unity may probably be attributed<sup>9</sup> in a larger measure to inadequate<sup>10</sup> internal communications than to any other single factor. Canton and South China can only be reached by sea

---

<sup>1</sup> Ruling, controlling. <sup>2</sup> Act of cohering or uniting together.  
<sup>3</sup> Emphasized. <sup>4</sup> Getting the better of. <sup>5</sup> Inability to read and write.  
<sup>6</sup> State definitely, reduce to form. <sup>7</sup> Schemes of management.  
<sup>8</sup> Possibilities. <sup>9</sup> Referred, ascribed. <sup>10</sup> Insufficient, unequal to the purpose.



from Central China or by tedious overland marches. Because of lack of rail communications between that section and the rest of the country, one feels when one is in Canton that he is entirely out of touch with the events of importance which transpire<sup>1</sup> in other sections of China. Furthermore, the people have not learned or been trained to be interested in developments in other sections of the country. With rail communications between South, Central, and North China, intellectual development will follow very quickly. This same condition obtains<sup>2</sup> in certain other sections of the country. Thus, until we have an artery<sup>3</sup> of railways through which the life blood of the nation may circulate freely, we shall find that certain sections of the body politic<sup>c</sup> of the nation will continue numb<sup>4</sup> and inarticulate,<sup>5</sup> so far as responding to the larger national impulses<sup>6</sup> is concerned.

The fact that China has seventy-one different tael units of currency, not to mention the different silver and copper coins in circulation<sup>7</sup> throughout the country, or the multiplicity of varying weights and measures, indicates<sup>8</sup> more clearly than almost anything else the condition of internal stagnation<sup>9</sup> and lack of adequate means of communication. With the free intercourse<sup>10</sup> which comes through a well-ordered system of communications, uniform currency becomes a necessity. I do not believe the Chinese will be convinced of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Happen. <sup>2</sup> Exists. <sup>3</sup> A continuous channel of communication (as of railway). <sup>4</sup> Insensible; without power of motion or sensation. <sup>5</sup> Not having power of clear expression. <sup>6</sup> Feeling. <sup>7</sup> Act of moving from place to place. <sup>8</sup> Show. <sup>9</sup> State of immobility. <sup>10</sup> Communication, commerce.



advantages of a thorough reform of the country's present heterogeneous<sup>1</sup> currency until better means of internal communications impress upon them the tremendous economic losses they are suffering through their antiquated<sup>2</sup> currency. ☞

It has often been said that the million and a half men who constitute the numerous military organizations which have so disturbed the peace and good order of the country and deterred<sup>3</sup> in such a large way industrial, commercial, and economic development which would otherwise be made possible, are soldiers through necessity rather than choice. The great masses in the country in China appear to be about one jump from starvation. One crop failure in a district brings about enormous suffering. Two crop failures result in famine and starvation; and three successive crop failures in the same district produce havoc<sup>4</sup> and devastation.<sup>5</sup> Human beings in China as well as elsewhere seem to move along the line of least resistance.<sup>d</sup> Soldiery and brigandage<sup>6</sup> offer to many opportunities for eking out an existence<sup>e</sup> apparently not possible otherwise. China is not land-poor. There are areas in this country greater than those of a half dozen of the largest states in the American Union which have a smaller population per square mile than have any states in the American Union. These regions are economically inaccessible<sup>7</sup> due to lack of communications. Once they are provided with railways, vast territories of fertile land will be

---

<sup>1</sup> Dissimilar.    <sup>2</sup> Obsolete, out of date.    <sup>3</sup> Prevented by fear.  
<sup>4</sup> Waste, general destruction.    <sup>5</sup> General waste or ruin.    <sup>6</sup> Highway robbery.    <sup>7</sup> Not approachable.



opened to settlement and exploitation,<sup>1</sup> thereby relieving the congestion in other sections. Thus, probably no other agencies could do more to overcome the menace<sup>2</sup> of the soldier than railways, not only in opening up new territories for development, but in making it possible to maintain peace and order in those regions now well settled but difficult to command because of lack of roads or other effective means of approach.

To the sociologist the deplorable conditions among the masses in China are due to pushing the population beyond the means of subsistence.<sup>3</sup> It is true that the family system and ancestor worship in China have encouraged overpopulation. At the same time the perpetuation of the nation through all these centuries has probably been due in a larger measure to these agencies than to any others. We are appalled<sup>4</sup> when we learn that in the Yangtze delta, a region comprising<sup>5</sup> an area no greater than that of the State of Illinois,† there is an estimated population of forty million people or about eight hundred to the square mile. We have only to contrast Mongolia in the northwest, which has an area of 1,300,000 square miles, almost the equivalent<sup>6</sup> of the entire section of the United States west of the Rockies.† Here we find a population of probably less than one to the square mile, and yet this region abounds in<sup>f</sup> fertile valleys and plains and might well support a population of tens of millions. Railways have demonstrated the possibilities of opening new territory for

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of utilizing, or getting the value out of. <sup>2</sup> Threat. <sup>3</sup> Livelihood. <sup>4</sup> Dismayed, frightened. <sup>5</sup> Containing, including. <sup>6</sup> Equal in worth or value.



settlement in the case of Manchuria, where there are upwards of twenty millions of people compared with a few millions twenty years ago. Manchuria has become one of the richest sections of the country. With more railways in that region it will unfold still greater potentialities in development and colonization. Thus while there are hundreds of thousands of square miles of fertile lands in China unsettled and undeveloped, it is more a question of the distribution of the population than otherwise.

In so-called West China, in a territory embracing the provinces of Kansu, Shensi, Shansi, and Szechuan, there is an estimated population of one hundred millions, which is practically that of the United States. Except for a few miles of railway in Shansi, this entire region is without the "iron road." The people in these regions are for the most part still working on price levels which obtained a hundred years ago. Throughout large sections of this territory brass cash is still the coin of the realm. It requires sixteen pounds of these brass cash to equal one dollar gold. Wheat is produced in abundance in three of these provinces and at prices one-third of those obtaining five hundred miles away where there is economic transportation.<sup>1</sup> In fact flour millers in Hankow have been importing wheat from Seattle† and Portland,† shipping it across the Pacific and delivering it at Hankow cheaper than they could secure it from West China where it can be purchased in the fields at one-quarter the prices obtaining in America.

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of carrying across; conveyance.



The most expensive luxury the people of West China enjoy is transportation, for in most of this region they are away from navigable streams and are obliged to depend upon pack animals, carts, and human beings as beasts of burden. Tens of thousands of carrying coolies may be seen on the roads and paths of these regions carrying loads hundreds of miles. One coolie will contract to carry one hundred fifty pounds fifteen miles a day for the equivalent of eleven cents gold. Figuring the average cost of railway transportation in the United States at one cent gold per ton mile, coolie transportation in West China is ten times as high. If we had to take the load which our railways in the United States carry in one year and put it on the backs of human beings, as is done in West China, it would require eight hundred million men, each carrying a load of one hundred fifty pounds an average of fifteen miles a day for 365 days out of the year. This indicates in some measure at least, the amount of transportation which the hundreds of millions of West China are now doing, and will also help to impress upon people in the United States the crying need<sup>s</sup> of railways in China, a country which, although larger in area than the United States and possessed of four times the population, has less than seven thousand miles of railways compared with two hundred and sixty five thousand miles in operation in the United States. Thus it would seem that China's most pressing need to-day is modern internal communications, and more particularly railways.

The building of railways in China will be to a large measure under conditions the reverse of those which



obtained in the United States, as railways in many sections of China will follow rather than precede the populations. Thus, while under construction they can be made to pay as they proceed. If China's railways are managed well and the profits not diverted<sup>1</sup> to other purposes than maintenance, betterment, and extensions, China should be able to build the needed railways without the assistance of foreign capital. Railways in China are now operated<sup>2</sup> upon an average cost of sixty-five per cent of operating revenues, and can be operated on less than fifty per cent as some lines have been. A railway in China is a gold mine if properly operated. Hence no country offers more alluring<sup>3</sup> conditions for the financial success of railway construction and operation than does China, which, considering its population and area, is the most poorly equipped<sup>4</sup> from a railway standpoint of any nation on the face of the earth.—*The Baldwin Magazine*.

### QUESTIONS

1. What is the principal cause of dialectic differences among our people?
2. Can popular education be easily developed under the present condition?
3. What are some of the effective means of overcoming illiterary in the country?
4. Prove that China's lack of political unity is caused by lack of communication.
5. What other proof do you have that China is not a united country?

---

<sup>1</sup> Turned aside.    <sup>2</sup> Worked, conducted.    <sup>3</sup> Tempting, attractive.  
<sup>4</sup> Furnished with what is necessary to efficient action.

6. Do you consider the present currency system desirable? Why?
7. What is the principal cause of brigandage in the country, and how can we remedy this?
8. What are the other factors that contribute to over-population, besides our family system?
9. What is the population of the Yangtze valley as compared with Mongolia?
10. What lesson can we learn from our experience in Manchuria?
11. Describe the economic condition in West China.
12. Why do the flour merchants in Hankow import wheat from Seattle and Portland, instead of from West China which produces it more cheaply?
13. What makes transportation so expensive in these regions?
14. How do you calculate that coolie transportation is ten times as high as that of railway?
15. What is the extent of railways in China as compared with the U. S. A.?
16. Can China build her own railways without foreign capital? How?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |     |    |  |
|-----|----|--|
| 233 | a. | <i>Birth control</i> : restriction of birth by means of prevention of early marriages, or marriages of those incapacitated either physically, morally, mentally, or on account of youth. |
| 234 | b. | <i>Community of interests</i> : common interests.  |
| 235 | c. | <i>Body politic</i> : the collective body of a nation or state as politically organized.   |
| 236 | d. | <i>The line of least resistance</i> : the easiest course of motion.  |
| ,,  | e. | <i>Eking out an existence</i> : making a livelihood.   |
| 237 | f. | <i>To abound in</i> : to be in plenty.   |
| 239 | g. | <i>Crying need</i> : urgent need.  |



## LESSON XXVII

## CHINA'S SILK TRADE WITH AMERICA

S. L. PAN, PH.D.

Although China is now suffering from keen competition in her silk trade with America, by far the most important position in Chinese-American trade is still held by this single article. In the last few years the total value of imports of Chinese raw silk and manufactured silks into the United States amounted on the average to no less than forty per cent of the total value of all imports from China. The silk industry of China, however, is still on the way<sup>a</sup> to a rapid expansion,<sup>1</sup> and the American demand for Chinese silk is bound to grow correspondingly.<sup>2</sup>

The whole history of China's silk trade with America is in many respects, like that of her tea trade, terminating in complete defeat in her competition with Japan, and in partial defeat in her competition with Europe. Like tea, silk had been a Chinese monopoly<sup>3</sup> for centuries past. Like the tea industry also, sericulture<sup>4</sup> was introduced into foreign countries which, within a comparatively short period, have succeeded in driving China, partly at least, out of the market. As is the case in her tea trade, the far larger portion of raw and manufactured silk imported into the United States now comes from countries other than China. Nevertheless, there is at least one point on which the Chinese

---

<sup>1</sup> Enlargement, increase.    <sup>2</sup> Conformably, in agreement.    <sup>3</sup> Exclusive right of dealing in trade.    <sup>4</sup> Cultivation of silk.

silk trade with America differs from her tea trade, and this difference is a very important one. In the tea industry China has apparently lost her comparative advantage over other countries, because they have introduced machinery into the manufacturing processes of tea. As China is still not in a position to use machinery, or at least will not be in a better position than her competitors to use it in the future, she will, therefore, never be able to recover her lost share even though the tea industry is much improved and tea trade energetically pushed. But this is not the case with silk. As we know, sericulture requires a good deal of labor. Because of the nature of the industry the use of machinery cannot be introduced into the culture of silkworms on any extensive scale. The development of silk culture, therefore, depends as the first requisite<sup>1</sup> of success on a competitive market and upon a huge supply of labor which can be commanded at a rather low price. It goes without saying that in this respect China is in a better position than any other silk-producing country. Although in the past she neglected to make improvements in this industry, and was also slack in pushing her trade in large silk-consuming<sup>2</sup> countries such as the United States, she still retains her comparative advantage in the production of this article. If China continues to pay more attention to silk as she is now doing, the writer believes that it will not be long before she will resume<sup>3</sup> the predominant<sup>4</sup> position that she held in the past in the world silk trade. It is the

---

<sup>1</sup> That which is necessary or required. <sup>2</sup> Using up. <sup>3</sup> Take up again. <sup>4</sup> Superior, controlling.



writer's purpose to show in the following article how China has been defeated in the American silk market and in the world, and what effort she is now making to get back at least some part of her lost share in America.

As the original home of silk, China has been for centuries exporting silk to the Western nations. No doubt in the colonial<sup>1</sup> days some Chinese silks reached America, although the exact date cannot be ascertained from the records of trade existing to-day. In the beginning of the direct trade between China and the United States, the quantity and value of silk imports, unlike tea, were much less clearly stated in the records kept by the early American government and by writers. No mention was made of silk in the cargo brought back by the *Empress of China* in 1884 in the first direct business transaction between the two countries. But in 1886 another American ship, the *Hope*, was said to "have brought back from Canton, besides the fabulous<sup>2</sup> profit to her owners, a China silk gown which so much whetted<sup>3</sup> the appetite<sup>4</sup> of their good wives that further purchases of Chinese silks were thus continued in later voyages." Mr. S. E. Morison in his description of Salem, Massachusetts, at the dawn of her period of commercial prosperity, gives us an abstract<sup>5</sup> of the entries into the port of ships, from May 31 to June 30, 1790, which he "found in the old customs house." Among some twelve ships returning from foreign ports during these twenty-odd days, three were from Canton,

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to a colony. <sup>2</sup> Passing belief, exceedingly great.  
<sup>3</sup> Excited, stimulated. <sup>4</sup> Longing, desire. <sup>5</sup> Summary, brief statement.



all of which, according to the record, carried silks, besides teas, spices, etc. . . .

Judging from records, we are fairly sure that aside from tea, silks were the most important article of trade in those early years, though the silk imports were much smaller in quantity and value than tea. Yet the silk trade became more and more important as time went on, and during several years after 1820 the value of imported Chinese silks ran into several millions of dollars a year, several times amounting to more than two-fifths of the total imports from China.

Although the increase in America's demand for foreign-made silks was fairly rapid during the first seven or eight decades of the nineteenth century, the decline of China's share in this trade was nevertheless quite marked.<sup>1</sup> In 1823, Chinese silk goods constituted<sup>2</sup> 60 per cent of the total silk imports<sup>3</sup> into the United States. During the forty years following, her silk dropped headlong<sup>4</sup> to 17 per cent in 1833, to 4.1 per cent in 1853, and to 0.1 per cent in 1863. Since then and until the outbreak of the European War, it fluctuated<sup>5</sup> around 1 per cent of the total.

The reasons for this decline are not difficult to find. In the first place, Chinese silk goods have never been manufactured for the purpose of exporting and thus have never been made to suit the taste and fancy of Westerners. Americans, therefore, preferred to have their silk goods made in England or France. Secondly,

---

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced, noticeable. <sup>2</sup> Made up. <sup>3</sup> Goods brought from abroad. <sup>4</sup> Hastily. <sup>5</sup> Wavered, went up and down.



America has, in the course of half a century, developed into the largest silk manufacturing country in the whole world and can to-day easily supply her own needs. Thirdly, the protective tariff<sup>b1</sup> as applied to silk goods has been almost prohibitive<sup>2</sup> since the middle of the last century; and Chinese silks, being unable to bear the burden, were the first to be excluded from the market.

Since 1914 the situation in the manufactured silk trade has not greatly altered. The total imports into the United States seem to have increased in value, in recent years, but this increase is entirely due to price inflation,<sup>3</sup> and when price allowance<sup>4</sup> is made, it is evident that trade has practically decreased in quantity. But, owing to the fact that some European countries — France, Germany, England, Italy — were unable to send manufactured silks to the American market, Americans naturally turned to the Orient for a supply which would meet their usual demand for foreign silk goods. China has, therefore, recovered a little of her old share, but it remains in doubt whether she will be able to retain even this humble share when the European silk industry has come back to its normal condition. But as long as the three conditions mentioned above remain unaltered, we can expect no appreciable increase in the trade of manufactured silks between China and the United States.

Along with the decline of Chinese-American trade in manufactured silks, has come the steady expansion in

---

<sup>1</sup> System of duties imposed by the government on goods imported or exported. <sup>2</sup> Excessively dear as to prevent buying. <sup>3</sup> Swelling (of the price). <sup>4</sup> Deduction.



the raw-silk trade. During the first seven decades of the last century, America bought little raw silk from outside, so little that the U. S. Bureau of Statistics did not even take the trouble to record the quantities imported. More than half of these imports came directly from China and the rest from England and France.

Since 1865, however, due to the rapid development of the silk-weaving industry in America, the importation of foreign raw silk has naturally increased by leaps and bounds.<sup>o</sup> In fact, silk culture has been many times attempted in America, but failed because of its high cost of production. Consequently, any development in the American silk industry has resulted in a greater demand for foreign raw silks, and in the two decades 1865-1885, the imports of raw silk increased more than tenfold.

The failure of China to take full advantage of<sup>d</sup> the growing American demand for raw silk is, like her failure in the tea trade, to be explained partly by her own neglect to improve her sericulture to conform to the American standard and to push her silk trade, and partly by the severe competition of Japan.

Although China's silk monopoly was broken down when sericulture was introduced into Europe, she still held control of silk production in the middle of the nineteenth century. No great volume of raw silk was produced in Europe or in Japan, and America was forced to rely upon Shanghai and Canton for a supply of material to feed an increasing number of their weaving factories. The Chinese silk producers being nearly all peasant-farmers, ignorant of the existence of potential competitors, and living in a fools' paradise,<sup>o</sup> thought



that they held the only key to<sup>1</sup> the silk market, and were growing more and more careless in rearing the worm and reeling<sup>1</sup> the fiber. In addition to furnishing a poor quality of silk, the Chinese silk merchant began to practice adulteration,<sup>2</sup> just as the tea traders were doing; at the same time, the conditions became so bad in the seventies that the Board of Government of the American Silk Association—an organization comprising in its membership nearly all the silk manufacturers in America—adopted in 1874 the following resolution:

“That the Board of Government invite members of the Association to report to the secretary all cases of adulteration of China re-reeled silk, inclosing chop marks, and all particulars which can be furnished, that results may be reported to the Chamber of Commerce of Shanghai, with a request that the same may be posted in their rooms at Shanghai.”

As regards the deterioration<sup>3</sup> of the quality of China silks, the secretary of the association reported in the same year the following findings:

“The quality of raw silk both of China (i.e. North China) and Canton has been inferior to that of any bygone year. Generally speaking, in times of dull<sup>4</sup> trade buyers of goods are more critical<sup>5</sup> and producers of goods are more careful than in times of great activity. But this does not hold good<sup>5</sup> as to China raw silk. The Chinese reeler seems to try

---

<sup>1</sup> Winding on reels or frame spools. <sup>2</sup> Act of making impure by mixing baser substance. <sup>3</sup> Act of growing worse. <sup>4</sup> Slack, not active. <sup>5</sup> Careful in judging, fastidious.

every year to be a little more careless and a little more slovenly<sup>1</sup>; and the re-reeler, to add a little more adulteration; and worst of all, the foreign buyer feels himself bound to buy whatever the Chinese merchant may offer him. If the reeling and re-reeling of silk were done carefully as it ought to be, and as it might be without extra cost, the working of it here would be much facilitated<sup>2</sup> and the waste in working would be almost nothing."

As regards the early Japanese competition, the same report states:

"Eight years ago, (about 1865), the Japanese did as the Chinese are now doing, and at the same time the Chinese began to take more care in preparing their silk, re-reeling it and cleaning it for this market; thus the Japanese have seen their error and are now trying to remedy it. During recent years, we have had some Japanese raw silk, filature<sup>3</sup> reel, which shows what the Japanese can do in the way of supplying this market with the silk which we need, and if the Japanese are willing and determined to get back their lost trade, the Chinese are offering them a good opportunity to do so."

In addition to the difference between the improving quality of Japanese and the deteriorating quality of Chinese silks, there was another great contrast between the energetic pushing by the Japanese of their silk trade

---

<sup>1</sup> Disorderly, untidy.    <sup>2</sup> Made easy.    <sup>3</sup> Drawing out into threads, reeling of silk from cocoon.



in America and the inactive and indolent methods of dealing on the part of<sup>b</sup> the Chinese. In spite of the threatened decline of her silk trade in America, China did not send any commission or even any private agent to investigate<sup>1</sup> market conditions in the United States, to say nothing of making an effort at extensive advertising or exhibition. On the other hand, the Japanese were exerting their full efforts to push their sales in America, of which the following is a typical instance:

In 1875 the vice consul of Japan at New York, Mr. Tetsunoske Tomita, made a report to the American Silk Association, stating that in the past Japanese silk had been very unsatisfactory to the American buyer because of the poor method the Japanese "rearer" of silkworms had used to raise silk; and that everything was now being improved and he assured the American buyers that every possible effort would be made in the future for the perfection of the raw silk. Accompanying his report were eighty-two samples of Japanese raw silk, which the Japanese consul requested the silk association to put on exhibition.<sup>2</sup> At the annual meeting it was resolved<sup>3</sup> that this report together with the samples should be referred to a committee of manufacturers who were particularly interested in these silks as represented by the samples, in order that their respective merits might be investigated. Afterwards the committee reported to the association that the samples submitted by the consul warranted<sup>4</sup> "the expectation that we shall

---

<sup>1</sup> Find out, examine.    <sup>2</sup> Public show or display.    <sup>3</sup> Decided.  
<sup>4</sup> Justified.



soon be able to get from Japan a supply of raw silk as good as the product of any other country."

With such a state of affairs, is there any wonder that Chinese silk was rapidly supplanted<sup>1</sup> by Japanese silk in the American market. American imports of Chinese silk declined from an annual average value of G\$2,452,000 during the five-year period 1870-1874, to an average of G\$1,648,000 during the next five-year period, 1875-1879. On the other hand, sales of Japanese silks increased from an annual average of G\$303,000 in the first five year period, to G\$2,270,000 in the second. This was the first time that America imported more silk from Japan than from China.

The strenuous<sup>2</sup> efforts of the Japanese and the carelessness of the Chinese went on side by side<sup>1</sup> for some decades without interruption or alteration. During the latter years of the nineteenth century the Japanese government took a lively interest in maintaining and improving the quality of the raw silk exported from that country. In 1897 the Japanese government established a silk-conditioning house at Yokohama and in 1900 the examination of silk for watering was made compulsory<sup>3</sup> in Japan. In China, on the other hand, reforms proved much more difficult. The government had neither the point of view nor the administrative machinery to make the carrying out of such proposals feasible. The Chinese customs reports, the newspapers of the open ports of China, the silk merchants in America as well as those in Europe, and those interested in the silk trade of

---

<sup>1</sup> Superseded, displaced. <sup>2</sup> Energetic, persevering. <sup>3</sup> Obligatory, enjoined by authority.



China, all united in admonishing<sup>1</sup> the Chinese silk producer. A good example of this sort of admonition is to be found in the Chinese Customs Report for 1904. It used to take, we are told in this report, three or four piculs of cocoons to make a picul of silk; now it takes from four to six. "The silk men of China are living in a fools' paradise. Their error consists in thinking that they make the price, whereas the fact is that the price is made in the market of the United States and in Europe. The world's supply of raw silk is going up; China's production is not. The world's demand for raw silk has increased; China's export has not. The Chinese methods of breeding the silkworm were excellent so long as no scientific methods were available. But as soon as scientific methods are introduced in Japan, China is sure to suffer in the competition."

The indifference of the Chinese silk producer and the merchant at this critical juncture,<sup>1</sup> or rather their complete ignorance of it, and Japanese preparedness to make the most of<sup>k</sup> such a good chance to extend their silk trade in America, cannot be better described than by depicting<sup>2</sup> their respective parts played on the occasion of the International Exposition held at St. Louis, Missouri, in 1904. This great International Exposition of Art, Industry, and Science was inaugurated<sup>3</sup> for the celebration of the centenary<sup>4</sup> of the Louisiana Purchase from France by the United States. The silk section was made a special feature of the exposition.<sup>5</sup> All the important silk-producing and -manufacturing

---

<sup>1</sup> Warning, advising.    <sup>2</sup> Describing vividly.    <sup>3</sup> Set in action, initiated.    <sup>4</sup> A celebration of an event which occurred one hundred years before.    <sup>5</sup> Exhibition, public show.



countries in the world, being fully aware of good opportunity for advertising their products, sent hosts<sup>1</sup> of delegates,<sup>2</sup> exhibitors, and collaborators<sup>3</sup> together with their best samples to the exhibition. Japan contributed more than one half of all the silk exhibits, there being one hundred seventy-one exhibits of raw silk, spun silk, etc., and ninety-five exhibits of woven tissues. These exhibits were said to be by far the most important of any exhibits ever made by Japan at any previous international exposition. "This was a gratifying<sup>4</sup> fact to the American Silk manufacturers who found it more natural than surprising, in view of the commercial fact that the United States now consumes two-thirds of Japan's entire export of raw silk."

China, on the other hand, sent no special silk delegation and only a few perfunctory<sup>5</sup> and commonplace exhibits to the exposition. The result was her complete failure to share in the honors of the occasion. Out of a total of three hundred forty-eight awards to exhibitors and two hundred twenty-four to collaborators, of the different countries, China got only seven of the first kind and not one of the second, while Japan was awarded two hundred thirty-three exhibitors' medals and twenty-five collaborators'. The International Silk Jury which made the awards, unanimously<sup>6</sup> adopted the following resolution regarding the silk trade of China:

"That the International Silk Jury at the St. Louis Exposition desires at this time to record<sup>7</sup> its

<sup>1</sup> Great numbers. <sup>2</sup> Representatives, commissioners. <sup>3</sup> Co-workers. <sup>4</sup> Pleasing. <sup>5</sup> Careless, indifferent. <sup>6</sup> Agreed upon by all. <sup>7</sup> Register, make note of.



disappointment on account of the small and inferior exhibits of raw silk made at this exposition by the Chinese government and by the Chinese reelers. By their failure to take advantage of so great an opportunity to place before the manufacturers of the world a complete exhibit of the great variety of different grades of raw silks, we feel that they have not only made a mistake commercially, but have failed to appreciate<sup>1</sup> one of the objects<sup>2</sup> of such a world's exposition, viz. the spread of correct information regarding the production of an article which is of increasing importance to mankind. The regret is intensified<sup>3</sup> because raw silk had its origin in China and that country has long been its largest producer in the world."

The report continues :

"On the other hand, the exhibits of woven silk tissues from China, though few in number, were marvelous<sup>4</sup> for their variety and excellence and especially for showing marked progress in the manufacture of velvets and figured silks."

With so great a difference in the attitude toward this trade in China and Japan, we naturally expect to see a headlong downfall of the Chinese silk trade with the United States, and an unusual expansion of the Japanese silk trade.

Our expectation that China's silk trade with the United States as well as with Europe would fall

---

<sup>1</sup> Recognize the value of, estimate justly.    <sup>2</sup> Aims, purposes.  
<sup>3</sup> Made more intense or deep.    <sup>4</sup> Wonderful.

headlong seems to have been unfulfilled, because ever since the Americans began to complain to the Chinese silk producers of the poor quality of their products, the actual exports to this country [U. S. A.] have constantly and steadily increased both in quantity and value, disregarding,<sup>1</sup> of course, a few abnormal<sup>2</sup> exceptions. During the period 1885-1889 China exported to the United States annually 1.1 million pounds of raw silk, valued at G3.6 million dollars. In the next period both the quantity and value increased to 1.5 million pounds and G4.3 million dollars respectively. The increase went on without interruption until in the four-year prewar period, 1910-1913, the quantity became 5.3 million pounds with a value of G13.0 million dollars. In 1922 American silk imports from China were recorded as 8.4 million pounds at a value of G56.6 million dollars.

This expansion of the Chinese silk trade with America, in spite of much complaint from buyers and the most formidable<sup>3</sup> competition of Japan, is solely due to one fortunate condition — the rapid development of the silk weaving and knitting industry in America and the resulting tremendous expansion of the demand for raw silk which Japan has never been quite able to meet even with the yearly improvement and extension of her sericulture. The quantity of raw silk the United States can buy from Europe has long since become extremely limited. At the end of the last century, and the beginning of the present, Italy supplied about twenty per cent of the total demand of the United States for

---

<sup>1</sup> Paying no heed to.    <sup>2</sup> Irregular, unusual.    <sup>3</sup> Tremendous, dreadful.



raw silk, France, about four per cent. But as the silk-weaving industry in Europe also tends to expand, these countries can not well afford to sell their materials abroad except at a higher price. In fact the price of European silk is much higher than that of oriental silk, owing to the high cost of labor in France and Italy as compared with the wage scale in the Orient. If the United States cannot get all that she needs from Japan, she is naturally compelled to turn to the original home of silk to meet her growing and almost insatiable<sup>1</sup> demand. It is due to this special condition that the Chinese silk trade has been saved from a complete downfall through the fierce onslaught<sup>2</sup> of Japanese competition.

Our presentation of silk trade conditions would be incomplete, however, if we neglected to mention the decline of the relative importance of Chinese silk from its position in former days. It is unnecessary here to reiterate<sup>3</sup> that silk was originally a Chinese monopoly, and formerly all silks entering into international trade came largely from China. Suffice it to say that, from 1850 to 1859, two-thirds of the American raw silk import came directly from China and none from Japan. Two decades later (1875-1884) China's share declined to less than two-thirds, while Japan shared equally with China in the American trade. Since that time Japan has secured a constantly increasing share, one-half of the whole during the period 1885-1904, two-thirds during 1905-1913, and about three-fourths to four-fifths, since

---

<sup>1</sup> Not easily satisfied. <sup>2</sup> Furious attack. <sup>3</sup> Repeat.

1914. China's share on the other hand has contracted<sup>1</sup> from one-fourth during 1885-1904, to about one-fifth since 1905. It is the decline of the comparative importance of China's silk trade with the United States that we refer to when we speak of the defeat of China in the American market.—*The China Weekly Review*.

### QUESTIONS

1. What were the most important articles of China's trade with the world?
2. How did China lose her tea trade in the world market?
3. State the reason, or reasons, why our silk trade, in spite of its old method of production, did not suffer as the result of competition with the world as does our tea trade?
4. When was silk first introduced into the U. S. A.? Give a brief account of China's silk trade with the U. S. A. from 1820 to 1863.
5. Give the reasons for the decline of our silk trade.
6. To what is the expansion of our raw silk trade with America due?
7. Did our people take full advantage of the growing American demand for raw silk? Why?
8. What were the findings of the American Silk Association regarding the deterioration of our silk?
9. What was Japan's method of pushing her silk trade in America?
10. State the decline of China's export of silk to America, and the corresponding increase of Japan's trade during 1870-1879.
11. What did the Japanese government do to maintain and improve the quality of her raw silk exports? Why did the Chinese government not do the same?

---

<sup>1</sup> Dwindled, become less.



12. Point out the reasons for China's defeat by Japan in the silk exhibition during the St. Louis Exposition.
13. To what is the expansion of China's silk trade due in the face of the present formidable competition of Japan?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- 242 a. *On the way to*: in progress toward.
- 246 b. *Protective tariff*: a government system of duties by which duties imposed on foreign goods are so high that there can be no competition with the native goods of similar nature.
- 247 c. *By leaps and bounds*: very rapidly.
- „ d. *To take advantage of*: to avail oneself of.
- „ e. *To live in a fool's paradise*: to be in a state of self-deception.
- 248 f. *To hold the key to*: to have control of.
- „ g. *To hold good*: to remain in effect.
- 250 h. *On the part of*: as regards, respecting.
- 251 i. *Side by side*: together with.
- 252 j. *Critical juncture*: most serious moment.
- „ k. *To make the most of*: to get the best possible results; to take the best possible advantage.

## LESSON XXVIII

### THE WOOD OIL MARKET IN CHINA

PETER S. JOWE

Practically the whole of the annual export of China's wood oil is gathered and exported from Hankow. This is apparent from the fact that Hankow, by reason of her geographical position, is the throat of the bottle for the wood oil producing districts in the interior. Wood oil is produced in enormous quantities in the province of

Szechwan. Hunan province is a promising second in the production, while Shensi province ranks third and is the last province that yields any notable quantity of the oil. The oil from Szechwan formerly came down the Yangtze valley by junks, but is now transported by steamers to Hankow and Hunan, which also send their produce down river by steamers. The Shensi oil is sent to Hankow by a partly overland route, and reaches Hankow through the Han River.

Within recent years, wood oil has attracted the attention of business men in Hankow more than any other product. No doubt the nice profits and success of a few pioneers in this particular line in Hankow have induced<sup>1</sup> a great many to enter the trade. Firms of all nationalities are going into it with great enthusiasm, and the result is intense competition. There are many impediments<sup>2</sup> to the development of the wood oil trade, the chief of which is the difficulty of collection and the precarious<sup>3</sup> mode of transportation from the interior to Hankow. This factor makes the wood oil business highly speculative,<sup>4</sup> and only long experience in the market can assure success. The frequent fighting in the interior, banditry,<sup>5</sup> and general lawlessness all combine to add terror to exporters without much experience.

The size of the wood oil crop in 1923 was approximately 600,000 piculs, while in 1924 the crop was estimated at 800,000 piculs. The quality of the crops in both 1923 and 1924 was only medium, according to Chinese tradesmen. This fact is not so noticeable to the

---

<sup>1</sup> Urged, actuated. <sup>2</sup> Hindrances, obstacles. <sup>3</sup> Uncertain, doubtful. <sup>4</sup> Involving business risks. <sup>5</sup> Brigandage.



foreign exporters, because they only buy and pay for such oils as measure up to<sup>a</sup> the various chemical standards they have set. Practically all wood oil exporters have special chemical analysts<sup>1</sup> to examine their cargo<sup>2</sup> before shipment. Prices in 1923 and 1924 were both varied and fluctuating.<sup>3</sup> This was largely due to the uncertainty of shipping in the interior of China during these years, when intermittent<sup>4</sup> sectional<sup>5</sup> fighting had been going on practically all the time. In 1923 prices ranged from 25 to 42 or more taels per picul, and the highest mark of 47 taels and more was reached when there was a sudden demand from abroad. This year (1924) the prices are much more normal, ranging from Tls. 16 to Tls. 26 per picul.

The market in 1923 was very irregular, the principal factor contributing to this situation being the poor crop in the previous year. The occasional fighting in the western part of Hunan province, where are located the greatest producing districts, has done much to hamper shipments from that section of the country to Hankow. The source of supply in Szechwan was similarly handicapped. The continual and meaningless fighting in all parts of Szechwan made it exceedingly difficult for exporters to get their supply, in spite of the fact that most of them had resident<sup>6</sup> agents at the points of collection in that province. This partly accounts for<sup>b</sup> the extremely high price of Tls. 42 per picul, which ruled in the market for some considerable time. The

---

<sup>1</sup> One who analyzes. <sup>2</sup> Freight or lading of a vessel. <sup>3</sup> Wavering, vacillating. <sup>4</sup> Periodic, alternating. <sup>5</sup> According to section or division. <sup>6</sup> Dwelling in a place for a continued length of time.



most prominent feature of the market this year is the happy return to normalcy.<sup>1</sup> Because of the good crop of the previous year and the return of peaceful times in most of the regions of production, the market is a great deal more stabilized.<sup>2</sup> Prices are normal,<sup>3</sup> and, being generally below Tls. 20 per picul, make a very ridiculous comparison with the figures of the preceding year. There was only one time in the middle of July this year when the price went up as high as Tls. 26 per picul. During that time, the wood oil market in the great center of Wanh sien in Szechwan was disturbed by the keen rivalry between native junkmen and foreign steamship companies operating on the upper Yangtze. Since the wood oil trade in Szechwan assumed an important size, native junkmen who had been enjoying almost exclusively the carrying trade of the Gorges have been at loggerheads<sup>4</sup> with foreign shipping companies which came into competition with them for the traffic. As usual when the steamers came into the field, they naturally forced out from the trade the crude mode<sup>4</sup> of junk transportation, and shippers, who had long been suffering from the inadequate and primitive means of transportation, all turned to steam shipping in preference to the slow and uncertain native craft.<sup>5</sup> This gave rise to troubles and friction on more than one occasion. Finally, the junkmen decided to unite together to offer opposition to the steamers. Riots, violence, and boycott, and various other untoward<sup>6</sup> means were resorted to<sup>d</sup> by the junk craft, and finally,

---

<sup>1</sup> State of being normal or usual.    <sup>2</sup> Rendered steady.    <sup>3</sup> Usual.  
<sup>4</sup> Method.    <sup>5</sup> Vessel.    <sup>6</sup> Perverse.



with a view to smoothing out matters perhaps, the foreign shipping companies came into agreement a few years ago with the boatmen, agreeing to let them have exclusive<sup>1</sup> rights on some lines of export produce of Szechwan, some of them for the whole length of the season and others for only a certain period in the year. This arrangement hardly eased matters, for there has been frequent trouble stirred up by boatmen who envy the traffic enjoyed by steamers. The killing of Mr. C. E. Hawley, agent of Arnhold & Company at Wanhhsien, by junkmen in 1923 was caused principally by this trouble. At that time, the natives instituted<sup>2</sup> a boycott against Arnhold & Company in Szechwan, and this resulted in difficulties in the shipping of the latter company, who were accused by the natives of using steamers instead of junks. The trouble extended to all foreign shippers of wood oil from Szechwan. For some time following this trouble, the supply from Szechwan was very uncertain, and prices went up as a result. After a while, however, the trouble was smoothed over,<sup>3</sup> and foreign shippers in Szechwan now can enjoy the privilege of shipping their cargo by the steamers without fearing interference from the native junkmen. There have been recent reports of improved shipping conditions in various parts of Szechwan, and this greatly facilitates business in Hankow.

The competition in wood oil business is daily becoming greater, and with it comes a period of greater development. The period of ordering cargo from local dealers

---

<sup>1</sup> Having the power to exclude others. <sup>2</sup> Organized, established.



in Hankow, who in turn would get it from Szechwan and Hunan to fill such local orders, is now past. Foreign firms engaging in the trade now all have their own agents to collect from the source of supply. This step was taken to avoid delay of shipment and leakage,<sup>1</sup> as well as high cost due to excessive<sup>2</sup> likin taxes. Some firms now operate their own extracting<sup>3</sup> and refining factories in Szechwan before they cask it for Hankow. In Hankow all efforts are being made to facilitate shipping and reduce cost. While part of the export from Hankow finds its way to foreign countries through agencies in Shanghai, the great bulk of the annual business is done directly between Hankow and the destinations. During high water season, ocean-going steamers anchor at Hankow to do direct loading. This opportunity is made use of by all shippers of wood oil in Hankow. Besides, many firms now find that the cost of shipping wood oil in casks or barrels can be reduced by shipping it in bulk.<sup>4</sup> To do this, many firms now have pipe lines installed<sup>4</sup> from their godowns<sup>5</sup> to feed the loading steamers anchoring at Hankow. This saves the expense of casking, because the oil, after final examination, is sent to the steamer oil tanks over the pipe lines, which device also saves the expense and time of slow transportation of casks to steamers by coolies.

The factor of adulteration<sup>6</sup> in wood oil is not a serious one. All firms who can afford the expense have their own testing experts, while all others have their cargo

---

<sup>1</sup> Waste by leaking. <sup>2</sup> Undue, overmuch. <sup>3</sup> Drawing out. <sup>4</sup> Laid, set out. <sup>5</sup> A room for storing merchandise. <sup>6</sup> Act of making impure by admixture of baser substance.



examined by the Hankow Chemical Laboratory before shipment. All of them are playing safe<sup>s</sup> by undergoing an expensive but necessary process of examination. It is seldom that foreign firms complain about adulteration because it is in their power to eliminate it. It almost goes without saying<sup>b</sup> that oil for local use is greatly adulterated by the native dealers.

Due to competition, all the firms now afield<sup>1</sup> keep everything pertaining to wood oil a dark secret. It is impossible to trace the internal working of the trade, although much of such information is desired. But among firms dealing in this product may be mentioned L. C. Gillespie & Sons, with offices in New York and Hankow, dealing almost exclusively in wood oil; Arnhold & Company, Jardine Matheson & Co., Liddell Brothers & Co., Olivier & Co., Racine & Co., Diedericksen & Co., Siemsen & Co., Kai Lee Gung Tze, Carlowitz & Co., Melchers & Co., Mitsui Bussan Kaisha, and Mitsubishi Shoji Kaisha.

Within the past two years, many Chinese have become interested in the field, and some of them have made successful attempts to enter it. The Wah Chang Trading Corporation of New York and Shanghai have been shipping the product from Hankow in casks, and considerable quantity has been shipped to America by Wah Chang. The Young Brothers Trading Company, affiliated<sup>2</sup> with the Young Brothers Banking Corporation, the foremost Chinese bank in Szechwan province, however, was the earliest Chinese firm in the field,

---

<sup>1</sup> On the field.    <sup>2</sup> Brought into close connection.

although within recent years their interest in wood oil is not so great as before, for reasons unknown. The other important and latest addition is the Fu Chung Corporation, a British-Chinese company combining the Peking Syndicate and the Chung Yuan Coal Company. The Fu Chung Corporation is operated by British and Chinese with headquarters at Chiaotso, Honan. It has extensive interests in coal mining in China, but also has surplus capital to invest in such sidelines<sup>1</sup> as would bring the best returns.<sup>2</sup> Two years ago they decided to try wood oil, and in this they are very successful. When they found that the prospect justified greater efforts and investments, they proceeded to erect their own oil tank near Hankow with a capacity of 5,000 tons. They also contemplated installing extracting and refining machinery in order to produce pure oil and sell it to foreign countries for immediate use. Another advantage of Fu Chung is their organization of agents in the interior, whom they can easily use for wood oil collection also. They used to have a large number of agencies in the provinces of Szechuan and Hunan for their coal business, and these same men also handle their wood oil business now. With good collecting facilities and tank capacity,<sup>3</sup> they are in a position<sup>1</sup> to buy oil from the interior and sell at a profit to firms in Hankow, or even to local dealers for local use. But in either case they can manage to make their own profit. There are instances when foreign firms pay higher prices to local dealers than those offered by

---

<sup>1</sup> Secondary business. <sup>2</sup> Profits. <sup>3</sup> Extent of room or space.



Fu Chung, because the latter first buy from Fu Chung and then sell to foreign firms to make their own profits as brokers.<sup>1</sup> In short the success of the Fu Chung Corporation is due to the fact that they have the capital required to invest in this speculative business in a way that some people cannot compete with.

Among all the provinces producing wood oil, Szechwan is by far the most famous. It leads the field because it has a greater territory producing the oil than any other province in China. The greatest wood oil center in Szechwan is Chungking, and the next is Wanh sien. Among the important places of production are the following: Changming, Yung hsien, Nanpu, Kwangyuan, Changning, Chihsien, Hsinwen, Kiangnan, Hokiang, Luchow, Tzechow, Nanchuen, Fowchow, Hochow, Kaihsien, Yuanyang, Kaikiang, Shiushan, and Chinkiang. The greatest center in Hunan province is Changteh, where foreign firms are represented by their own men. It has been reported that because of difficulties confronted by wood oil shippers and other inconveniences arising from the fact that Changteh is not a treaty port, foreign chambers of commerce have suggested that the port be opened to foreign trade. This would mean the establishment of customhouse and consular protection. The matter is said to have been referred to Peking, and a great deal is hoped of this growing port of Hunan through opening it to unhampered<sup>2</sup> foreign trade. The important Hunan districts producing wood oil are: Hunking, Shenchow, Pushi, Yungshun, Paoking,

---

<sup>1</sup> Agents, those who transact business for others. <sup>2</sup> Unobstructed.



Fenghwang, Mayang, Kaoching, and Yuankiang. The Shensi wood oil is sent to Hankow over the Han River, and the great collecting center is Siangyang at the head of the river, hence the name Siangyang wood oil. The wood oil districts of Shensi are Hsinan and Peiho. On the Han River in the Hupeh territory, wood oil is also produced in Yungyang, Kunchow, and Laohokow.

The world market for China wood oil is being threatened by the fact that American varnish manufacturers are now founding a project to produce China wood oil in America, thereby saving the expense of getting their annual supply from the disturbed provinces, where the element of uncertainty is too great. A movement is on foot<sup>1</sup> in America to organize the American Tung Oil Company with a view to experimenting in the planting of wood oil trees on American soil, which, if successful, would deprive China of at least part of the great business she is now enjoying. Among other things complained of by American manufacturers is the poor quality of the China crop within recent years, which fact the Chinese dealers admit.<sup>1</sup> However, the Chinese wood oil producers have no idea of the extent and possibilities of their trade, and are doing nothing to improve the quality of their product. It is deplorable<sup>2</sup> that in China there is no agency to agitate for such improvements. If foreign exporters will do what they can to arouse interest in the improvement of wood oil quality, they will find their efforts rewarded by the lasting benefit to the trade which would result.

—*The China Weekly Review.*

---

<sup>1</sup>Acknowledge. <sup>2</sup>Lamentable, sad.



## QUESTIONS

1. Where is most of the China wood oil produced?
2. To what is the success of the wood oil business due; and what are some of the obstacles in the development of this industry?
3. Explain the causes of fluctuation in the price of wood oil.
4. What contributed to the irregularity of the market in 1923.
5. Explain the cause which led to the sudden increase of price in July 1924.
6. What method do the foreign firms adopt to conduct their business economically?
7. How do the foreign firms avoid adulteration?
8. Name some of the important foreign firms doing business in wood oil.
9. What is the Fu Chung Corporation? Explain their success in the wood oil business.
10. What are some of the important centers of wood oil production in Szechwan and Hunan?
11. Give the true cause why the American people are now contemplating the production of their own wood oil. What will be the effect on Chinese trade?

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- |     |    |   |
|-----|----|---|
| 260 | a. | <i>Measure up (to):</i> to satisfy, to be equal to expectation.   |
|     | „  | b. <i>To account for:</i> to explain.                             |
| 261 | c. | <i>To be at loggerheads:</i> to differ strongly, to come to blows |
|     | „  | d. <i>To resort to:</i> to have recourse to.                      |
| 262 | e. | <i>To smooth over:</i> to pacify, to settle peacefully.           |
| 263 | f. | <i>In bulk:</i> in quantity.                                      |
| 264 | g. | <i>To play safe:</i> adopt a safe measure.                        |
|     | „  | h. <i>To go without saying:</i> to be certain.                    |
| 265 | i. | <i>To be in a position:</i> to be able.                           |
| 267 | j. | <i>On foot:</i> in progress.                                      |

## LESSON XXIX

CHINA'S FINANCES—THE SYSTEM OF  
TAXATION IN CHINA

T. I. DUNN

Ever since the opening up of China to foreign intercourse,<sup>1</sup> the expenditure and the needs of the country have been constantly increasing. The problem of how to make the revenue and the expenditure meet has been confronting<sup>2</sup> every serious-minded man. The Imperial budget<sup>3</sup> for 1912, submitted in 1911 to the National Assembly, showed a deficit of 301,232 Kuping taels. Prior to this there was no official budget except that for 1911. From general estimates it is safe to say that the expenditure of the past few years has been in excess of the revenue. Even if there is an occasional surplus, as shown in the 1911 budget, it is not real surplus at all. It is the result of ruthless cutting down of important appropriations<sup>4</sup> in order to turn a deficit into a surplus. This fact is further borne out<sup>a</sup> by the figures of the 1911 budget. Only a little more than 2,000,000 taels is allowed for education,\* including the maintenance of the ministry itself in such a vast empire with a 400,000,000 population. In round numbers, 77,000,000 taels is allowed for the army and 9,000,000 taels for the navy. These sums at once

---

<sup>1</sup> Communication, commerce. <sup>2</sup> Stand facing. <sup>3</sup> Annual financial statement. <sup>4</sup> Anything, especially money, set apart for a particular use.

\* Within these recent years even this appropriation has been cut off for purposes of fighting.—Ed.



become insignificant when compared with the annual army and navy appropriations of any great Western power.

Not only the expenditure for education and national defense cannot be adequately<sup>1</sup> met by the small revenue derived yearly from various taxes; the administrative expenses have to depend largely upon foreign loans. Every measure of reform has to look for<sup>b</sup> foreign financial help. Besides these, we still have to meet a big annual charge on the foreign loans previously contracted. In order to meet this situation we cannot contract debts to meet debts. The real remedy must be sought in the increase of taxes.

The per capita<sup>c</sup> contribution of the Chinese people in taxes is very low, probably the lowest in the world. I am of the opinion that the Chinese people, excluding the poor class, can bear a many times heavier tax burden than what they are bearing now. At least the upper and the middle classes should be required to contribute more towards the needs and expenses of the nation. The scarcity of revenue must not be adjudged as the result of the poverty of the people, but must be attributed<sup>2</sup> to other reasons. The inefficient and dishonest administration of our tax system has turned the major portion of the revenue into private pockets; the absence of many forms of modern taxation which would make the rich and the well-to-do<sup>d</sup> pay relatively more for the support of the nation is another cause for the failure to raise large revenue. In a word, the scarcity of revenue

---

<sup>1</sup> Effectively.    <sup>2</sup> Ascribed, referred.

must be attributed to the maladjustment<sup>1</sup> of our system of taxation to the changed conditions and needs of the country. This maladjustment must be again explained by the sudden change of the simple government to the complex and the complicated, brought about by international intercourse as a result of war. A brief examination of the principal sources of our revenue will suffice to substantiate<sup>2</sup> the above assertion.<sup>3</sup>

Our main sources of revenue may be grouped under five headings. The grain tribute is purposely left out, because the writer believes that it is not a proper form of taxation and that it has become obsolete; it is now computed<sup>4</sup> and included in the land taxes.

1. LAND TAX. Land is taxed in China as in other parts of the world. A century or more ago it was the main dependence of the government, constituting<sup>5</sup> two-thirds of the total amount of the annual revenue turned into the national treasury. In 1713 the Manchu emperor, for political reasons, decreed that the land tax throughout the empire was to be fixed and immutable<sup>6</sup> for all times, no increase being permitted under any circumstances. The official rate thus fixed was .0368355 taels and continued so nominally until the present day. But in practice the rate has been greatly increased by acceleration.<sup>7</sup> In the Hsun Hsien Syndicate case, recorded by Jamieson, the tax on their land shows an increase by acceleration of 71 per cent; and in the Hsin Hsiang Syndicate case, 186 per cent.

---

<sup>1</sup> Bad regulation or arrangement. <sup>2</sup> Prove. <sup>3</sup> Statement. <sup>4</sup> Reckoned, estimated. <sup>5</sup> Forming, making up, composing. <sup>6</sup> Invariable. <sup>7</sup> Increase of action or motion.



The assessment<sup>1</sup> and the collection of the land tax is left to the magistrate of the *hsien* (district), who employs a large army of tax collectors. These collectors are paid little or no salaries at all; but they are allowed by custom to collect fees during their house-to-house collection. Annually the tax collector goes to the taxpayer and delivers the tax note itemized<sup>2</sup> in accordance with law and custom. The amount shown as total on the note is the amount which must be turned into the *hsien*'s treasury. The fees that the collector may exact<sup>3</sup> are not fixed. It is estimated that the "cost of collection" amounts to 10 per cent of the sum officially demanded.

According to the budget for 1912, the revenue from land is estimated at, in round numbers, 52,000,000 taels. There is no doubt that the actual amount received from this source by the government in the past was only a fraction of what was collected. Jamieson, one of the competent authorities, has estimated the gross<sup>4</sup> receipt at 451,000,000 taels, applying the Honan average to the whole of China. Other authorities have estimated it at 375,000,000 taels. Sir Robert Hart in 1904 calculated that the whole taxable land in China might amount to 4,000,000,000 mow, which, on the basis of 200 cash per mow, and taking a tael as equal to 2,000 cash, should yield a revenue of 400,000,000 taels.

2. THE CUSTOMS. There are two kinds of customs—the regular or native customs and the maritime customs.

(a) THE NATIVE CUSTOMS. There is a large number of native customs houses or offices located in

---

<sup>1</sup> Valuation of property or profit of business for taxation. <sup>2</sup> Stated by particulars. <sup>3</sup> Demand authoritatively. <sup>4</sup> Total (opposed to net).

different cities and trade routes where the trade is the richest. This is another device,<sup>1</sup> like the *likin*, to get as much revenue as possible by taxing the movements of merchandise from one place to another. However, the sum annually turned over to the government is very small, because the whole administration is infested<sup>2</sup> with grafters<sup>3</sup> and corrupt practices. The annual collection has never been over 3,000,000 taels.

Since November 1901, the regular customs offices within fifteen miles of a treaty port have been placed under the control of the Maritime Customs, with the result that most of them are so far regulated that irregularity or corrupt exactions are suppressed and the full collection reported. The collection of the native customs under the commissioners of the customs increased from taels 2,026,469 in 1902 to taels 3,699,024 in 1906.

(b) THE MARITIME CUSTOMS. The foundation of the Maritime Customs was laid during the Taiping Rebellion† when the native customs was organized in 1854 at Shanghai, with the *taotai* and the American, British, and French consuls as a board of three inspectors, to collect import duties and tonnages<sup>4</sup> from foreign vessels on a moderate basis of 5 per cent. The receipts for the years from 1905 to 1910 were as follows:

1905 . . . . .	35,111,004 taels
1906 . . . . .	36,068,595 „

---

<sup>1</sup> Scheme, plan. <sup>2</sup> Troubled greatly by numbers or frequency.  
<sup>3</sup> Those who graft or squeeze. <sup>4</sup> Weight of goods carried in ships.



1907 . . . . .	33,861,346 taels
1908 . . . . .	32,901,895 „
1909 . . . . .	35,539,917 „
1910 . . . . .	35,571,879 „

The collection for 1911 was above 30,000,000 taels and for 1912 about 37,000,000 taels or over.

In the treaty of 1902, it was agreed that in case likin was abolished, the import duty of 5 per cent might be raised to the maximum of  $12\frac{1}{2}$  per cent and export duty to the maximum of  $7\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. This is to compensate<sup>1</sup> for the loss of revenue from the abolition of likin. While it is futile<sup>2</sup> to speculate<sup>3</sup> how much revenue can be derived from this increase, it is evident that the increase can not wholly cover the loss of likin revenue by reason of<sup>e</sup> the fact that a provision for passing a consumption<sup>4</sup> tax by China is stipulated in the treaty to supplant the likin. Now there is a movement for the revision of the commercial treaty looking to the repeal of this provision. If this is accomplished we shall be able to frame a tariff<sup>5</sup> which will yield the largest revenue to suit our needs. We cannot expect the present tariff or the  $12\frac{1}{2}$  per cent maximum tariff to be a source from which we can increase our revenue.

3. SALT GABELLE. Salt is everywhere in China under strict governmental control and is taxed at every stage—in its manufacture, purchase at the vats, sale at the depot, and sale to the people. For productive and administrative purposes, the whole country is divided into eleven salt areas: Shengking, Changlu,

<sup>1</sup> Reward.    <sup>2</sup> Useless.    <sup>3</sup> Theorize; guess.    <sup>4</sup> Act of using up.  
<sup>5</sup> Tax.

Hotung, Hwa-Ma-Chih, Shantung, Hwai, Szechwan, Yünnan, Chekiang, Fukien, and Kwangtung. At the head of each salt area there is a salt commissioner, generally the governor or the viceroy of the province or provinces within which the salt area lies. Under the commissioner is an army of collectors, agents, guards, etc., stationed at different trade routes to prevent smuggling. Production, transport, and sale are in private hands under licenses<sup>1</sup> issued by the administration. From the vats to the depots the salt is practically in bond.<sup>2</sup> At the depot the salt is bought, at a price fixed by the administration, by the holders of licenses. On account of the successive stages of taxation, the heavy burden falls on the consumers in form of higher prices in salt. The average price of salt is sixty cash per catty.

The consumption of salt in the empire can only be guessed. According to Morse it was put at 20,000,000 piculs a hundred years ago, and at 28,000,000 piculs twenty years ago, as estimated by the Board of Revenue. Morse estimates that if the Chinese people consume the same quantity of salt as the population of India, at least 81,000,000 taels must be collected in salt taxes annually.

It can be scarcely doubted that under honest and efficient administration the revenue derived from the salt gabelle could be materially<sup>3</sup> increased. The government now proposes to establish a salt monopoly.<sup>4</sup> It is

---

<sup>1</sup> Formal permission by the authorities. <sup>2</sup> State of goods placed in bonded warehouse until duty is paid. <sup>3</sup> Substantially. <sup>4</sup> Exclusive right.



expected to produce at least 120,000,000 taels annually, whereas the past collection only amounts to about 40,000,000 taels annually. Still greater income may be expected in the near future when the monopoly is put on an efficient basis.

4. THE LIKIN. Likin, the "contribution of one thousandth," that is, a tax of one tenth of one per cent on inland transits.<sup>1</sup> It was originally levied<sup>2</sup> to defray the additional expenditure incurred<sup>3</sup> in the suppressing of the Taiping Rebellion, and was extended to all the provinces after the suppression of the rebellion when other rebellions were raging. Likin stations exist at all large towns, and are placed along the main routes of commerce, both by land and by water. The actual amount of taxes collected is impossible to know, on account of the irregular methods of the administration. The revenue from likin was estimated in the budget for 1911 at 44,000,000 taels; in the budget for 1912 at 24,000,000 taels. It can scarcely be doubted that the amount officially turned over to the government treasury is only a fraction of what is actually collected. The collection is totally given over to the discretion<sup>4</sup> of the barrier collector and his subordinates,<sup>5</sup> without any scrutiny or any means of checking dishonesty.

Article viii of the Mackay Treaty (1902) states: "The Chinese government, recognizing that the system of levying likin and other dues on goods at the places of production in transit, and at destination<sup>6</sup> impedes<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Passage through or over. <sup>2</sup> Collected by assessment. <sup>3</sup> Contracted. <sup>4</sup> Wisdom. <sup>5</sup> Underofficers. <sup>6</sup> Place aimed at. <sup>7</sup> Hampers, hinders.



the free circulation<sup>1</sup> of commodities and injures the interest of the trade, hereby undertakes to discard completely those means of raising revenue with the limitations mentioned in section 8."

In exchange for this concession,<sup>2</sup> the British Government agreed to a surtax not exceeding  $12\frac{1}{2}$  per cent on foreign imports and  $7\frac{1}{2}$  per cent on exports, plus a consumption tax on articles of Chinese origin not intended for export. But the abolition of likin has not yet been effected. When it will be abolished, no one can tell. However, it would be wiser, it seems to me, to clean up this system of graft and to obtain the full amount actually paid by the taxpayer than to abolish it by partially substituting for it a consumption tax under the treaty stipulation,<sup>3</sup> which is economically burdensome to our consumers. Moreover, it has been admitted, as a fiscal measure it will yield a great amount of revenue, even many times greater than what is yielded now, if it is honestly and efficiently managed.

5. MISCELLANEOUS<sup>4</sup> TAXES. This group includes the reed tax, the tea licenses, mining royalties, fees on sales of land and houses, pawnbrokers' and other mercantile licenses, *lo-ti shui*, or the consumption and production taxes, etc. These taxes in the past have yielded only very insignificant revenue. But all of these are capable of development. This is true especially of the consumption and production taxes which, if properly imposed,<sup>5</sup> will yield a good deal of revenue.

---

<sup>1</sup> Movement.    <sup>2</sup> Act of yielding or conceding.    <sup>3</sup> Agreement.  
<sup>4</sup> Mixed, consisting of different things.    <sup>5</sup> Levied.



From this brief survey<sup>1</sup> of the various sources of revenue, it now becomes evident that the tax receipts from them may be greatly increased by a more honest administration, except in the case of the Maritime<sup>2</sup> Customs where the receipts and collection are well balanced. If honesty and efficiency can only be insured, the land tax can be increased seven times; the salt tax, threefold; likin, twice; and other miscellaneous taxes can, by further development, be made to increase in proportion. The Maritime Customs has been the only branch of taxation where no irregularity<sup>3</sup> is found. But under present treaty stipulations no increase can be expected from this source save in case of unexpected increase in import and export trade.

Our means of increasing revenue has not been exhausted. We still can and should increase our revenue by adopting the various forms of modern taxation. The income<sup>4</sup> tax, the inheritance<sup>5</sup> tax, the unearned increment<sup>6</sup> tax, corporation tax, and tax on tangible<sup>7</sup> and intangible personal properties have been universally introduced into the permanent taxation systems of various Western countries. As to income, there are thousands and thousands of people in China, who earn more than 1,000 dollars annually; who earn 2,000 annually; who earn 3,000 annually; and so on. Why not ask them to pay a part of their surplus or earnings to the support of the nation? As to

---

<sup>1</sup> Examination. <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to the sea. <sup>3</sup> Crookedness or dishonesty. <sup>4</sup> Revenue, receipts. <sup>5</sup> An estate received by heir. <sup>6</sup> An increase in the value of land or other property due to no labor or expenditure on the part of the owner, but to natural causes. <sup>7</sup> Can be touched.



inheritance, thousands of wealthy people die annually whose fortunes go to their children without costing them a cent. Why not let the beneficiaries<sup>1</sup> who come into sudden possession of wealth pay a part of their riches for the need of the public? As to unearned increment, it is present in China as elsewhere. But a tax on it is never known to have existed. Vast tracts of land around treaty ports have appreciated<sup>2</sup> in value several hundred fold. Large tracts of land or lots in big commercial cities are being held in speculation.<sup>3</sup> Thousands of people have been known to become rich in this way. Why not tax them? Perhaps no tax is more just than a tax on what one reaps but does not earn as a result of investment and labor. Corporations have never been taxed in China, and it is evident that no person is more able to pay taxes than a corporation. Banking institutions, both foreign and native, exist untaxed. All other corporations, native or foreign, are doing business untaxed. Why not tax them in the same manner as other countries do? Why not tax stocks and bonds which are taxed, or rather doubly taxed, in other countries? The general property tax has been generally discarded in Western countries with the exception of the United States. The reason for its failure is due to the changeable nature of the property most of which in intangible form cannot be reached by the general property tax. But if there is enough distinction or modification to it, it certainly

---

<sup>1</sup> Those who receive a gift or benefit or advantage. <sup>2</sup> Rose in value. <sup>3</sup> A business venture involving great risks, with a chance of large profits. In this case no risk is involved.



can be adopted as a means of reaching tangible and intangible personal property.

To sum up, then, we have four main sources of taxation—land, salt, customs, likin, and other miscellaneous taxes capable of further development, whose yield can be increased many fold through honest and efficient administration; and we also have the modern forms of taxation which may be adopted—income tax, inheritance tax, unearned increment tax, and corporation tax. These, in all probability, if properly imposed and administered, will yield an income at least as great as all the other taxes combined. This latter may be a mere speculation. Yet we still have every reason to believe that it would be true, if we consider the yields of these taxes collected annually in Western countries.

In conclusion let me say that the problem of increasing taxes in China can only find its solution in taxation reform. Modern forms of taxation, scientific methods of assessment, and honest and efficient personnel and administration are the things that we must procure for our tax system at any cost.<sup>5</sup> Heretofore, it is not that our people have not contributed heavily to the maintenance of our nation; unfortunately two thirds of the revenue has gone into private pockets or been wasted in foolish administrative expenditure. Among the most important reform measures must be recommended the standardization<sup>1</sup> of currency<sup>2</sup> so as to avoid the evils of conversion;<sup>2</sup> publicity<sup>3</sup> of administration; uniform

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of reducing to a standard, or permanent value. <sup>2</sup> Act of changing from one thing to another. <sup>3</sup> Act of making public.

accounting and auditing; and fixing of a comfortable salary for the tax collectors and administrators so that they will not be compelled to graft<sup>i</sup> for a living.

—*The Chinese Students' Monthly.*

### QUESTIONS

1. How is it proved that the surplus shown in the government budget of 1911 was not a real surplus?
2. How did the government try to meet its administrative expenses? What should be the real remedy for this undesirable situation?
3. To what causes is the scarcity of government revenue chiefly due?
4. What are the main sources of our national revenue?
5. What is the defect in the system of tax collection in China? What is the amount estimated for the cost of collection?
6. What was the amount collected from taxable land according to the budget of 1912; and what could be collected according to estimates of competent authorities?
7. Criticize the system of native customs.
8. Would the increase of customs duties, as stipulated by the treaties with foreign powers, be sufficient to compensate for the loss of likin revenue?
9. Describe the prevailing system of the Salt Gabelle.
10. How much revenue could be collected from the salt taxes, according to the consumption of the population of India? How much could be collected annually under government monopoly and efficient administration?
11. Why could the government not get all the revenues collected from likin? What is your suggestion for doing away with the evil practices?



12. What are included in the list of miscellaneous taxes?
13. By how much can our revenues be increased from different sources under an honest system of administration?
14. What are the other possible taxes at present not included in the list?
15. Give your opinion as regards the desirability of instituting income tax, inheritance tax, unearned increment tax, and corporation tax.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |     |    |   |
|-----|----|---|
| 269 | a. | <i>To bear out:</i> to support; to maintain; to justify.  |
| 270 | b. | <i>To look for:</i> to search after; to be in a state of expectation.                           |
| ,,  | c. | <i>Per capita:</i> per head or for every person.  |
| ,,  | d. | <i>The well-to-do:</i> the rich; those in good circumstances.                                   |
| 274 | e. | <i>By reason of:</i> on account of; by means of.  |
| 275 | f. | <i>In bond:</i> this term is applied to goods which are left in charge of the customs officers. |
| 280 | g. | <i>At any cost:</i> whatever may be requisite to secure one's object.                           |
| ,,  | h. | <i>Standardization of currency:</i> act of securing uniformity in money.                        |
| 281 | i. | <i>To graft:</i> to squeeze; to obtain unlawful commission.                                     |

## LESSON XXX

### HOW CAN FOREIGN CAPITAL BE USED TO CHINA'S ADVANTAGE?

#### CHAMBER CHOW

Many people say that China is poor; but she is not really as poor as one often thinks. She is not only wealthy in natural resources,<sup>1</sup> but there is also plenty

---

<sup>1</sup> Available means.

of money in the form of coin and bullion.<sup>1</sup> These are actually buried in the ground in certain parts of China instead of being deposited<sup>2</sup> in the banks as people do in other parts of the world. The reason why difficulties are experienced in raising large amounts of money in China for the development of commerce and industry is that there are no good banking facilities.<sup>3</sup> There are several well-managed banks in China to-day that are doing splendid work in helping to raise money for developing industries and for other purposes, but there is so much to be done that the few local banks cannot finance the millions or billions that may be needed. Consequently, the way China should get financial help is from abroad, where money is more plentiful and rates of interest are lower than in China.

The problem is how to use foreign capital to the best advantage<sup>4</sup> of China. By this we mean the following two things :

1. Absence of undue<sup>4</sup> foreign management and control.
2. The employment of foreign capital after it is secured.

At present there is a popular fear in China that, with foreign management and control, international complications<sup>5</sup> are likely to accompany the foreign capital. It is, therefore, extremely important to find out how foreign capital can be used without these evils. In order to accomplish this aim China must secure foreign capital by using the right methods and from the right sources. Now, the first thing we have to

---

<sup>1</sup> Uncoined gold or silver.    <sup>2</sup> Placed, put.    <sup>3</sup> Aids, advantages.  
<sup>4</sup> Excessive.    <sup>5</sup> Entanglements.



consider is how and where to secure foreign capital under these terms.

The main part of this article is devoted to discussing how to secure foreign capital rather than how to employ it; because there is no great difference as to whether the capital is foreign or Chinese in its employment after it is secured. Both of them must be invested in productive<sup>1</sup> enterprises with efficient<sup>2</sup> management and provision<sup>3</sup> for paying interest regularly. There, is, however, some difference between using local and foreign capital. When using the latter there may be foreign interference<sup>4</sup> in the management and influence in the policy of the enterprise.

There are two ways to secure foreign capital: (1) By floating<sup>5</sup> the whole issue<sup>6</sup> of the loan<sup>b</sup> in international "money markets" like London, Paris, New York, etc. (2) By inviting foreign banks, bankers, and capitalists to<sup>7</sup> participate in the underwriting<sup>8</sup> with Chinese banks or bankers.

Judging from China's past experience in railroad financing and dealing with foreign bankers, it must be admitted that the first method is very costly. For instance, one of the several ways for raising foreign capital for a Chinese railroad is for a syndicate<sup>9</sup> to agree with the Chinese government to supply, say, \$50,000,000 for building a railroad. The par value<sup>c</sup> of each bond<sup>10</sup> will be \$1,000 with interest at five per cent

---

<sup>1</sup> Producing results. <sup>2</sup> Capable, effective. <sup>3</sup> Measure taken before hand, preparation. <sup>4</sup> Interposition, meddling. <sup>5</sup> Sustaining the credit of (com.). <sup>6</sup> Anything sent out. <sup>7</sup> Take part. <sup>8</sup> Subscription. <sup>9</sup> An association of persons officially authorized to negotiate some business, a combination of persons undertaking some business. <sup>10</sup> Security.



per annum. The Chinese government gets perhaps \$900 for each bond. Then the syndicate sells each bond for somewhere in the neighborhood of \$970. The profit for the syndicate is something like \$3,500,000 for this \$50,000,000 transaction. We cannot condemn the syndicate altogether if we examine the facts carefully. The following three reasons will help us to understand why foreign bankers will not lend money to China unless they are backed up<sup>d</sup> by their governments and under such unfavorable terms: (1) The foreign bankers and the investing public know little or nothing about China and the Chinese. Naturally there are few bankers who want to lend money under these conditions. (2) They think Chinese conditions are very unsettled because they have heard of occasional discoveries of plots<sup>1</sup> for starting new revolutions and other local disturbances. (3) They think that they have not yet been assured that the Chinese are capable of managing large enterprises efficiently and without graft.<sup>2</sup> In order to enable China to get foreign capital on better terms, we must, above all, help to maintain peace in China, secure a permanent government, introduce efficient methods, and train technical<sup>3</sup> experts<sup>4</sup> in the various lines. The most important thing is to<sup>o</sup> stamp out the evil of grafting. It will be some time before China can secure foreign capital advantageously by floating large issues abroad unless all these things are done.

Raising capital by allowing foreign bankers to participate with Chinese banks may be divided into three parts :

---

<sup>1</sup> Intrigues. <sup>2</sup> Unlawful appropriation of money. <sup>3</sup> Pertaining to the useful or mechanic arts. <sup>4</sup> One skilled in any art.



1. To sell Chinese securities<sup>1</sup> to the foreign investors through their own banks or bankers. The success of the recent domestic<sup>2</sup> loan in China gives us an excellent illustration of this method. We all know that this loan was handled by a syndicate with members like the Bank of China, the Bank of Communications, the Banque Industrielle de Chine, and the Commercial Guarantee Bank of Chihli. It is a significant fact that foreign banking houses participated as syndicate members in the underwriting, and that foreign bankers serve on the board of directors. This will no doubt give confidence and security to the foreign investors. It will be through the hands of these foreign bankers that the securities will gradually find their way into the international financial markets. Both Chinese and foreigners are benefited in financing of this kind. The Chinese have the control of the management, which they should by all means maintain, and foreign bankers in turn are assured of the safety of their investment by serving on the board of directors.

2. How to induce foreign capitalists to go to China to be partners of Chinese bankers, promoters, or manufacturers. The Chinese revolution has certainly given a new vision to the foreign manufacturers and capitalists of the great possibilities of development in China. Judging from the personal experience of the author, American capitalists are quite anxious to promote industries in China with Chinese as partners. But the problem is: How can China utilize<sup>3</sup> this capital,

---

<sup>1</sup> Something given as guarantee, bonds.    <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to home or one's country.    <sup>3</sup> Make use of.



technical experience, and the efficient business organization that goes with it? It will be dangerous if China does not know how to use them wisely. There is sufficient evidence in China to-day of the danger of this kind of financing.<sup>1</sup> China has now many enterprises apparently owned jointly by Chinese and foreigners, but foreigners practically control the management and policy.<sup>2</sup> The Chinese are used merely as tools<sup>3</sup> in order to overcome local prejudices.<sup>3</sup> The following two suggestions may be helpful:

a. The promoter must acquaint himself first with the straight enterprise which he intends to undertake. In other words he must know the business thoroughly. He must then present the proposition<sup>4</sup> to both Chinese and foreign capitalists for consideration. If the facts are convincing<sup>5</sup> there will be no trouble in financing it. Sometimes he may have to use foreign capital alone to start the enterprise because it is difficult to convince the Chinese capitalists if the enterprise has not previously been tried in China. However he must secure for the Chinese at least an equal voice<sup>6</sup> in the management.

b. The promoter must discriminate<sup>6</sup> between the foreign capitalists. The following are undesirable: (1) Foreign capitalists whose sole aim it is to exploit<sup>7</sup> China, and use get-rich-quick methods. (2) Capitalists who are backing up their governments to achieve political ends<sup>8</sup> in China. We can illustrate this by the battle for railroad concessions in Manchuria, Shantung, and the Yangtze valley region. (3) The American and other

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of supplying with money. <sup>2</sup> Plan. <sup>3</sup> Prejudgement. <sup>4</sup> Proposal. <sup>5</sup> Satisfying. <sup>6</sup> Distinguish. <sup>7</sup> Get the value out of. <sup>8</sup> Aims.



trusts.† There are, however, many advantages in securing the help of trusts to develop China, because they have capital, experts in technic, and organization, but there is this serious disadvantage: one of the policies of a trust is to control the raw material. Suppose the U. S. Steel Corporation gained control of Chinese raw material by going into partnership with the Chinese government. When China's steel industry became well developed, she could produce steel more cheaply than any nation in the world, but if the U. S. Steel Corporation had the control, unquestionably it would take pains to see that China was not a competitor in the steel trade of the world. Consequently, China's steel industry would not reach its full development.

3. To encourage the establishment of both Chinese and foreign private banking houses in China and to influence Chinese banks and bankers to open branch houses or establish correspondents<sup>1</sup> abroad. In addition to these bankers, China must have stock exchanges. For instance, in New York City alone there are about eleven stock exchange† members, and six or seven hundred private banking, brokerage,<sup>2</sup> and bond houses.† Many of them have branches or correspondents in London and on the continent of Europe. It is through these uses that millions of dollars worth of American securities are traded in on the various European stock exchanges daily.

We have discussed above the various methods employed in securing foreign capital in order to eliminate<sup>3</sup> undue foreign management and capital. Now let us mention

---

<sup>1</sup> An appointed agent in another city or country. <sup>2</sup> Commission charged by brokers or commission agents. <sup>3</sup> Remove.



the ways of employing foreign capital after it is secured. There are two ways to employ foreign capital, one for the development of commerce, industry, shipping, etc., the other for national defense, education, and administration. The difference between the two is that the first is directly productive and the second indirectly productive. If it is possible, China must restrain herself from using foreign capital for administration and national defense, etc. Because, in the first place, it is difficult to give suitable security for the loan. Secondly, there will be some foreign supervision<sup>1</sup> in the spending of the money. This might involve China in serious international complications, such as the experience she had with the Quintuple Group† of bankers. On the other hand, there are many advantages in employing foreign capital for developing natural resources, in building railroads, and in other industries. Let us take the Peking-Hankow Railway as a concrete illustration. Commercially, this railway shortens the trade route between Hankow and Peking from several months to a day or two. It increases the commerce of all the cities along or near the line enormously, and creates new markets for the commodities<sup>2</sup> which would not otherwise be marketed. It also gives employment to thousands of people. It affords better facilities for travelers, government officials, etc. Strategically<sup>3</sup> it is useful, as the government can transport military forces from either north or south in case China should go to war. If there is any foreign supervision at

---

<sup>1</sup> Superintendence.  
science or device.

<sup>2</sup> Goods, articles.

<sup>3</sup> Pertaining to military



all it is limited merely to the operation of the railway. So the national government is free from foreign diplomatic<sup>1</sup> influence or coercion.<sup>2</sup>

In summing up, the most advantageous way of securing foreign capital is by inviting foreign banks or bankers to participate in underwriting with those of China. In this way, Chinese securities will gradually find their way abroad. This method is equally advantageous to China because it will induce foreign capitalists to go to China to be partners of Chinese promoters or manufacturers, provided they would have equal voice in the management and policy. With China's present state of financial credit she cannot float the large issue of a loan abroad without being subject to<sup>b</sup> serious disadvantages. The best thing to do is to wait patiently, if she can, until she can get money on better terms.<sup>1</sup> There is not much difference between China's being controlled by the Powers financially and commercially, and being controlled politically. As to the employment of foreign capital after it is secured, China should by no means use it for administration, national defense, etc. Use foreign capital for productive enterprises, and let the revenues from taxation and other sources take care of the governmental expenses, etc. The day has come for China to play an important role<sup>1</sup> in the international commercial and financial world provided she can obtain and use foreign capital to her advantage.

— *The Chinese Student's Monthly.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to diplomacy, or conducting of negotiations between nations. <sup>2</sup> Compulsion.

## QUESTIONS

1. What are the causes of the difficulties of raising money for commercial and industrial purposes in China ?
2. Name some of the important Chinese banks.
3. Why is it desirable to get money from abroad for big industrial purposes ?
4. What is the popular fear in China with regard to foreign management and control of our industries ? And how can we obviate these evils ?
5. Name the two ways of securing foreign capital.
6. Which of the two is more desirable ? Explain the reasons.
7. What are the reasons why foreign bankers refuse to lend China money unless backed up by their governments ?
8. What are the requisites for enabling China to borrow foreign capital on better terms ?
9. Name the three methods by which foreign banks may participate with Chinese banks in securing loans.
10. What are the evils of promoting industries in coöperation with foreign capitalists and how can we obviate these ?
11. What are the kinds of undesirable foreign capitalists ?
12. How could we best employ foreign capital when secured ? Discuss why we should *never* allow the government to use it for administrative or military purposes.
13. Enumerate the distinct advantages of applying foreign capital to purely industrial purposes.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- 283 a. *To the best advantage*: with the greatest usefulness ; in the most efficient manner.
- 284 b. *To float a loan*: bring out a loan (stock exchange term).
- „ c. *Par value*: the original value.
- 285 d. *To back up*: to support, to assist.



## Page

- 285 *e.* *To stamp out:* to extinguish, to abolish.  
 287 *f.* *To be used as tools:* to be made agents for a certain purpose.  
 „ *g.* *To secure equal voice:* to get equal representation; to be on the same footing.  
 290 *h.* *Subject to:* liable to.  
 „ *i.* *On better terms:* on easier conditions.  
 „ *j.* *To play an important role:* to be an important factor in.

## LESSON XXXI

## SOCIAL INSURANCE IN GREAT BRITAIN

STEWART E. S. YUI, M.A.

One of the urgent needs of China to-day is social reform, and one important phase<sup>1</sup> of social reform is social insurance. "Insurance," according to the *Encyclopedia Britannica*, "is a provision<sup>2</sup> made by a group of persons, each singly in danger of some loss, the incidence<sup>3</sup> of which cannot be foreseen, that when such loss shall occur to any of them, it shall be distributed over the whole group." All insurance, therefore, is essentially a social function. But there is a difference between social insurance and ordinary commercial insurance. "Social insurance" is the "policy of organized society to furnish that protection to one part of the population, which some other part may need less, or, if needing, is able to purchase voluntarily<sup>4</sup> through private insurance," and, according to its modern

---

<sup>1</sup> Aspect. <sup>2</sup> Preparation, measure taken before hand. <sup>3</sup> Act of falling upon; occurrence. <sup>4</sup> Of one's free will.

conception,<sup>1</sup> embodies<sup>2</sup> three important elements—compulsion,<sup>3</sup> state subsidies,<sup>4</sup> and strict state supervision<sup>5</sup> and control. Its chief aim is to give relief in case of human destitution,<sup>6</sup> and its ideal purpose is to prevent, and finally to eradicate,<sup>7</sup> poverty, which is generally caused by industrial accidents,<sup>8</sup> advanced age and invalidity,<sup>9</sup> sickness, and poor conditions of the labor market. The origin of social insurance may be traced back to the promulgation<sup>10</sup> of the Prussian Common Law in 1794, and to the numerous acts<sup>11</sup> passed by many German as well as many other European states in the beginning of the nineteenth century. Germany first took it as a broad national program in 1881. To-day it exists in one form or another in practically all European countries. It may be for all wage workers or for part of them, compulsory or optional,<sup>12</sup> voluntary or subsidized. But its most interesting development is to be found in Great Britain. With the increase of population, the development of natural resources, the introduction of machinery and factory systems, the expansion of trade and commerce, the rapid growth of labor competition, and the addition and extension of transportation<sup>13</sup> facilities, social insurance has now risen to the status<sup>14</sup> of a problem in China and will undoubtedly soon turn out to be still more vital than it appears to-day. If China is going to adopt social insurance at all, a careful study should

---

<sup>1</sup> Idea. <sup>2</sup> Incorporates. <sup>3</sup> Act of compelling. <sup>4</sup> Support, aids  
<sup>5</sup> Superintendence. <sup>6</sup> Extreme poverty. <sup>7</sup> Remove. <sup>8</sup> Mishaps.  
<sup>9</sup> Weakness. <sup>10</sup> Proclamation. <sup>11</sup> Laws. <sup>12</sup> Elective. <sup>13</sup> Carrying  
from one place to another. <sup>14</sup> State or condition.



be made of the system of Great Britain, which will be discussed in its various phases as follows:

### ACCIDENT INSURANCE IN GREAT BRITAIN

The period 1750–1825 in England was one of industrial revolution whose chief agencies were inventions and the factory system, and the first quarter of the nineteenth century was marked by widespread discontent and grave distress. Competition grew keener; wages fell; working hours increased; child and woman labor became more common; employees were forced to “work harder than an American negro.” As a result, accidents occurred more frequently than ever, and neither law nor public opinion did much to relieve the situation.

Prior to 1880, injured workmen had recourse to<sup>a</sup> the common law, but compensation<sup>1</sup> could be obtained only upon unquestionable proof that the employer was directly responsible. In other words, the “fellow-servant,” “contributory negligence,” and “assumption<sup>2</sup> of risk” principles governed absolutely. The principle of liability<sup>3</sup> was not incorporated<sup>4</sup> in statute law until 1880, and then only seven per cent of the injured or killed were compensated. In 1897 Lord Salisbury† introduced a Workmen’s Compensation Bill<sup>5</sup> providing that the employer was personally liable to pay a limited compensation for personal injury received by a workman in the course of employment, except it were due to his own “serious and willful misconduct.” The amount of compensation was determined either by mutual<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Reward for some loss or service. <sup>2</sup> Taking upon oneself. <sup>3</sup> Money obligation. <sup>4</sup> Embodied. <sup>5</sup> Proposed law. <sup>6</sup> Reciprocal, joint.



agreement, or by a private arbitrator<sup>1</sup> invited by mutual agreement, or by a judge of the county court. No compensation was given until disability from injury had lasted a fortnight. This law applied only to employees of railroads, docks, factories, storehouses, stone quarries and building trades, and was amended<sup>2</sup> in 1900 to cover common and agricultural laborers also. In 1904 a departmental committee of five was appointed to make recommendations<sup>3</sup> respecting the amendment and extension of the Act, and the result was the Act of 1906.

Under the new Act, any workman who is injured at his work during hours is entitled to compensation, regardless of circumstances, provided only that the employee's ability to earn full wages is impaired through at least one week, and provided also that injury is not occasioned by the employee's "serious and willful misconduct," unless it results in death or serious and permanent disability. The weekly payments do not exceed fifty per cent of his previous earnings (maximum \$5). If he dies, his dependents are entitled to<sup>b</sup> a compensation equivalent to his earnings for three years preceding the accident (minimum \$750, maximum \$1500) or a proportional amount to persons partially dependent. If he has no dependents, the employer, whether individual or corporation, is liable to pay a maximum of \$50 for medical and funeral expenses. Since this Act came into effect, the number of persons protected has increased from 7,000,000 to 13,000,000 or nearly

---

<sup>1</sup> Judge. <sup>2</sup> Altered. <sup>3</sup> Advised course of action.



fifty-four per cent. (Frankel & Dawson, *Workingmen's Insurance in Europe*, pp. 314-315.)

### OLD AGE INSURANCE IN GREAT BRITAIN

For about a century the matter of old age pensions<sup>1</sup> attracted the attention of British statesmen.<sup>2</sup> The passing of the German law of 1884 and of the Old Age Pensions Act of New Zealand in 1898 had great influence in England. In less than six months' time, Charles Booth, an eminent<sup>3</sup> sociologist,<sup>4</sup> and others held seven conferences in different places, and seven local committees were formed. In May 1899 the "National Committee of Organized Labor on Old Age Pensions" (Trade Unions, Trade Councils, Federations of these bodies, Friendly Societies, Coöperative Societies), or "National Pensions Committee" came into existence. In December, 1900, old age pensions acts were passed in New South Wales and in the colony of Victoria. But nothing substantial<sup>5</sup> was done at home until 1906 when eleven members of the National Pensions Committee secured seats in the lower house of the new Parliament.

Having won the support of the different Labor elements and Advanced Liberals, the members of the Committee caused a bill to be introduced in May 1907 providing that from January 1908 every wage earner over seventy-five years of age should receive five shillings a week, the age limit to descend to seventy

---

<sup>1</sup> Allowance in consideration of past services. <sup>2</sup> Those versed in the art of government. <sup>3</sup> Prominent. <sup>4</sup> One versed in the science of society. <sup>5</sup> True, real.

in 1909 and sixty-five in 1910, the government to pay ninety per cent, and workmen to contribute ten per cent, of the necessary amount. The bill was later brought in by Premier Asquith† in a revised form, and was passed in July 1908, by the overwhelming<sup>1</sup> vote of 417 to 29 in the Commons.

As the law stands to-day, every person, male or female, married or unmarried, over seventy years of age, who has been a British subject at least twenty years, and a British resident at least twelve years, and who has not been habitually<sup>2</sup> disinclined to work, is entitled to a pension, unless he or she enjoys an annual income in excess of<sup>c</sup> thirty-one pounds, ten shillings. By an amendment act of 1909 (in effect January 1, 1911), poor relief disqualifications<sup>3</sup> were rescinded<sup>4</sup>. No person may receive pension and poor relief simultaneously<sup>5</sup>. Pension is paid weekly through the post office, and the amount is proportional to one's income. There is no impairment<sup>6</sup> of civil rights because of receiving pensions. In March 1909 the total number of old age pensioners in the United Kingdom was about 650,000.

#### SICKNESS INSURANCE IN GREAT BRITAIN

According to Lloyd-George,† thirty per cent of the pauperism in Great Britain is attributable<sup>7</sup> to sickness alone, and chiefly "occupational<sup>8</sup> diseases."† There are fifty-three groups of poisons, and hundreds of branches of industry in which these are ever-present dangers.

---

<sup>1</sup> Covering completely. <sup>2</sup> Established by habit. <sup>3</sup> State of being deprived of a right or privilege, or of being debarred legally.  
<sup>4</sup> Made void, annulled. <sup>5</sup> At the same time. <sup>6</sup> Injury, reduction.  
<sup>7</sup> Chargeable. <sup>8</sup> Pertaining to work.



(Bulletin of Bureau of Labor, Nos. 86 and 100.) Besides poisons, heavy weights, forced exposure<sup>1</sup> to unfavorable climatic or weather conditions, over-exertion<sup>2</sup> of certain muscles of organs of sense, excessive<sup>3</sup> fatigue<sup>4</sup> due to excessive hours or excessive speed or both, are more or less responsible for workmen's sickness.

At first, a certain number of workers, usually in one trade, were united to help out the needy ones among themselves. Later, a system of insurance<sup>5</sup> grew up, and was made great use of by the "Friendly Societies" (originally guilds of the Middle Ages) which existed also in Belgium, France, Germany, and Italy, but had the greatest development in Great Britain. Before 1911, thirteen per cent of the English population belonged to registered Friendly Societies, and over seventy per cent of their total expenditure was used for sickness and medical aid.

The government did not take any decisive<sup>6</sup> step toward sickness insurance until the budget of 1910-1911 was drawn up and the financial problem was solved. The Lloyd-George Insurance Bill was introduced in May 1911 and consisted of two parts—insurance against sickness, and insurance against unemployment. Under this National Insurance Act (originally the Lloyd-George Insurance Bill), sickness insurance is made compulsory for all wage earners between sixteen and sixty-five, save such as can prove an income of as much as \$130 or more a year from property. It is

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of laying bare.    <sup>2</sup> Effort beyond one's usual strength.  
<sup>3</sup> Extreme, overmuch.    <sup>4</sup> Weariness.    <sup>5</sup> Act of protecting against accidents.    <sup>6</sup> Final, conclusive.



administered<sup>1</sup> by the state through "approved societies" not conducted for profit. No person may be insured in more than one society at a time. Every male worker pays 4d a week (female 3d), every employer 3d per week per employee, and the state contributes 2d. If the worker's weekly wage is under 15s, the employer pays proportionally more; if it does not exceed 9s, the employer pays 7d for each male, and 6d for each female employee, and the employees pay nothing. For ages between twenty-one and fifty, cash benefits amount to 10s a week for men, and 7s 6d for women, during the first twenty-six weeks, and 5s for all thereafter. For ages below twenty-one and over fifty, there are special rates. Benefit in all cases includes medical attendance, free treatment in sanatoria<sup>2</sup> provided by the state from special funds. In 1912, the number of persons insured was 14,000,000 and the total cost was about \$36,925,000.

### UNEMPLOYED INSURANCE IN GREAT BRITAIN

Unemployment exists either because the industrial competition is keen, or because the employment is seasonable, or because the work is inconstant,<sup>3</sup> or because efficiency is closely dependent upon the permanency of the employment. The development of unemployment insurance has been greatest where the trade unions are strongest, as in Great Britain and Germany. In the former, the one hundred principal trade unions in ten years (1898-1907) distributed nearly \$20,000,000 in

---

<sup>1</sup> Managed. <sup>2</sup> (plural of sanitarium)=health station. <sup>3</sup> Not constant or regular.



unemployment benefits. But almost the entire army of casual<sup>1</sup> laborers was outside the pale<sup>d</sup> of unionism and could not enjoy the benefit.

As early as 1892, the Local Government Board introduced the system of "distress works" — public work undertaken for the purpose of furnishing employment. In the winter of 1905, these works were carried on in nearly all the districts of London, as well as in seventy-four provincial towns, forty-one thousand men finding employment. In the same year, the Conservative government of Balfour† carried an "Unemployed Workmen Act" by whose terms the Local Government Board was authorized to establish "distress commissions" in the large cities and towns and to coöperate<sup>2</sup> with local authorities in finding employment for the idle, the government bearing 50 per cent of the cost, and the local communities the remainder. By 1910, the provisions of the Act were extended to seventy-five municipalities<sup>3</sup> and fourteen towns.

The National Insurance Act of 1911 was the first national system which was compulsory and required contributions from employers. Under it all laborers above eighteen engaged in all trades stipulated<sup>4</sup> are required to be insured against unemployment. The system is supported by joint contributions — each employee 2½d, each employer 2½d for each employee, and the state 1½d. The benefit provided is 7s a week through a maximum<sup>5</sup> period of fifteen weeks of unemployment.

---

<sup>1</sup> Occasional, not regular. <sup>2</sup> Work together. <sup>3</sup> Local government administered by the city representatives. <sup>4</sup> Agreed upon. <sup>5</sup> Greatest number attainable.



Each employee keeps a little insurance book in which insurance stamps are affixed by the employer and the state. Benefit is made void by participation in a strike or lockout,<sup>1</sup> by dismissal for misconduct, or by voluntary act of the employee without good cause. At the age of sixty (or fifty-five, if retiring at that time from his trade), every insured person who has contributed during as many as five hundred weeks is entitled to the return of all contributions which he has paid in, with compound interest at  $2\frac{1}{2}$  per cent, less any amount he may have received in benefits.

### CONCLUSION

Social insurance increases in importance almost at the same speed as the advancement of the world's civilization. New inventions have given rise to new accidents. Fresh economic conditions of the wage contract have accentuated<sup>2</sup> the economic disability<sup>3</sup> of old age. The multiplicity of factories has kept men, women, and children indoors, and subjected them to "occupational diseases." Machines, which do more work in less time, throw large numbers of workers temporarily out of employment. All these are really urging the adoption of social insurance in every country, and especially in China where the population is very large, and commercial and industrial possibilities very great.

The system of social insurance in Great Britain is by no means perfect. The same amount of compensation is given irrespective of<sup>e</sup> the number of dependent

---

<sup>1</sup> Closing of shop by employer usually to bring the workmen to terms. <sup>2</sup> Emphasized. <sup>3</sup> Weakness, incapacity.



survivors,<sup>1</sup> so that a young widow, perhaps remarrying in a few years, might get as much as a large family, consisting of widow, parents, and several small children. The age requirement is seventy, but a workman's productive power<sup>f</sup> begins to wane<sup>2</sup> long before the attainment to that age. Medical aid is not prompt, and injury or sickness is simply made the basis of a pension. There is still a large number of workmen who are excluded from the benefits. No insurance of widows and orphans or mothers' pension movement has yet been started. But even when all these are accomplished, the end is not yet attained. The ideal purpose of social insurance, as we have seen, is not only to give relief, however perfect it may be done, but also to prevent, and eventually to eradicate, poverty, hence accidents, invalidity, sickness, and unemployment. In other words, greater care should be taken in the management and working of machines; greater attention should be paid to health and sanitary conditions; industries should be highly developed and widely extended; a liberal education and sufficient training should be given to the general mass of the people. It is only by doing all these that a government may be justified in saying that it is fulfilling its duty in regard to social insurance.

— *The Chinese Students' Monthly*.

### QUESTIONS

1. Define insurance.
2. What are the characteristics of social insurance?
3. What are the chief aim and purpose of social insurance?

---

<sup>1</sup> Those who outlive. <sup>2</sup> Diminish.

4. Give the history of accident insurance in Great Britain.
5. What are the provisions made under the new Act of 1906.
6. What are the provisions made in the Old Age Pensions Act of 1907?
7. What amendment to this act was made in 1909?
8. What is meant by "occupational diseases"?
9. Explain the growth and method of the sickness insurance in Great Britain.
10. What are the usual causes of unemployment, and how did the unemployment insurance in Britain come into its present existence?
11. What are the provisions of the National Insurance Act of 1911?
12. Why should China adopt social insurance?
13. What are the present defects of the system of social insurance in Great Britain?
14. What are the possible improvements?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |     |    |   |
|-----|----|---|
| 294 | a. | <i>To have recourse to:</i> to resort to; to apply to . . . for aid.      |
| 295 | b. | <i>To be entitled to:</i> to have a claim to; to have the right to.       |
| 297 | c. | <i>In excess of:</i> over and above.                                      |
| 300 | d. | <i>Outside the pale:</i> outside of the circle.                           |
| 301 | e. | <i>Irrespective of:</i> regardless of.                                    |
| 302 | f. | <i>Productive power:</i> power or capacity for productive or useful work. |

## LESSON XXXII

### NEW YORK'S HEALTH INSURANCE PROJECT

#### *From an Editorial*

A favorite delusion<sup>1</sup> of the American people is that they are less conservative<sup>2</sup> than the citizens of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Deception. <sup>2</sup> Opposed to change.



Old World.† If just the reverse<sup>1</sup> were not the case, we should not, as we do, repeatedly behold great social reforms pass through their experimental stages in Europe and await adoption in this country until we are in a position<sup>a</sup> to profit by,<sup>b</sup> and avoid, the mistakes of our European cousins.

In that time, which now seems so long ago, when Great Britain was at peace abroad while convulsed<sup>2</sup> with several varieties of strife at home, one of her severe trials was getting adjusted to a far-reaching scheme<sup>c</sup> of compulsory sickness insurance,<sup>3</sup> or, as certain advocates of this form of philanthropy<sup>4</sup> prefer to call it, "health insurance," a term that emphasizes the scope it is designed to give to the methods of preventive medicine. The British Insurance Act, adopted at the close of 1911, went into operation<sup>d</sup> in January, 1913, after the almost unanimous opposition of the British medical profession had been effectually broken down. The lack of tact<sup>5</sup> on the part of the government and the misconceptions<sup>6</sup> on the part of the medical fraternity<sup>7</sup> which were jointly responsible for this period of strife, furnish an object lesson by which the legislators of the State of New York will be able to profit in dealing with<sup>e</sup> a bill introduced by Senator Ogden Mills on January 24. The *New York Times*, in an illuminating<sup>9</sup> discussion of this bill, says:

Although its promoters, members of the Social Insurance Committee of the American Association for

---

<sup>1</sup> That which is directly opposite. <sup>2</sup> Disturbed, agitated. <sup>3</sup> Act of assuring against loss or damage. <sup>4</sup> Love to mankind. <sup>5</sup> Nice perception or discernment. <sup>6</sup> Misunderstandings. <sup>7</sup> Brotherhood. <sup>8</sup> Lawgivers. <sup>9</sup> Making clear.



Labor Legislation, have been working on the project for more than three years and have distributed over 13,000 copies of the tentative<sup>1</sup> bill, the plan comes as a surprise to many people, and a wave of inquiry is sweeping through<sup>2</sup> associations of employers. The underwriters<sup>3</sup> of casualty policies<sup>4</sup> are also summoned in sudden council, and physicians whose fortunes might be affected are manifesting grave concern.<sup>5</sup>

"Paternalism," "socialism," are slogans<sup>6</sup> of the foes of this measure, which is bound to arouse discussion in every direction. It means in general terms an effort to introduce into the United States the compulsory<sup>7</sup> health insurance of Great Britain or the sickness insurance of Germany, so that every manual<sup>8</sup> worker and every wage earner whose income does not exceed \$100 a month will, when he becomes ill, have the services of a physician, attendance, and even medicine and surgical appliances;<sup>9</sup> and that for at least half a year, if his disability<sup>10</sup> continues, he will receive a weekly allowance<sup>11</sup> for the support of himself and his family. Death and funeral benefits are included.

The association which is pushing this project through the instrumentality of<sup>12</sup> a committee of earnest and influential men believes that if it becomes law in New York, all the other states of the Union<sup>13</sup> will ultimately adopt similar measures. Workmen's compensation acts now in force<sup>14</sup> in New York and elsewhere may be

---

<sup>1</sup> Experimental, for a trial.    <sup>2</sup> One who underwrites insurance policies on consideration of receiving a certain premium, per cent.  
<sup>3</sup> War cries.    <sup>4</sup> Obligatory.    <sup>5</sup> Working with the hand.    <sup>6</sup> Apparatus.  
<sup>7</sup> Weakness, incapacity.    <sup>8</sup> Sum granted as appropriate for any purpose.



regarded as paving the way<sup>k</sup> to this more sweeping<sup>1</sup> enactment.<sup>2</sup>

One-fifth of the expenses of maintaining the compulsory insurance plan is to be borne by the State, which would supervise its administration, and the balance is to be shared equally by employer and employee.

The committee has been busily engaged since 1912 in gathering information bearing on the proposed law, this investigation including first-hand observation of the workings of similar schemes in Great Britain and Germany.

The social aspect of bodily ills in this country escaped serious attention until statisticians<sup>1</sup> discovered that every one of the nation's 30,000,000 wage earners loses approximately nine days from illness every year, that the cost of their medical treatment is \$180,000,000 annually, and that \$500,000,000 expresses the resultant<sup>†</sup> loss in wages.

As wage studies reveal, says the committee, that the savings of many workingmen are inadequate<sup>5</sup> to meet the burden of medical care, it is necessary to prevent illness as much as possible, and to distribute the cost of it so that it will not produce poverty and dependence. The New York Charity Organization Society reports that seventy-five per cent of the applications made to it for aid are due to losses incurred by illness. It is the committee's belief that the burden can be greatly

---

<sup>1</sup> Thorough, drastic. <sup>2</sup> Law. <sup>3</sup> One who collects and classifies facts for statistics. <sup>4</sup> Resulting. <sup>5</sup> Insufficient, ineffective.

lightened and important economies effected by distributing the cost of human ills among workmen, employers, and the State. It maintains that its insurance system, seemingly radical at first glance, will reduce its own cost by preventing illness, and will thereby improve the health of the American people.

And this brings one to the status<sup>1</sup> of the medical profession. Will the fortunes of the doctors rise or fall under the proposed regime? In spite of the theoretical indorsement<sup>2</sup> which the scheme has received from various medical organizations, many general practitioners<sup>3</sup> are disturbed. The measure, if adopted, will, it is assumed, tend more and more to make the physician a servant of the State rather than the possessor of a comfortable private practice or possibly a precarious<sup>4</sup> one.

However, Dr. M. M. Davis of Boston, who has discussed the physician's point of view on this subject in the New York Medical Record, finds the experience of British medical men extremely encouraging.

Despite the fact that physicians felt that their calling would be imperiled,<sup>5</sup> Dr. Davis declares that their average income has increased from £750 a year to £2,000. This is due to the fact, he says, that, although the fees charged average £2 each, all are collected, because back of the organizations is the power of the state.

At the same time it is regarded as carrying the profession a step further into the realm of preventive

---

<sup>1</sup> State, condition. <sup>2</sup> Support, sanction. <sup>3</sup> One who practices law or medicine. <sup>4</sup> Uncertain. <sup>5</sup> Endangered.



medicine, now proclaimed as new, although the Chinese long ago decided that the physician should be paid for keeping man well rather than for ministering to him when sickness befell him. — *American Review of Reviews*.

### QUESTIONS

1. What is health insurance?
2. What was the cause of the opposition to this kind of scheme in Great Britain?
3. What are the object and plan of this health insurance project?
4. According to the scheme, who are responsible for the expenses of maintenance of compulsory insurance plan and in what proportion?
5. According to statistics, what is the cost of medical treatment of the wage earners in the U. S. A., and what is the loss in wages?
6. How is inadequacy of the savings of average workmen to meet the burden of medical care to be remedied?
7. How will the medical profession be affected by this scheme?
8. Is the scheme of preventive medicine a new one in the world?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |     |    |  |
|-----|----|--|
| 304 | a. | <i>To be in position:</i> to be able; to be in condition.                                  |
| ,,  | b. | <i>To profit by:</i> to benefit by; to take advantage of.                                  |
| ,,  | c. | <i>A far-reaching scheme:</i> a scheme producing wide results.                             |
| ,,  | d. | <i>To go into operation:</i> to become effective.  |
| ,,  | e. | <i>To deal with:</i> to treat in any manner; to have transaction of any kind with.         |
| 305 | f. | <i>To sweep through:</i> to rush forcibly.   |
| ,,  | g. | <i>Casualty policy:</i> policy of insurance issued against any misfortune due to accident. |

## Page

- 305 h. *To manifest grave concern:* to show great anxiety.  
 „ i. *Through the instrumentality of:* by the help of.  
 „ j. *In force:* in operation.  
 306 k. *To pave the way:* to facilitate or render easy, to prepare the way for.

## LESSON XXXIII

## CAPITAL AND LABOR: A FAIR DEAL

OTTO H. KAHN

*Noted American Financier*

The principle on which all concerned should deal with the labor question appears to me plain. It is the principle of the Golden Rule.† I think the formula<sup>1</sup> should be that, first, labor is entitled to a living wage; after that, capital is entitled to a living wage; what is left over belongs to both capital and labor, in such proportions as fairness and equity<sup>2</sup> and reason shall determine in all cases.

The application of that formula is, of course, complex and difficult, because there are so many different kinds of labor, there are so many different kinds of capital. Not infrequently the laborer and capitalist overlap<sup>3</sup> and merge<sup>4</sup> into one. You have skilled labor and unskilled labor and casual<sup>5</sup> labor; you have the small employer, the large individual employer, the corporate<sup>6</sup> employer, the inventor, the prospector,<sup>7</sup> etc. And then

---

<sup>1</sup> A prescribed form; established rule. <sup>2</sup> Equality of rights; justice.  
<sup>3</sup> Lie partly upon or by the side of something. <sup>4</sup> Cause to be swallowed up; sink into. <sup>5</sup> Occasional. <sup>6</sup> Collective. <sup>7</sup> One who looks for minerals or precious metals.



circumstances and conditions vary greatly, of course, in different parts of the country and in different industries.

It is impossible to measure by the same yardstick<sup>a</sup> everywhere, but the principle of fairness can be stated, the desire can be stated to do everything possible to bring about good feeling and good understanding between labor and capital, and willingly and freely to coöperate<sup>1</sup> so that labor shall receive its fair share in the fruits of industry, not only by way of a wage return but of an adequate<sup>2</sup> return also in those less tangible<sup>3</sup> things which make for contentment and happiness.

It seems to me that, in the main, right-thinking men of capital and of labor would concur<sup>4</sup> in the following points:

1. The workman is neither a machine nor a commodity.<sup>5</sup> He is a collaborator<sup>6</sup> with capital. (I do not use the word "partner," because partnership implies<sup>7</sup> sharing in the risks and losses of the business, which risks and losses labor does not and cannot be expected to share, except to a limited extent and indirectly.) He must be given an effective<sup>8</sup> voice in determining jointly with the employer the conditions under which he works, either through committees in each factory or other unit, or through labor unions, or through both. Individual capacity, industry, and ambition must receive encouragement and recognition. The employer's attitude should not be one of patronizing<sup>9</sup> or grudging<sup>10</sup> concession,<sup>11</sup> but of frank and willing recognition of the dignity of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Work together. <sup>2</sup> Sufficient, effective. <sup>3</sup> Palpable; perceptible to the touch. <sup>4</sup> Agree. <sup>5</sup> Goods. <sup>6</sup> Co-worker. <sup>7</sup> Involves, means. <sup>8</sup> Active, efficient. <sup>9</sup> Having the air of a superior. <sup>10</sup> Unwilling. <sup>11</sup> Act of yielding.



status<sup>1</sup> of the worker and of the consideration due to him in his feelings and viewpoints.<sup>2</sup>

Everything practicable must be done to infuse<sup>3</sup> interest and conscious purpose into his work and to diminish the sense of drudgery and monotony<sup>4</sup> of his daily task. The closest possible contact must be maintained between employer and employee. Arrangements for the adjustment of grievances must be provided which will work smoothly and instantaneously.<sup>5</sup> Every feasible<sup>6</sup> opportunity must be given to the workman to be informed as to the business of which he forms a part. He must not be deprived of his employment without valid<sup>7</sup> cause. For his own satisfaction and the good of the country every inducement<sup>8</sup> and facility<sup>9</sup> should be extended to him to become the owner of property.

Responsibility has nearly always a sobering<sup>10</sup> and usually a broadening effect. I believe it to be in the interest of labor and capital and the public at large that workmen should participate in industrial responsibilities to the greatest extent compatible<sup>11</sup> with the maintenance of needful order and system and the indispensable<sup>12</sup> unity of management. Therefore, wherever it is practicable and really desired by the employees themselves to have representation<sup>13</sup> on the Board of Direction, I think that should be conceded.<sup>14</sup> It would give them a better notion of the problems, complexities,<sup>15</sup> and cares which

---

<sup>1</sup> Position, condition. <sup>2</sup> Position from which any thing or question is seen or considered. <sup>3</sup> Inspire, instill. <sup>4</sup> Want of variation; irksome sameness. <sup>5</sup> Instantly, at once. <sup>6</sup> Practical; capable of being done. <sup>7</sup> Sound, good, justifiable. <sup>8</sup> Act of urging; consideration. <sup>9</sup> Aid, advantage. <sup>10</sup> Quieting, steadying. <sup>11</sup> Agreeable, consistent. <sup>12</sup> Necessary. <sup>13</sup> Body of men representing a society or community. <sup>14</sup> Yielded. <sup>15</sup> Intricacies.



the employer has to face. It would tend to allay<sup>1</sup> the suspicions and to remove the misconceptions which so frequently are the primary cause of trouble. The workmen would come to realize that capitalists are not, perhaps, quite as wise and deep as they are given credit for,<sup>b</sup> but on the other hand a good deal less grasping<sup>2</sup> and selfish than they are frequently believed to be, a good deal more decent<sup>3</sup> and well meaning<sup>c</sup> and made of the same human stuff as the worker, without the addition of either horns or claws or hoofs.<sup>d</sup>

2. The worker's living conditions must be made dignified and attractive to himself and his family. Nothing is of greater importance. To provide proper homes for the workers is one of the most urgent and elementary duties of the employer, or if he has not the necessary means, then it becomes the duty of the state.

3. The worker must be relieved of the dread of sickness, unemployment, and old age. It is utterly inadmissible<sup>4</sup> that because industry slackens,<sup>5</sup> or illness or old age befalls a worker, he and his family should therefore be condemned to suffering or to the dread of suffering. The community must find ways and means of seeing to it, by public works or otherwise, that any man fit and honestly desirous to do an honest day's work shall have an opportunity to earn a living. Those unable to work must be honorably protected. The only ones on whom a civilized community has a right to turn its back are those unwilling to work. . . .

---

<sup>1</sup> To soothe, calm.    <sup>2</sup> Seizing by force.    <sup>3</sup> Proper, reasonable.  
<sup>4</sup> Cannot be allowed.    <sup>5</sup> Becomes slow or dull.



4. The worker must receive a wage which not only permits him to keep body and soul together,<sup>e</sup> but to lay something by to take care of his wife and children, to have his share of the comforts, joys, and recreations of life, and to be encouraged in the practice and obtain the rewards of thrift.

5. Labor, on the other hand, must realize that high wages can only be maintained if high production is maintained. The restriction<sup>1</sup> of production is a sinister<sup>2</sup> and harmful fallacy,<sup>3</sup> most of all in its effects on labor.

The primary<sup>4</sup> cause of poverty is underproduction.<sup>5</sup> Furthermore, lessened production naturally makes for high costs. High wages accompanied by proportionately high cost of the essentials of living don't do the worker any good. And they do the rest of the community a great deal of harm. The welfare of the so-called middle classes—that is, the men and women living on moderate<sup>6</sup> incomes, the small shopkeeper, the average professional<sup>7</sup> man, the farmer, etc.—is just as important to the community as the welfare of the wage earner. If, through undue exactions,<sup>8</sup> through unfair use of his power, through inadequate<sup>9</sup> output,<sup>10</sup> the workman brings about a condition in which the pressure of high prices becomes intolerable to the middle classes, he will create a class animosity<sup>11</sup> against himself which is bound to be<sup>f</sup> of infinite harm to his legitimate<sup>12</sup> aspirations.<sup>13</sup> Precisely the same, of course, holds true of capital.

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of limiting. <sup>2</sup> Injurious, unlucky. <sup>3</sup> A misleading argument or idea. <sup>4</sup> Chief, principal. <sup>5</sup> Production of less than is the usual supply. <sup>6</sup> Frugal, not abundant. <sup>7</sup> Pertaining to profession, especially that of medicine and law. <sup>8</sup> Extortions. <sup>9</sup> Not sufficient. <sup>10</sup> That which is produced. <sup>11</sup> Violent hatred; active enmity. <sup>12</sup> Lawful, rightful. <sup>13</sup> Strong and high desires.



The advent<sup>1</sup> of the machine period in industry somewhat over a century ago brought about a fundamental and violent dislocation<sup>2</sup> of the relationship which had grown up through hundreds of years between employer and employee. The result has been a grave and long-continued maladjustment.<sup>3</sup> In consequence of it, for a long period in the past, it must, unfortunately, be admitted, labor did not secure a square deal,<sup>4</sup> and society failed to do anything like its full duty by labor. But more and more of recent years the conscience and thought of the world have awakened to a recognition of the rights of the working people. Much has been done of late to remedy that maladjustment, the origin of which dates back to the beginning of the nineteenth century. The process of rectification<sup>4</sup> has not yet been completed, but it is going on apace.<sup>5</sup> Meanwhile laboring men should take heed that, in their rightful resentment against former practices of exploitation<sup>6</sup> and in their determination to obtain the redress<sup>7</sup> of just grievances, they do not permit themselves to be misled by plausible fallacies or self-seeking agitators. They must not give credence,<sup>8</sup> for instance, to the absurd preachment<sup>8</sup> that practically all wealth other than that produced by the farmer is the product of the exertions<sup>9</sup> of the workingman.

There are, of course, a number of other factors that enter into the creation of wealth. Thus, the "directive faculty," the quality of leadership in thought and action,

---

<sup>1</sup> Coming, arrival. <sup>2</sup> A putting out of place. <sup>3</sup> Bad arrangement.  
<sup>4</sup> Act of correcting or setting right. <sup>5</sup> Fast, quickly. <sup>6</sup> Act of getting value out of. <sup>7</sup> Relief, remedy. <sup>8</sup> An idea proclaimed in public (sometimes used contemptuously). <sup>9</sup> Efforts.



is not only one absolutely needful in all organized<sup>1</sup> undertakings, great or small, but it becomes increasingly rare, and consequently increasingly more valuable as the object to which it addresses itself increases in size, complexity, and difficulty.

Let us take as an example the case of Mr. Henry Ford.† Through the organizing genius and enterprise of this absolutely self-made<sup>2</sup> man (not by monopoly,<sup>3</sup> but in keen competition), the automobile, instead of being a luxury of the few, has been brought within the reach of those of modest means.

The cost of the product has been vastly cheapened. The margin<sup>4</sup> of profit<sup>1</sup> on each automobile sold has been greatly diminished. Wages have been very largely increased, the living conditions of employees greatly improved. Work has been found for a great many more men than were employed before.

In other words, every single human factor<sup>5</sup> concerned in either production or consumption<sup>6</sup> has gained advantage. New wealth has been created at the expense of no one. It cannot be said that it was created by the workingman, except in the physical sense. It was not created by either monopoly or privilege. It was created mainly out of Mr. Ford's brain and at his risk.

By far the largest percentage of this new wealth goes to pay the wages of workingmen and other expenses of the business, but out of what is left Mr. Ford's share is, by common report, in excess of<sup>1</sup> \$1,000,000 a year.

---

<sup>1</sup> Brought to a system, scientific. <sup>2</sup> Achieved success through one's own talents, or exertion. <sup>3</sup> Exclusive power or right of trading. <sup>4</sup> (com.) Difference between the cost and selling price. <sup>5</sup> Agent or circumstance contributing to produce result. <sup>6</sup> Act of using up.



Did Mr. Ford earn \$1,000,000 in one year? If not, how much did he earn? By what scale would you measure the proportion due to him of the new wealth created mainly by his faculties?<sup>1</sup>

If he had not been allowed to earn the large sums which he did earn, how and where could he have found the means to enlarge and improve his factory so as to make possible an enterprise which immensely cheapened the product to the consumer and largely increased the wages to the workingman and the opportunity for employment? Is there any instance where communistic<sup>2</sup> or even merely coöperative undertakings have produced similar results? Is there any instance where governmental management has produced similar results? . . .

In a recently published, very able pamphlet entitled "Industrial Salvation," Miss Christabel Pankhurst,† the well-known English leader in the cause of woman suffrage, says:

"Certain Socialists,<sup>3</sup> who ought to know better, have falsely taught that the poverty or semi-poverty of the many is due to the luxurious living of the prosperous sections of the community. This is not the truth, and if, through all the years of Socialist preachings, the result of each year's industrial effort had been divided equally among the members of the community, there would have been no appreciable<sup>4</sup> increase of prosperity for any, and there would have been one dead level<sup>k</sup> of poverty for all."

---

<sup>1</sup> Talents, abilities.    <sup>2</sup> Relating to the doctrine of communism.

<sup>3</sup> Those who advocate socialism.    <sup>4</sup> Perceptible.

The way to progress is not to pull everybody down to a common level of mediocrity,<sup>1</sup> but to stimulate<sup>2</sup> individual effort and strive to raise the general level of well-being and opportunity.

It is not material success which should be abolished; it is poverty and justified discontent which should be abolished. We cannot abolish poverty by division, but only by multiplication.

It is not by the spoilation<sup>3</sup> of some, but by creating larger assets<sup>4</sup> and broader opportunity for all, that national well-being can and must be enhanced.<sup>5</sup>

I wonder how many people realize that if all incomes above \$10,000 were taken and distributed among those earning less than \$10,000, the result, as near as it is possible to figure it out, would be that the income of those receiving that distribution would be increased barely ten per cent!

And the result of any such division would be an immense loss in national productivity<sup>6</sup> by turning a powerful and fructifying<sup>7</sup> stream into a mass of rivulets, many of which would simply lose themselves in the sand.

I wonder how many people know that the frequent and loud assertion that the great bulk<sup>8</sup> of the wealth of the nation is held in the hands of a few persons is unfounded. The fact is, on the contrary, seven-eighths of our national income goes to those with incomes of \$5,000 or less, and but one eighth to those with incomes

---

<sup>1</sup> Quality of being ordinary. <sup>2</sup> Encourage. <sup>3</sup> Robbery, plundering.  
<sup>4</sup> Entire available property. <sup>5</sup> Increased. <sup>6</sup> Capacity for producing.  
<sup>7</sup> Capable of making fruitful. <sup>8</sup> Volume; the larger part.



above \$5,000. Moreover, those in receipt of incomes of \$5,000 or less pay little or no income tax, while those having large incomes are subjected<sup>1</sup> to very heavily progressive<sup>2</sup> income taxes.

We have often heard it said recently—it has become rather the fashion to say it—that the rulership of the world will henceforth belong to labor. I yield to no one in my respect and sympathy for labor or in my cordial and sincere support of its just claims. The structure<sup>3</sup> of our institutions<sup>4</sup> cannot stand unless the masses of workmen, farmers, indeed all large strata<sup>5</sup> of society, feel that under and by these institutions they are being given a square deal within the limits not of Utopia† but of what is sane, right, and practicable.

But the rulership of the world will and ought to belong to no one class. It will and ought to belong neither to labor nor to capital nor to any other class. It will, of right and in fact, belong to those of all classes who acquire title to it by talent, hard work, self-discipline,<sup>6</sup> character, and service.

He is no genuine friend or sound<sup>7</sup> counselor<sup>8</sup> of the people nor a true patriot who recklessly, calculatingly,<sup>9</sup> or ignorantly raises or encourages expectations which cannot or which ought not to be fulfilled.

We must deal with all these things with common sense, mutual trust, with respect for all, and with the aim of guiding our conduct by the standard of liberty, justice, and human sympathy. But we must rightly

---

<sup>1</sup> Caused to undergo. <sup>2</sup> (Income tax) Increasing regularly as the income increases. <sup>3</sup> That which is built. <sup>4</sup> Established or organized societies or corporations. <sup>5</sup> Layers, ranks. <sup>6</sup> Self-training. <sup>7</sup> Good, healthy. <sup>8</sup> Adviser. <sup>9</sup> With intention.



understand liberty. We must resolutely<sup>1</sup> oppose those who, in their impatient grasping for unattainable<sup>2</sup> perfection, would make of liberty a raging and destructive torrent instead of a majestic<sup>3</sup> and fertilizing<sup>4</sup> stream.

Liberty is not foolproof. For its beneficent<sup>5</sup> working it demands self-restraint,<sup>6</sup> a sane and clear recognition of the reality of things, of the practical and attainable, and a realization of the fact that there are laws of nature and economics which are immutable<sup>7</sup> and beyond our power to change.

Nothing in history is more pathetic<sup>8</sup> than the record of the instances when one or the other of the peoples of the world rejoicingly followed a new lead which it was promised and fondly believed would bring it to freedom and happiness, and then suddenly found itself, instead, on the old and only too well-trodden lane which goes through suffering and turmoil<sup>9</sup> to disillusionment<sup>10</sup> and reaction.<sup>11</sup>

I suppose most of us when we were twenty knew of a short cut<sup>1</sup> to the millennium<sup>12</sup> and were impatient, resentful, and rather contemptuous of those whose fossilized<sup>13</sup> prejudices or selfishness, as we regarded them, prevented that short cut from becoming the highroad of humanity.

Now that we are older, though we know that our eyes will not behold the millennium, we should still like the nearest possible approach to it, but we have

---

<sup>1</sup> With determination. <sup>2</sup> Incapable of being reached. <sup>3</sup> Grand.  
<sup>4</sup> Fruitful. <sup>5</sup> Doing good. <sup>6</sup> Self-control. <sup>7</sup> Unchangeable. <sup>8</sup> Piti-  
ful. <sup>9</sup> Disturbance. <sup>10</sup> State of being undeceived. <sup>11</sup> Counter  
tendency. <sup>12</sup> State of universal happiness. <sup>13</sup> Antiquated in  
opinion or customs.



learned that no short cut leads there and that anybody who claims to have found one is either an impostor<sup>1</sup> or self-deceived.

Among those wandering signposts to Utopia† we find and recognize certain recurrent types:

There are those who, in the fervor<sup>2</sup> of their world-improving mission, discover and proclaim certain cure-alls<sup>3</sup> for the ills of humanity which they fondly and honestly believe to be new and unfailing remedies, but which, as a matter of fact, are hoary<sup>4</sup> with age, having been tried on this old globe of ours at one time or another, in one of its parts or another, long ago—tried and found wanting,<sup>m</sup> and discarded<sup>5</sup> after sad disillusionment.

There are the spokesmen of sophomorphism<sup>6</sup> rampant,<sup>7</sup> strutting<sup>8</sup> about in the cloak of superior knowledge, mischievously and noisily, to the disturbance of quiet and orderly mental processes and sane progress.

There are the sentimental,<sup>9</sup> unseasoned,<sup>10</sup> intolerant, and cocksure<sup>11</sup> “advanced thinkers,” claiming leave to set the world by the ears and, with their strident<sup>12</sup> and ceaseless voices, to drown the views of those who are too busy doing to indulge in much talking.

There are the self-seeking demagogues<sup>13</sup> and various related types. And finally there are the preachers and devotees of liberty run amuck<sup>n</sup> who, in fanatical<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Deceiver. <sup>2</sup> Glowing ardor, warmth of feeling. <sup>3</sup> Universal remedy. <sup>4</sup> White. <sup>5</sup> Cast off as useless. <sup>6</sup> Subtle but false reasoning. <sup>7</sup> Unrestrained. <sup>8</sup> Walking with pride. <sup>9</sup> Having an excess of feeling. <sup>10</sup> Untimely. <sup>11</sup> Feeling quite certain, perfectly safe. <sup>12</sup> Shrill, grating. <sup>13</sup> Unprincipled mob orators or political leaders. <sup>14</sup> Overzealous, overenthusiastic.



obsession<sup>1</sup> would place a visionary and narrow class interest and a sloppy<sup>2</sup> internationalism above patriotism, and with whom class hatred and envy have become a ruling passion. They are perniciously,<sup>3</sup> ceaselessly, and vociferously<sup>4</sup> active, though constituting but a small minority<sup>5</sup> of the people and though every election and other test has proved, fortunately, that they are not representative of labor, either organized or unorganized.

The strident voices of the fomenters<sup>6</sup> of unrest do not cause me any serious apprehension, but we must not sit silently by, we must not look on inactively. Where there are grievances to redress, where there are wrongs existing, we must all aid in trying to right them to the best of our conscience and ability.

To the extent that social and economic institutions, however deep and ancient their roots, may be found to stand in the way of the highest achievable<sup>7</sup> level of social justice and the widest attainable extension of opportunity, welfare, and contentment, they will have to submit to change. And the less obstructive<sup>8</sup> and stubborn, and the more broad-minded, coöperative, sympathetic, and disinterested<sup>9</sup> those who preëminently<sup>10</sup> prospered under the old conditions will prove themselves in meeting the spirit of the new day and the reforms which it may justly call for, the better it will be both for them and for the community at large.

— *Vital Forces in Current Events.*

---

<sup>1</sup> State of being influenced to an unreasonable degree by some idea or emotion. <sup>2</sup> Slovenly, careless; lacking in virility. <sup>3</sup> Harmfully, mischievously. <sup>4</sup> Noisily, clamorously. <sup>5</sup> The smaller number. <sup>6</sup> Those who instigate or encourage (usually used in a bad sense). <sup>7</sup> Capable of being done. <sup>8</sup> Tending to block up or hinder. <sup>9</sup> Free from selfish motives. <sup>10</sup> Surpassingly.



## QUESTIONS

1. What is the formula suggested for solving the problem of labor and capital, and why is the practical application of such formula difficult?
2. State the points suggested which would help to give satisfaction to the laborers.
3. Give reasons why it is desirable to have labor representation on the board of directors.
4. What are the other important duties of the employers toward the employees? Give reasons why these are important and should be carried out.
5. What is the duty of the laborer toward his employer? And why?
6. What effect has the introduction of modern machinery in industry had upon the relationship between labor and capital, and how should laborers conduct themselves during the period of transition?
7. Illustrate the importance of the directive faculty in the creation of wealth.
8. Is Mr. Henry Ford justified in receiving his big income? Why?
9. Do you believe that it is a good policy to divide the results of industry equally among the members of the community? Why?
10. How can national well-being be increased?
11. What is the actual distribution of America's national wealth among the different classes of people?
12. To whom should the future rulership of the world really belong?
13. What should be our true attitude with regard to liberty?
14. Name the different types of so-called social reformers.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Page	
310	a. <i>To measure by the same yardstick:</i> to judge everyone equally.
312	b. <i>To give credit for:</i> to recognize one's merits; to believe.
„	c. <i>To be well meaning:</i> to be well intentioned.
„	d. <i>Horns, claws, and hoofs:</i> representing the forces of evil as personified by Satan.
313	e. <i>To keep body and soul together:</i> to keep alive.
„	f. <i>To be bound:</i> to be obliged.
314	g. <i>A square deal:</i> a just treatment.
„	h. <i>To give credence:</i> to believe.
315	i. <i>Margin of profit:</i> difference between the cost and selling prices.
„	j. <i>In excess of:</i> over and above.
316	k. <i>Dead level:</i> an unvarying plain; evenness.
319	l. <i>Short cut:</i> quick way.
320	m. <i>Tried and found wanting:</i> tried and found unsatisfactory; did not meet expectation.
„	n. <i>Run amuck:</i> rush out in a state of frenzy and attack everyone in the way.

## LESSON XXXIV

## THE DEMANDS OF LABOR

SAMUEL GOMPERS

*President American Federation of Labor*

The American labor movement will coöperate with all other agencies to help in this reconstruction<sup>1</sup> time. Our movement is not to destroy but to construct; but all may just as well understand now as at any other time that the advantages which the workers of America and of the allied<sup>2</sup> countries have gained, and which we hope to extend to the people even of the conquered countries, are not going to be taken away from us, and that we will resist to the uttermost any attempt to take them away.

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of building anew. <sup>2</sup> Related by treaty.



The principal danger is that we may at some time in the future revert<sup>1</sup> to the old conditions of unemployment. The continually increasing cost of living entails<sup>2</sup> the necessity of continually increasing wages, but a surplus in the labor market makes it difficult, if not impossible, for wages to keep pace with<sup>a</sup> the living cost. Intermittent<sup>3</sup> employment with low wages is one of the chief causes of poverty, with its accompanying misery and its social and personal demoralization.<sup>4</sup> Reasonable farsightedness in readjustment will obviate<sup>5</sup> a labor surplus. We have a right to demand, and we do demand, that such reasonable farsightedness be exercised. The American Federation of Labor expects governments—national, state, and local—to adopt every measure<sup>6b</sup> necessary to prevent unemployment. During the period of reconstruction every wage earner should be afforded the opportunity of suitable employment and an income and sustenance<sup>7</sup> sufficient to enable him, without the labor of mother and children, to maintain himself and family in health and comfort and to provide a competence<sup>8</sup> for old age with ample provision<sup>9</sup> for recreation<sup>10</sup> and good citizenship. Governments should (1) prepare and inaugurate<sup>11</sup> plans to build model homes for the wage earners; (2) establish a system of credits whereby the workers may borrow money for a long term of years at a low rate of interest to build their own homes; (3) encourage, protect, and extend credit to

---

<sup>1</sup> Return. <sup>2</sup> Involves. <sup>3</sup> Periodic; not continuous. <sup>4</sup> Degeneration; state of becoming worse. <sup>5</sup> Remove from out the way. <sup>6</sup> Means; step of a progressive policy. <sup>7</sup> Maintenance, support. <sup>8</sup> Sufficient supply of money. <sup>9</sup> Act of providing. <sup>10</sup> Amusement, sport. <sup>11</sup> Set in action, introduce.



voluntary, non-profit-making, and joint-tenancy associations;† (4) exempt<sup>1</sup> from taxation and grant other subsidies<sup>2</sup> for houses constructed for the occupancy of their owners; (5) relieve municipalities<sup>3</sup> from the restrictions preventing them from undertaking proper housing plans; (6) encourage and support the erection and maintenance of houses where workers may find lodging and nourishing food during the periods of unemployment.

Much talk has been made about preparing plans for the construction of public buildings, roads, and other public works in order to avoid unemployment. All such suggestions are good, in so far as these things are needed, and no farther. There can be no question, however, of the urgent, immediate need of great numbers of wholesome<sup>4</sup> houses at reasonable cost for working people. The environment<sup>5</sup> offered by many of the tenements<sup>6</sup> is unfit to surround the growing children of a free republic. The revolting<sup>7</sup> conditions in many tenement districts, without sufficient light, air, or play spaces, tend to produce persons unfit for citizenship. Squalor and almost unlivable conditions are still found in many houses of the workers whose compensation<sup>8</sup> is inadequate,<sup>9</sup> where opportunity to associate with their fellow workmen for their moral, intellectual, and industrial improvement is persistently and successfully denied. Such housing should not be permitted to exist.

The employment of public funds in the provision of homes for workers is a far better investment than

---

<sup>1</sup> To free, release from.    <sup>2</sup> Aids or grants from the government.  
<sup>3</sup> Districts administering local government.    <sup>4</sup> Sanitary.    <sup>5</sup> Surroundings.    <sup>6</sup> Houses built to be rented.    <sup>7</sup> Loathsome, disgusting.  
<sup>8</sup> Payment for service done.    <sup>9</sup> Insufficient.



large expenditures on ornamental<sup>1</sup> buildings and beautiful boulevards,<sup>2</sup> seldom, if ever, seen by the poor. If large expenditures of public money are needed to avoid unemployment, the construction of houses is of far greater public benefit, especially to the poor, promoting health, happiness, and good citizenship. Moreover, such investments have the added merit of returning to the public treasury without loss and even with gain.

There is developing very rapidly a public demand that every worker shall be provided with a decent, sanitary,<sup>3</sup> and comfortable home. The wage earners of America are deserving of this new conception of living and are entitled to no less. This, then, is the inspiration,<sup>4</sup> the motive of one of the ultimate objects of the American Federation of Labor.

The demand of the wage earners is not only for sanitary and fit houses to live in, but that a sufficient number of houses shall be available<sup>5</sup> so that they may be freed from the evil of high rents, overcrowding, and congestion.<sup>6</sup> The ordinary method of supplying houses, through their erection by private capital for investment and speculation,<sup>7</sup> has rarely, if ever, been adequate. Nearly all of our workmen's habitations are built on a system of exploitation.<sup>8</sup> Most of the houses built for the wage earners are built to sell. This system of exploitation does not permit of proper housing facilities<sup>9</sup> and adequate upkeep.

---

<sup>1</sup> Serving to beautify or adorn. <sup>2</sup> Broad avenues around the city.  
<sup>3</sup> Healthy, hygienic. <sup>4</sup> Influence which stimulates. <sup>5</sup> Capable of being used. <sup>6</sup> Overfullness. <sup>7</sup> Risky business venture for the sake of big profits. <sup>8</sup> Act of utilizing, or getting value out of. <sup>9</sup> That which makes for ease in performance.

The fact that there is danger of unemployment, a shortage of foodstuffs, and demoralizing congestion of population, while there are hundreds of millions of acres of agricultural, suburban,<sup>1</sup> and urban lands lying idle, should make a deeper impression upon public thought than it has heretofore done. We should no longer hesitate in forcing unused lands into use by exempting<sup>2</sup> all improvements from taxation and by placing a tax on nonproductive the same as on productive land. Regular employment, comfortable homes, necessities at reasonable cost, and an adequate income are urgent demands. Reconstruction will fail unless these conditions are attained.

To attain them, the workers must be assured that they are guaranteed<sup>3</sup> and encouraged in the exercise of their right to organize and associate with their fellow workmen in the trade unions and to deal collectively with employers through such representation of their unions as they may choose, for their improved economic and industrial conditions and relations.

Perhaps the following might be regarded as a summary of demands to be satisfied in the pending readjustment of conditions:

1. No wage reduction.
2. No lengthening of the working day.
3. Opportunity for suitable, regular, remunerative<sup>4</sup> employment.
4. A work day of not more than eight hours; a work week of not more than five and a half days.

---

<sup>1</sup> Pertaining to districts adjoining the city.      <sup>2</sup> Freeing from obligation.    <sup>3</sup> Protected, secured.    <sup>4</sup> Profitable.



5. Protection for women and children from overwork, underpay, and unsuitable employment.

6. Increased opportunity for both education and play for children.

7. The elimination<sup>1</sup> of private monopolies,<sup>2</sup> and protection from the extortions<sup>3</sup> of profiteers.<sup>4</sup>

8. The final disposition<sup>5</sup> of the railroads, telegraph, telephone, and cable systems to be determined by the consideration of the rights and interests of the whole people, rather than the special privileges and interests of a few.

9. Comfortable, sanitary homes and wholesome environment, rather than elaborate<sup>6</sup> improvements of no special benefit to the masses of the people.

10. Heavier taxation of idle lands, to the end that they may be used for the public good.

11. A government made more responsive<sup>7</sup> to the demands of justice and the common good by the adoption of initiative<sup>8</sup> and referendum<sup>9</sup> measures.

In a word, any and all measures shall be taken tending toward constant growth and development of the economic, industrial, political, social, and humane<sup>10</sup> conditions for the toilers, to make life the better worth living, to develop all that is best in the human being, and to make for the whole people a structure wherein

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of doing away with. <sup>2</sup> Exclusive privileges. <sup>3</sup> Act of getting by force. <sup>4</sup> Those who make undue profit at the expense of the public. <sup>5</sup> Disposal, arrangement. <sup>6</sup> Highly wrought; complex. <sup>7</sup> Inclined to respond. <sup>8</sup> Right or power to introduce a new measure or course of action. <sup>9</sup> Right to approve or reject by popular vote any measure of government. <sup>10</sup> Benevolent, kind.

each will vie with the other in the establishment of the highest and best concepts and ideals of the human family.

— *Vital Forces in Current Events.*

### QUESTIONS

1. What does the continually increased cost of living entail, and what makes it impossible for wages to keep pace with the cost of living?
2. What evils does intermittent employment with low wages produce, and what kind of readjustment should be made to prevent this condition?
3. State the specific demands made to the government on behalf of the laborers.
4. Would construction of public buildings, roads, and other public works, solve the labor question satisfactorily? Why?
5. How could the government best employ or invest public funds?
6. For what ultimate purposes is the American Federation of Labor working?
7. Why does not erection of houses by private capital satisfy the laborers?
8. What suggestion is offered in regard to utilizing unused lands?
9. Give the summary of the demands made by the Federation of Labor on behalf of labor?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- 324 a. *To keep pace with:* to keep up with; to progress equally.  
 „ b. *To adopt measures:* to devise ways and means.  
 326 c. *To be available:* to be at disposal.



## LESSON XXXV

## THE LABOR PROBLEM IN CHINA

C. P. CHOW

The problem of labor is not new, nor is it confined to China alone. England, Germany, America, and other nations had it and are still solving it. These nations have fully realized the fact that labor is an important element in the economic progress and industrial development of a nation; that nothing degenerates<sup>1</sup> from lack of use faster than the capacity<sup>2</sup> to work; and that the unemployed quickly sink into the class of unemployable. The employment of labor in an efficient way is a sure road to national prowess,<sup>3</sup> strength, and prosperity.

To some people the size of China's population, which is approximately 400,000,000, is her problem of labor; but this would be overlooking<sup>a</sup> one important factor, for China with a large population has also the large area of 4,278,352 square miles. Therefore, the labor problem of China is not a question of overpopulation, though the huge size of it necessarily enhances the difficulty in solving it. "Comparing total population with total area, China is far from being the most densely populated country in the world. That China is capable of supporting a much greater population is shown not only by the great extent of uncultivated land to which all travelers testify, but by the immense unworked mineral deposits which are known to exist there."

---

<sup>1</sup> Deteriorates, becomes worse. <sup>2</sup> Ability. <sup>3</sup> Valor, bravery.

The gross<sup>1</sup> illiteracy of the laborers and the masses, the antiquated<sup>2</sup> and out-of-date<sup>b</sup> methods and implements of agriculture and of industry, the concentration and the unequal distribution of her population and the like, are the things that come into the labor problem of China. These, more than anything else, have forced people to produce little at the cost of<sup>c</sup> excessive<sup>3</sup> energy and time. Labor under such conditions cannot but be of little value, and the lot of the laborers poor and miserable.

The unemployed constitute not a small class in China. The idlers in the tea houses, the paupers<sup>4</sup> on the streets, and the vagabonds<sup>5</sup> in the towns or cities are portions of the unemployed. With the coming in of the period of industrial revolution, which brings with it labor-saving devices and machines, and which China has yet to face,<sup>d</sup> great bodies of people will be thrown out of employment. This has been the experience of Western countries, and China should not fail to profit by them and to so adjust her forms or conditions of labor to meet the industrial revolution, that the evils brought about<sup>e</sup> by it might be mitigated<sup>6</sup> or reduced to the minimum,<sup>7</sup> if not entirely removed.

The welfare and prosperity of the laboring class having such a bearing on<sup>f</sup> the very life and progress of a nation, it is imperative<sup>8</sup> that the state should do her part in finding work for her people who are both able and willing to work. China should do and can do

---

<sup>1</sup> Out of all measure; shameful.    <sup>2</sup> Grown old, obsolete.    <sup>3</sup> Extreme, undue.    <sup>4</sup> Beggars.    <sup>5</sup> Tramps, wanderers.    <sup>6</sup> Softened, diminished.    <sup>7</sup> Least amount attainable.    <sup>8</sup> Very necessary.



many things which would go toward ameliorating<sup>1</sup> the hard conditions of her laboring millions. The following are but a few suggestions which would be of great service in solving the labor problem in China.

Emigration<sup>2</sup> and colonization<sup>3</sup> have helped England in solving her problem of surplus labor. Although this same opportunity is not open to China to-day, yet she has plenty of unoccupied or sparsely<sup>4</sup> settled lands to be colonized. China should encourage and assist the migration of her people to her western, northwestern, and northern territories, for "population is most scattered along the border provinces of Kansu, Szechwan, Yünnan, and Kuangsi." China has always been an agricultural country and the cultivation of those fertile lands will surely reward honest labor most liberally.

Afforestation would improve climate, protect mountain lands from denudation,<sup>5</sup> and increase the wealth of the country. China has neglected her forestry long enough, and it is high time<sup>6</sup> that she should stop, "Wholesale destruction has denuded a large part of China of its forests, and the country has now to import timber to satisfy its own needs." Rough, steep, and arid<sup>6</sup> lands which are abundant in China could and should be utilized for the planting of trees. Tree crop, though a new science, is no less profitable than any other crops. Afforestation<sup>7</sup> would give employment to a large number of people all the year round besides the advantages that have been mentioned. The example

---

<sup>1</sup> Improving. <sup>2</sup> Removing from one country to another. <sup>3</sup> Act of migrating to and settling in. <sup>4</sup> Thinly scattered. <sup>5</sup> Act of making bare. <sup>6</sup> Dry, barren. <sup>7</sup> Act of converting into forest.



of afforestation set up at Weihaiwei, Kiaochow, and Tongshan should be copied. The reclamation of waste lands should go hand in hand with<sup>b</sup> afforestation.

“Knowledge without industry is selfishness. Industry without knowledge is brutality.” A people like the Chinese, noted the world over for their industry and assiduity,<sup>1</sup> ought to have technical knowledge of modern industries. Ever since the East came into contact with<sup>1</sup> the West, the desire to use and possess new articles and foreign-made things has had a hold on<sup>1</sup> the Chinese. Without an opportunity to learn and acquire technical knowledge which is essential to any business man if he is going to succeed, how can China satisfy the wants of her people, not to say compete with foreign traders in the open markets of the world? Bearing in mind<sup>k</sup> that the commercial triumph, the greatness, and the efficiency<sup>2</sup> of Germany are the fruits of her system of education whereby everybody is given the opportunity to learn and practice technical and scientific knowledge, China would be wise to provide improved educational and technical training and to enable her people to learn and practice the same.

Effective labor exchanges and trade organizations can do a great deal in securing mobility<sup>3</sup> and adaptability<sup>4</sup> of labor to meet the present and ever-changing conditions of industry. They could aid in distributing workers properly, centralizing<sup>5</sup> demand and supply, bringing the jobless man and the manless job quickly together. Labor exchanges in Germany, the number

---

<sup>1</sup> Constant attention or application. <sup>2</sup> Effectiveness. <sup>3</sup> Capacity of being moved. <sup>4</sup> Suitability, fitness. <sup>5</sup> Concentrating.



of which is large, have shown to us what they can do for the working people; indeed German efficiency is in no small degree the result of their work and effort. What has worked well in Germany and other countries may properly have a trial in China.

A portion of the surplus labor can well be utilized and employed in the improvement of canals and inland waterways which have been long neglected and left dilapidated.<sup>1</sup> Facility in transportation is an important factor in the development of an industry. In fact, modern industrial development depends upon ease and facility of movement more than anything else. The want of good roads and the difficulty of water transportation have been an impediment<sup>2</sup> to industrial progress and the development of the natural resources in China.

A governmental policy of saving and shifting public work, so as to throw it on the market in bad seasons and years of depression,<sup>3</sup> might absorb the jobless crowd. The construction and building of public works in China, compared with that of Europe or America, may be considered as insignificant; and it would be no unwise policy for those in charge of national or public works to take into consideration the labor problem of the nation and to plan to do away with the unprecedented<sup>4</sup> rush for business often followed by depression or a sudden drop.

China's system of taxation is responsible to a great extent for the absence of large industrial or commercial enterprises in her land. Taxes both legal and illegal

---

<sup>1</sup> In a condition of decay.    <sup>2</sup> Obstacle.    <sup>3</sup> Reduction of business.  
<sup>4</sup> Without example, new.



have been exacted and levied upon any new industry by the local officials, so that people prefer to hoard<sup>1</sup> their money rather than to risk it in investment in industry. The likin† is especially a burden on industry; it not only takes away a large share of the profit which the business may yield, but it also makes business extremely hazardous<sup>2</sup> because of the delay which it entails.<sup>3</sup> A new system of taxation must be instituted<sup>4</sup> to take the place of the old. The new system of taxation must be such that it will encourage and boost<sup>5</sup> new business investment and industry. A rise of industry creates wealth for the country and gives employment to unemployed labor.

The appointment of a minister of labor is extremely desirable in order to deal with the problem of labor intelligently and successfully. Such an appointment is necessary because a definite department is now responsible for the whole problem; because the labor problem is a question of national importance and is altogether too big for any private person to handle; and because nothing short of<sup>1</sup> government action will afford much hope that the present labor problem in China can be successfully solved.

“It is the first duty of the state, as also its highest and truest interest, to set on foot<sup>m</sup> such constructive<sup>6</sup> reforms as will check the wholesale demoralization<sup>7</sup> of large sections of the working classes, and to restore to the people the assurance so long denied that honest work will carry with it a just and certain reward.”

—*The Chinese Students' Monthly.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Lay up, store away.    <sup>2</sup> Risky, dangerous.    <sup>3</sup> Involves.    <sup>4</sup> Established.    <sup>5</sup> Push up.    <sup>6</sup> Tending to build up.    <sup>7</sup> Degeneration or corruption, or undermining of the morals.



## QUESTIONS

1. What are the facts concerning labor that have been realized by the Western nations?
2. Is China's labor problem a question of overpopulation? Explain.
3. What are some of the true elements that come into the labor problem of China? And why?
4. Whom do you include among the unemployed class in China?
5. What is the effect of industrial revolution in Western countries?
6. In what way can emigration and colonization help to solve labor problems, and what are the strong reasons for encouraging emigration and colonization?
7. What are the advantages or benefits of afforestation to China? Give examples.
8. What are the special reasons why technical education should be encouraged?
9. Name the special benefits derived from effective labor exchanges and trade organizations.
10. How could our surplus population, which now either becomes soldiers or bandits, be profitably employed?

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- 330 a. *To overlook*: to leave out of consideration.
- 331 b. *Out-of-date*: old fashioned; no longer in vogue.
- „ c. *At the cost of*: at the expense of; at the sacrifice of.
- „ d. *To face*: to meet; to confront.
- „ e. *To bring about*: to cause, to produce.
- „ f. *To have bearing on*: to have relation to; to have an influence on.
- 332 g. *It is high time*: it can not be delayed any longer.
- 333 h. *Hand in hand with*: together with.

## Page

- 333 *i.* *To come into contact with:* to have intercourse with.  
 „ *j.* *To have a hold on:* to have strong power over.  
 „ *k.* *To bear in mind:* to remember, to keep in mind.  
 335 *l.* *Nothing short of:* by no other means but.  
 „ *m.* *To set on foot:* to put in motion; to start.

## LESSON XXXVI

## THE WAY TO PERMANENT PEACE

REAR-ADMIRAL F. E. CHADWICK, U. S. N.

There are many Peace Societies, both in our own country and elsewhere, persistently saying that war must cease, but all offer only ineffective<sup>1</sup> solutions<sup>2</sup> of the great question. They have been hammering away<sup>a</sup> with half measures<sup>3</sup> for some years, and some of them for many years, and, as if it were a travesty<sup>4</sup> upon their inefficiency, we have had a world-wide war upon us. All these societies are wrong in so far that they offer only a medicament<sup>5</sup> after the advent of trouble, and not a preventive. True hygiene is prevention, not cure.

It is almost axiomatic<sup>b</sup> that by far the greatest cause of war is the struggle for special commercial advantage. It is for this that Japan is occupying Manchuria and excluding the rest of us; that France took Algeria,<sup>†</sup> developed a colonial empire a third larger than the United States, and finally swallowed Morocco,<sup>†</sup> despite the Convention of Algeciras<sup>†</sup> (itself as solemn a treaty as that of 1839, which so many delight to harp upon<sup>c</sup>) and

---

<sup>1</sup> Without effect or result.    <sup>2</sup> Clearing up.    <sup>3</sup> Indefinite policy or plan.    <sup>4</sup> Burlesque translation or imitation.    <sup>5</sup> A healing agent; medicine.



in so doing developed by-products which made the world-wide war a certainty. But France is far from being alone. All have struggled for these special spheres of influence,<sup>d</sup> so that in these last thirty-odd years the lands of every race not up to<sup>e</sup> our ideals of efficiency have been taken without so much as a "by your leave"<sup>f</sup> to the occupants thereof or the rest of the nations. What may be called the commons of the world<sup>g</sup> have thus been inclosed by various nations, much as were, in times not long past, the commons of England. There were occasional "deals" between the Powers, but in the main<sup>h</sup> it was simple seizure by the stronger. It is thus we have the Philippines—purchased from a nominal<sup>i</sup> owner, it is true, but all the same purchased with a sword at his throat.<sup>j</sup> It is thus by seizure or conquest, mostly in the eighteenth century, that Great Britain holds twenty-seven per cent of the habitable lands of the world, and Russia another twenty per cent. Between the two they own nearly half the world. Is there not some arrangement which can satisfy them—and not them alone, but all nations seeking roads for commerce—without the accomplishment carrying with it control of races racially unlike their own? I think there is.

Elsewhere I have advocated,<sup>2</sup> as at least a great step in the prevention of war, the abolition of anything like efforts to establish special spheres of influence, and the taking of steps toward the internationalization<sup>3</sup> for trade purposes of all the regions seized since, say, 1880: in

---

<sup>1</sup> Not real; in name only. <sup>2</sup> Pleaded in favor of; supported by argument. <sup>3</sup> Act of internationalizing scopes of interest.



other words, to put all nations in these regions on an absolute<sup>1</sup> equality as to trade and exploitation.<sup>2</sup> This was accomplished for Morocco by the convention<sup>3</sup> between Germany and France, signed on November 4, 1911, by which complete equality of treatment was established, and not only that, but all disputes were to be settled by arbitration.<sup>4</sup> All this was done, be it said, while Mr. Lloyd George and the London Times† were talking war in the most inflammatory<sup>5</sup> way<sup>1</sup> over the Agadir incident.

Now what was done in Morocco, what exists in large degree in all British and German colonies, may and should, as a first step to universal peace, be applied by international arrangement to all the regions seized since 1880. We should thus have Manchuria, Mongolia, Madagascar, British, French, and German Africa (including Egypt, but excepting Algeria, Cape Colony, and Natal), the Philippines, Puerto Rico, etc., the whole amounting in area to more than twice the area of the United States, open to all nations on terms of equality as to trade. This arrangement would put an end to<sup>k</sup> rivalry for possession. For why trouble to administer a region in which there is complete freedom to trade?

Such arrangement (and let it be said again that it exists, or did exist in Morocco, and nominally at least in the Congo) would be a long step toward<sup>1</sup> general pacification.<sup>6</sup> But it would be only one step, though

---

<sup>1</sup> Perfect. <sup>2</sup> Act of exploiting, or utilizing. <sup>3</sup> Conference. <sup>4</sup> Settlement of a dispute by a person or persons chosen by the parties concerned or appointed under statutory authority, instead of by the judicial tribunal provided by law. <sup>5</sup> Tending to cause anger. <sup>6</sup> Act of making peace.



a great one. Sea-borne commerce should be enabled to go as far<sup>m</sup> as there is water to carry it, and this principle has been receiving gradual recognition now for many generations. There is no reason why the same right of way<sup>n</sup> to all sea-going vessels in all rivers and estuaries should not apply, as it now applies in the Chesapeake, the Kattegat, the Thames, and the Scheldt. Thus the Dardenelles† should be opened to the use of all nations as much as the Suez† and Panama canals. . . .

But there is still one more step, no doubt wild sounding<sup>o</sup> to many, which must come if we are to have world peace. It is the total abolition of the customhouse as a commerce preventer. When men can trade without let or hindrance<sup>p</sup> everywhere, just as Maine can trade with California, we shall have taken away all cause for war among civilized nations. There will remain, of course, cause for international difficulties, such, for example, as exist in backward states like Mexico to-day, but such difficulties will in time cease naturally through education and civilization.

In our own country, so typically<sup>1</sup> protective, we have established a free trade in all races of white men. There is no exclusion of Slav, Jew, Turk, Persian, Christian, or Mohammedan.\* In the nature of things<sup>q</sup> the sons of these men will in time be the husbands of our daughters; their daughters the wives of our sons. Certainly such a free receptivity<sup>2</sup> of people is much more drastic<sup>3</sup> free trade than the free receptivity of

---

<sup>1</sup> Representatively.      \* This article was written before the present immigration laws.      <sup>2</sup> State of being able to receive or take in.  
<sup>3</sup> Violent.

their manufactures. But whether so or not, the main thesis—that war is in a general sense always the result of unequal opportunity in trade—holds good,<sup>1</sup> and also that this inequality must be removed as a first step, the only real step, to anything like universal peace.

All logic is with the proposition.<sup>1</sup> All will grant that trade has always been and remains the great civilizer, the great missionary.<sup>2</sup> For trade, all roads, steamships, and railways exist; without it nations would have remained in darkest ignorance and savagery. Thus, being the great and beneficent<sup>3</sup> thing it is, the greatest lever in the uplift of mankind, the spreader of light and Christianity, it stands to reason<sup>4</sup> that it is the greatest of errors to put trammels<sup>4</sup> in its way.

Personally, I regard the proposition as absolutely sound<sup>5</sup> economically; but, putting this part of the question aside, a continuance of the present world policies<sup>6</sup> means a continuance of war. It is thus for the world to retain a specious<sup>7</sup> and, in the view of many, a mistaken policy born of greed, with a continuance of war, or accept a principle in agreement with the spirit of brotherhood, which is the basis of all religions, and which means peace. — *The American Review*.

### QUESTIONS

1. Name some of the well-known peace societies of the world?
2. What do you consider the true cause of war?

---

<sup>1</sup> Statement, setting forth of facts. <sup>2</sup> One sent on a mission.  
<sup>3</sup> Bringing benefit, good. <sup>4</sup> Obstacles. <sup>5</sup> Healthy, sane. <sup>6</sup> Systems or methods. <sup>7</sup> Apparently right but not so in reality.



3. What is the Convention of Algeciras?
4. What is meant by "spheres of influence"?
5. What is the plan advocated by the author for the prevention of war? Has there been any precedent for his advocacy?
6. What are the reasons put forth by the author for the internationalization of regions seized by the Powers?
7. What about the waterways of the world?
8. What reason is given for the abolition of the custom-house? Wherein lies the difficulty in its carrying out?
9. Why is trade a great civilizer of the world?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- 337 a. *To hammer away*: to act, talk, or advocate constantly.  
 „ b. *It is axiomatic*: it is proverbial.  
 „ c. *To harp upon*: to repeat over and over again; dwell tediously upon.
- 338 d. *Spheres of influence*: a claimed or recognized area for political or commercial purposes.  
 „ e. *Not up to*: not reaching the standard of.  
 „ f. *By your leave*: with your permission.  
 „ g. *The commons of the world*: places free to all nationalities.  
 „ h. *In the main*: as a whole, speaking in general.  
 „ i. *With a sword at one's throat*: under forcible and violent threat.
- 339 j. *In an inflammatory way*: in a manner producing angry excitement.  
 „ k. *Put an end to*: to put a stop to.  
 „ l. *A long step towards*: a big advance towards.
- 340 m. *To go far*: to help much.  
 „ n. *Right of way*: freedom of passage.  
 „ o. *Wild-sounding*: having no practical value; not realizable.  
 „ p. *Without let or hindrance*: freely; without restriction.  
 „ q. *In the nature of things*: as conditions are constituted.
- 341 r. *To hold good*: to be applicable.  
 „ s. *It stands to reason*: it is reasonable to expect.  
 „ t. *To be sound*: to be whole or true.

## LESSON XXXVII

## PEACE THROUGH DEMOCRACY

ELIHU ROOT

*Secretary of State under President Roosevelt, U. S. A.*

The progress of democracy is destroying the type of government which has shown itself incapable<sup>1</sup> of maintaining respect for law and justice and resisting the temptations of ambition, and is substituting a new form of government, which in its nature is incapable of proceeding by the same methods, and necessarily responds to different motives and pursues different objects from the old autocratic<sup>2</sup> offenders. Only when that task has been substantially<sup>3</sup> accomplished will the advocates of law among nations be free from the inheritance<sup>4</sup> of former failure. There will then be a new field open for a new trial, doubtless full of difficulties of its own, but of fair hope and possibilities of success.

Self-governing democracies are, indeed, liable<sup>5</sup> to commit great wrongs. The peoples who govern themselves frequently misunderstand their international<sup>6</sup> rights and ignore their international duties. They are often swayed<sup>7</sup> by prejudice<sup>8</sup> and blinded by passion. They are swift to decide in their own favor the most difficult questions upon which they are totally ignorant. They are apt to applaud<sup>9</sup> the jingo<sup>10</sup> politician, who

---

<sup>1</sup> Unable. <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to absolute power. <sup>3</sup> Really. <sup>4</sup> Heritage; that which is handed down from father to son. <sup>5</sup> Not incapable of (making mistakes). <sup>6</sup> Between or among nations. <sup>7</sup> Influenced, governed. <sup>8</sup> Prejudgment, bias. <sup>9</sup> Praise, approve. <sup>10</sup> A statesman who favors an aggressive, domineering policy in foreign affairs.



courts<sup>1</sup> popularity by public insult to a friendly people, and to condemn the statesman<sup>2</sup> who modifies extreme demands through the concessions required by just consideration for the rights of others. All these faults, however, are open and known to the whole world. The opinions and motives from which they proceed, the real causes of error, can be reached by reason, by appeal to better instincts,<sup>3</sup> by public discussion, by the ascertainment<sup>4</sup> and dissemination<sup>5</sup> of the true facts.

There are some necessary features of democratic self-government which tend towards the progressive reduction of tendencies to international wrongdoing. One is that democracies are absolutely dependent for their existence upon the preservation of law. Autocracies<sup>6</sup> can give commands and enforce them. Rules of action are a convenience, not a necessity for them. On the other hand, the only atmosphere in which a democracy can live between the danger of autocracy on one side and the danger of anarchy<sup>7</sup> on the other is the atmosphere of law. Respect for law is the essential condition of its existence; and as in a democracy the law is an expression of the people's own will, self-respect and personal pride and patriotism demand its observance. An essential distinction between democracy and autocracy is that while the government of an autocracy is superior to the law, the government of a democracy is subject to the law.

---

<sup>1</sup> Invites, woos. <sup>2</sup> One versed in the art of government. <sup>3</sup> Impulses. <sup>4</sup> Act of making sure of. <sup>5</sup> Act of diffusing or propagating. <sup>6</sup> Supreme, unlimited authorities. <sup>7</sup> State of society where there is no law or supreme power.



The conception of an international law binding upon the governments of the world is, therefore, natural to the people of a democracy, and any violation<sup>1</sup> of that law which they themselves have joined in prescribing<sup>2</sup> is received with disapproval,<sup>3</sup> if not with resentment.<sup>4</sup> This is well illustrated by the attitude of the people of the separate states of the American Union toward the decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States passing upon the exercise of power by state governments. Physical force has never been used to compel conformity<sup>5</sup> to those decisions. Yet the democratic people of the United States have answered Jefferson's† contemptuous remark, "John Marshall has made his decision; now let him enforce it." The answer is that it is the will of self-governed democracy to obey the law which it has itself established, and the decisions of the Great Tribunal<sup>6</sup> which declares the law controlling state action will be accepted and observed by common consent and enforced by the power of public opinion.

Another necessary feature of democratic government is that the exercise of the power of popular self-government is a continual training of all citizens in the very qualities which are necessary for the maintenance of law between nations. Democratic government cannot be carried on except by a people who have opportunities for discussing questions of right and wrong, of interest, and of possible consequences, who have kindly consideration for opposing opinions and a tolerant<sup>7</sup> attitude<sup>8</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of infringing or breaking (law). <sup>2</sup> Dictating, directing.  
<sup>3</sup> Disapprobation, dislike. <sup>4</sup> Displeasure. <sup>5</sup> Agreement. <sup>6</sup> The seat of a judge. <sup>7</sup> Forbearing, indulgent. <sup>8</sup> Disposition.



towards those who differ. The longer a democracy preserves itself through the exercise of these qualities, the better adapted it is to apply the same methods in the conduct of its international business, and the result is a continually increasing certainty that international law will be observed in a community of democratic nations.

The most important difference, however, between the two forms of government is that democracies are incapable of holding or executing<sup>1</sup> those sinister<sup>2</sup> policies of ambition which are beyond the reach<sup>a</sup> of argument and the control of law. A democracy cannot hold such policies because the open and public avowal<sup>3</sup> and discussion which must precede<sup>4</sup> their adoption by a democracy is destructive of them; and it cannot execute such policies because it uniformly lacks the kind of disciplined efficiency necessary to diplomatic and military affirmatives.<sup>5</sup>

This characteristic of popular governments is well illustrated by the hundred years of peace which we are all rather proud of preserving throughout the three thousand miles of boundary between Canada and the United States without fortifications<sup>6</sup> or ships of war or armies. There have been many occasions when the tempers of the men of either side of the line were sorely tried.<sup>b</sup> The disputes regarding the Northeastern Boundary, the Oregon† Boundary, the Alaska† Boundary, were acute; the affair of the Caroline of the Niagara

---

<sup>1</sup> Performing, enacting. <sup>2</sup> Injurious, evil. <sup>3</sup> A frank declaration.  
<sup>4</sup> Come before. <sup>5</sup> Those which affirm. <sup>6</sup> Fortresses.



River, the Fenian Raid† upon Lake Champlain,† the enforcement of the fisheries regulations, were exasperating<sup>1</sup> and serious, but upon neither side of the boundary did democracy harbor<sup>2</sup> those sinister designs of aggrandizement<sup>3</sup> and ambition which have characterized the autocratic governments of the world. On neither side was there suspicion of any such designs in the democracy across the border. The purpose of each nation was merely to stand up for its own rights, and so reason has always controlled, and every question has been settled by fair agreement or by arbitral<sup>4</sup> decision; and, finally, for the past eight years a permanent International Commission<sup>5</sup> with judicial<sup>6</sup> powers has disposed of<sup>c</sup> the controversies<sup>7</sup> arising between the citizens of the two countries along the border as unobtrusively<sup>8</sup> and naturally as if the questions arose between citizens of Maryland† and Virginia.† Such has been the course of events, not because of any great design of farseeing plan, but because it is the natural working of democratic government.

The incapacity<sup>9</sup> of democracies to maintain policies of aggression<sup>10</sup> may be fairly inferred<sup>11</sup> from the extreme reluctance<sup>12</sup> with which they incur<sup>13</sup> the expense and make the sacrifices necessary for defense. Cherishing<sup>14</sup> no secret designs of aggression themselves, they find it difficult to believe in the existence of such designs<sup>15</sup> on

---

<sup>1</sup> Provoking, irritating. <sup>2</sup> (v) Cherish, entertain. <sup>3</sup> Act of increasing or enlarging honor, wealth, etc. <sup>4</sup> Pertaining to arbitration. <sup>5</sup> A company of persons joined in the performance of some duty. <sup>6</sup> Pertaining to the judiciary. <sup>7</sup> Disputes, quarrels. <sup>8</sup> Not thrusting oneself forward. <sup>9</sup> Inability. <sup>10</sup> Encroachment, attack. <sup>11</sup> Concluded; reasoned out. <sup>12</sup> Unwillingness. <sup>13</sup> To voluntarily make oneself accountable for. <sup>14</sup> Entertaining. <sup>15</sup> Schemes.



the part of other nations. Only imminent<sup>1</sup> and deadly peril awakens them to activity. It was this obstinate confidence of the peaceable intentions of all mankind which met Lord Roberts (honored, trusted, and beloved as he was) when long before the Great War he vainly sought to awaken the people of England to the danger that he saw so plainly in Germany's stupendous<sup>2</sup> preparation for conquest. It is well known that when the war came, France was almost upon the verge<sup>3</sup> of<sup>d</sup> diminishing her army by a reduction in the years of service. In our own country a great people, virile,<sup>4</sup> fearless, and loyal, have remained indifferent to all the voices crying in the wilderness<sup>e</sup> for preparation, because the American people could not be made to believe that anything was going to happen inconsistent with the existence everywhere of those peaceful purposes of which they themselves were conscious.

— *Vital Forces in Current Events.*

### QUESTIONS

1. What type of government does democracy tend to destroy?
2. What are the mistakes to which democracies are liable, and can these be remedied?
3. What is the essential difference between democracy and autocracy?
4. How is the true conception of international law best illustrated?
5. What should be the qualifications of the people of a democratic government?

---

<sup>1</sup> Threatening; near at hand. <sup>2</sup> Astonishing, wonderful. <sup>3</sup> Border, brink. <sup>4</sup> Forceful, masterful.

6. Why cannot a democratic government hold or execute sinister policies of ambition which are beyond the reach of argument or control of law?
7. How may the characteristics of a democratic government be best illustrated?
8. Give reasons why democracy is often reluctant to pursue a policy of aggression.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Page

- 346 a. *Beyond the reach*: outside of the power.  
 „ b. *Sorely tried*: greatly vexed.  
 347 c. *Disposed of*: determined the fate of; get rid of.  
 348 d. *On the verge of*: near to, bordering on.  
 „ e. *Voice crying in the wilderness*: unheeded warning.

## LESSON XXXVIII

### THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS

GENERAL JAN. C. SMUTS

*Premier of the Union of South Africa*

During the late war a great deal of attention was given to the idea of a league of nations as a means of preventing future wars. The discussion of the subject has proceeded almost entirely from that one point of view, and as most people are rather skeptical<sup>1</sup> of the possibility of preventing wars altogether, the league has only too often been looked upon as Utopian,<sup>2</sup> as an impracticable<sup>3</sup> ideal not likely to be realized while human nature remains what it is. Quite recently the

---

<sup>1</sup> Doubtful. <sup>2</sup> Ideal, fanciful. <sup>3</sup> Unworkable.



practice of the Allies<sup>1</sup> in controlling and rationing<sup>2</sup> food, shipping, coal, munitions,<sup>3</sup> etc. for common purposes through the machinery of interallied councils has led to the idea that in future a league of nations might be similarly used for the common economic needs of the nations belonging to the league at any rate, for the control of articles of food or raw materials or transport in respect of<sup>a</sup> which there will be a shortage. In other words, the economic functions of the league would not be confined to<sup>b</sup> the prevention of wars or the punishment of an unauthorized<sup>4</sup> belligerent,<sup>5</sup> but would be extended to the domain of ordinary peaceful intercourse between the members of the league. And it was especially argued<sup>6</sup> that during the period of economic reconstruction following the war, when there would be a shortage of several essential articles, the league would be the proper authority for rationing states in respect of such articles. That, generally speaking, was the utmost extent to which the idea of the League of Nations was thought to be applicable.<sup>7</sup>

An attempt will be made in this sketch<sup>8</sup> to give an essential extension to the functions of the league; indeed, to look upon the league from a very different point of view<sup>c</sup>—to view it not only as a possible means for preventing future wars, but much more as a great organ of the ordinary peaceful life of civilization, as the foundation of the new international system which

---

<sup>1</sup> Those united together by treaty or league. <sup>2</sup> Allowing only a certain portion of provisions to each person in the country, as is done in the army or navy. <sup>3</sup> Materials used in war. <sup>4</sup> Not sanctioned. <sup>5</sup> (n) A nation or state engaged in warfare. <sup>6</sup> Debated or discussed. <sup>7</sup> Capable of being made use of. <sup>8</sup> (n) Outline.



will be erected on the ruins of this war, and as the starting point from which the peace arrangements of the forthcoming\* conference should be made. Such an orientation<sup>1</sup> of the idea seems to me necessary if the league is to become a permanent part of our international machinery. It is not sufficient for the league merely to be a sort of *deus ex machina*,<sup>d</sup> called in very grave emergencies<sup>2</sup> when the specter of war appears; if it is to last, it must be much more. It must become part and parcel<sup>e</sup> of the common international life of states; it must be an ever-visible,<sup>3</sup> living, working organ of the polity<sup>4</sup> of civilization. It must function so strongly in the ordinary peaceful intercourse of states that it becomes irresistible<sup>5</sup> in their disputes;<sup>6</sup> its peace activity must be the foundation and guarantee of its war power. How would it be possible to build the league so closely into the fabric<sup>7</sup> of our international system?<sup>8</sup>

I would put the position broadly as follows: The process<sup>9</sup> of civilization has always been towards the League of Nations. The grouping or fusion<sup>10</sup> of tribes into a national state is a case in point. But the political movement has often gone beyond that. The national state has too often been the exception. Nations in their march to power tend to pass the purely national bounds;<sup>11</sup> hence arise the empires which embrace various nations, sometimes related in blood and

---

<sup>1</sup> Adjustment to ascertained principles. <sup>2</sup> Unforeseen occurrences. <sup>3</sup> Ever to be seen. <sup>4</sup> Policy. <sup>5</sup> That can not be opposed. <sup>6</sup> Debates, arguments. <sup>7</sup> Structure of anything. <sup>8</sup> Plan, regular method, or order. <sup>9</sup> Method of procedure. <sup>10</sup> Act of uniting or blending. <sup>11</sup> Limits.

\* The Versailles Conference is referred to here.



institutions, sometimes, again, different in race and hostile<sup>1</sup> in temperament. In a rudimentary way all such composite<sup>2</sup> empires of the past were leagues of nations, keeping the peace among the constituent<sup>3</sup> nations, but unfortunately doing so not on the basis of freedom but of repression.<sup>4</sup> Usually one dominant nation in the group overcame, coerced,<sup>5</sup> and kept the rest under. The principle of nationality became overstrained<sup>6</sup> and overdeveloped, and nourished itself by exploiting other, weaker nationalities. Nationality overgrown became imperialism,<sup>7</sup> and the empire led a troubled existence on the ruin of the freedom of its constituent nations. That was the evil of the system; but with however much friction<sup>8</sup> and oppression,<sup>9</sup> the peace was usually kept among the nations falling within the empire. These empires have all broken down, and today the British Commonwealth of Nations remains the only embryo<sup>10</sup> league of nations because it is based on the true principles of national freedom and political decentralization.<sup>11</sup>

Such was the political system of modern Europe right up to the early decades of the twentieth century. The nations of continental<sup>12</sup> Europe were mostly grouped into certain empires which were small leagues of nations, keeping the peace among their constituents and incidentally robbing them of their liberties.

---

<sup>1</sup> Unfriendly. <sup>2</sup> Compounded; made up of distinct elements or parts. <sup>3</sup> Serving to form or make up. <sup>4</sup> Act of subduing or curbing. <sup>5</sup> Forced, compelled. <sup>6</sup> Strained or stretched too much. <sup>7</sup> Spirit of empire. <sup>8</sup> Disagreement. <sup>9</sup> Tyranny. <sup>10</sup> First rudiments of an organism. <sup>11</sup> Act of distributing power; state of being decentralized. <sup>12</sup> Belonging to the continent or mainland.



Leaving aside France and Italy as national states, Russia, Austria, and Turkey were composite empires embracing the most heterogeneous<sup>1</sup> races and peoples, while the German Empire was predominantly<sup>2</sup> national, with certain minor accretions<sup>3</sup> from other races. The war has wrought a fundamental change and recast<sup>4</sup> the political map of Europe. Three of these empires have already disappeared, while Germany, even if she survives the storms of the coming days, will certainly lose her subject races of non-German blood.

The attempt to form empires or leagues of nations on the basis of inequality and the bondage<sup>5</sup> and oppression of the smaller national units<sup>6</sup> has failed, and the work has to be done all over again on a new basis and an enormous scale. The vast elemental<sup>7</sup> forces liberated<sup>8</sup> by this war, even more than the war itself, have been responsible for this great change. In the place of the great empires we find the map of Europe now dotted with small nations, embryo states, derelict<sup>9</sup> territories. Europe has been reduced to its original atoms.<sup>10</sup> For the moment its political structure, the costly result of so many centuries of effort, has disappeared. But that state of affairs must be looked upon as temporary.<sup>11</sup> The creative process in the political movement of humanity cannot be paralyzed;<sup>12</sup> the materials lie ready for a new reconstructive task, to which, let us hope, the courage and genius of Western civilization will prove

---

<sup>1</sup> Differing in kind. <sup>2</sup> Overwhelmingly. <sup>3</sup> Increases by natural growth. <sup>4</sup> Reformed. <sup>5</sup> Slavery. <sup>6</sup> Single things or persons. <sup>7</sup> Pertaining to, or consisting of elements. <sup>8</sup> Set at liberty; disengaged. <sup>9</sup> Abandoned, forsaken. <sup>10</sup> Ultimate particles. <sup>11</sup> Not permanent. <sup>12</sup> Destroyed in energy.



equal.<sup>1</sup> Adapting the great lines of Browning, one may describe Europe as lapsing<sup>1</sup> into

That sad, obscure,<sup>2</sup> anarchic<sup>3</sup> state  
Where God unmakes, but to remake the world  
He else made first in vain, which must not be.

The question is: What new political form shall be given to these elements of our European civilization? On the answer to that question depends the future of Europe and of the world. My broad contention<sup>4</sup> is that the smaller, embryonic, unsuccessful leagues of nations have been swept away, not to leave an empty house for national individualism<sup>5</sup> or anarchy but for a larger and better league of nations. Europe is being liquidated,<sup>6</sup> and the league of nations must be the heir to this great estate. The peoples left behind by the decomposition<sup>7</sup> of Russia, Austria, and Turkey are mostly untrained politically; many of them are either incapable of or deficient<sup>8</sup> in power of self-government; they are mostly destitute<sup>9</sup> and will require much nursing towards economic and political independence. If there is going to be a scramble<sup>10</sup> among the victors for this loot,<sup>11</sup> the future of Europe must, indeed, be despaired of. The application of the spoils system at this most solemn juncture<sup>12</sup> in the history of the world, a repartition<sup>13</sup> of Europe at a moment when Europe is bleeding at every pore as a result of partitions less than half a century

---

<sup>1</sup> Sliding or slipping. <sup>2</sup> Darksome, unknown. <sup>3</sup> Disorderly; characterized by lack of government. <sup>4</sup> Point in argument. <sup>5</sup> Selfishness. <sup>6</sup> To determine the precise amount of indebtedness. <sup>7</sup> Disintegration. <sup>8</sup> Lacking. <sup>9</sup> Needy; very poor. <sup>10</sup> (n) A greedy struggle for something. <sup>11</sup> (n) Plunder, booty. <sup>12</sup> Point of time; crisis. <sup>13</sup> Act of redividing.

old, would, indeed, be incorrigible<sup>1</sup> madness on the part of rulers and enough to drive the torn and broken peoples of the world to that despair of the state which is the motive<sup>2</sup> power behind Russian bolshevism. Surely the only statesmanlike course is to make the League of Nations the reversionary<sup>3</sup> in the broadest sense of these empires. In this debacle<sup>4</sup> of the old Europe, the League of Nations is no longer an outsider or stranger, but the natural master of the house. It becomes naturally and obviously the solvent<sup>5</sup> for a problem which no other means will solve. — *Vital Forces in Current Events.*

### QUESTIONS

1. Why has the League of Nations been generally regarded as an impracticable idea?
2. What has led to the idea of a future league of nations? And what are the functions which it is expected to carry out?
3. What is the extension program proposed to the original function of the league? And why?
4. Prove that the process of civilization tends toward the League of Nations.
5. In what way is the aim of the old type league of nations different from that of the present one, and what are the evils of the old system?
6. Name those countries which embraced other races within their empires.

---

<sup>1</sup> Incapable of being corrected or amended. <sup>2</sup> Causing motion; having power to move. <sup>3</sup> Involving a reversion. <sup>4</sup> A violent disruption; stampede. <sup>5</sup> Substance used in solution; (fig) a means of solving a problem.



7. What has been responsible for the break-up of the old system of imperialism after the great war? Will this state of affairs remain so?
8. What would be the best method of solving the present political complications in Europe?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Page

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| 350 | a. <i>In respect of</i> : regarding, about.                                   |
| „   | b. <i>To be confined to</i> : to be limited to.                               |
| „   | c. <i>Point of view</i> : position from which anything is seen or considered. |
| 351 | d. <i>Deus ex machina</i> (Lat.): unexpected and fortunate occurrence.        |
| „   | e. <i>Part and parcel</i> : an essential portion.                             |
| 354 | f. <i>To prove equal</i> : be capable of handling.                            |

## LESSON XXXIX

### THE FOURTEEN POINTS

WOODROW WILSON

*Former President of U. S. A.*

The program of the world's peace is our program, and that program, the only possible program, as we see it, is this :

I. Open covenants<sup>1</sup> of peace openly arrived at, after which there will surely be no private international action or rulings<sup>2</sup> of any kind, but diplomacy shall proceed always frankly and in the public view.

II. Absolute freedom of navigation upon the seas, outside territorial waters,<sup>3</sup> alike in peace and in war,

---

<sup>1</sup> Agreements, contracts.    <sup>2</sup> Exercise of any law or agreement.  
<sup>3</sup> Pertaining to territory or land.

except as the seas may be closed in whole or in part by international action for the enforcement of international covenants.

III. The removal, so far as possible, of all economic barriers<sup>1</sup> and the establishment of an equality of trade conditions among all the nations consenting to the peace and associating themselves for its maintenance.

IV. Adequate<sup>2</sup> guarantees<sup>3</sup> given and taken that national armaments<sup>4</sup> will reduce to the lowest point consistent with<sup>a</sup> domestic safety.

V. Free, open-minded,<sup>b</sup> and absolutely impartial adjustment of all colonial claims, based upon a strict observance<sup>5</sup> of the principle that, in determining all such questions of sovereignty, the interests of the population concerned must have equal weight<sup>6</sup> with the equitable<sup>7</sup> claims of the government whose title is to be determined.

VI. The evacuation<sup>8</sup> of all Russian territory and such a settlement of all questions affecting Russia as will secure the best and freest coöperation of the other nations of the world in obtaining for her an unhampered<sup>9</sup> and unembarrassed<sup>10</sup> opportunity for the independent determination<sup>11</sup> of her own political development and national policy, and assure her of a sincere welcome into the society of free nations under institutions of her own choosing; and, more than a welcome, assistance also of every kind that she may need and may herself desire.

---

<sup>1</sup> Obstacles; obstructions. <sup>2</sup> Sufficient. <sup>3</sup> Security; agreement to perform contract or duty of another, in case of the latter's failure. <sup>4</sup> Equipment of war or defense. <sup>5</sup> Heeding; compliance with. <sup>6</sup> Importance. <sup>7</sup> According to natural justice. <sup>8</sup> Act of withdrawing or quitting. <sup>9</sup> Unimpeded; having obstacles removed. <sup>10</sup> Unhindered. <sup>11</sup> Act of deciding.



The treatment accorded Russia by her sister nations in the months to come will be the acid test<sup>c</sup> of their good will, of their comprehension<sup>1</sup> of her needs as distinguished from their own interests, and of their intelligent and unselfish sympathy.

VII. Belgium, the whole world will agree, must be evacuated and restored, without any attempt to limit the sovereignty which she enjoys in common with all other free nations. No other single act will serve as this will serve to restore confidence among the nations in the laws which they have themselves set and determined for the government of their relations with one another. Without this healing act the whole structure and validity<sup>2</sup> of international law is forever impaired.<sup>3</sup>

VIII. All French territory should be freed and the invaded portions restored, and the wrong done to France by Prussia in 1871 in the matter of Alsace-Lorraine,† which has unsettled the peace of the world for nearly fifty years, should be righted, in order that peace may once more be made secure in the interest of all.

IX. A readjustment of the frontiers of Italy should be effected along clearly recognizable lines of nationality.

X. The peoples of Austria-Hungary,† whose place among the nations we wish to see safeguarded<sup>4</sup> and assured, should be accorded the freest opportunity of autonomous<sup>5</sup> development.

XI. Rumania,† Serbia,† and Montenegro† should be evacuated; occupied territories restored; Serbia accorded

---

<sup>1</sup> Understanding.    <sup>2</sup> Quality or state of being valid or having legal force.    <sup>3</sup> Weakened.    <sup>4</sup> Protected.    <sup>5</sup> Having independent existence or laws.

free and secure access<sup>1</sup> to the sea; and the relations of the several Balkan States† to one another determined by friendly counsel along historically established lines of allegiance<sup>2</sup> and nationality; and international guarantees of the political and economic independence and territorial integrity<sup>3</sup> of the several Balkan States should be entered into.

XII. The Turkish portions of the present Ottoman Empire† should be assured a secure sovereignty, but the other nationalities which are now under Turkish rule should be assured an undoubted security of life and an absolutely unmolested<sup>4</sup> opportunity of autonomous development, and the Dardanelles should be permanently opened as a free passage to the ships and commerce of all nations under international guarantees.

XIII. An independent Polish state† should be erected which should include the territories inhabited by indisputable Polish populations, which should be assured a free and secure access to the sea, and whose political and economic independence and territorial integrity should be guaranteed by international covenant.

XIV. A general association of nations must be formed under specific<sup>5</sup> covenants for the purpose of affording mutual guarantees of political independence and territorial integrity to great and small states alike.

— *Vital Forces in Current Events.*

#### QUESTIONS

1. What does the first of President Wilson's Fourteen Points enjoin?

---

<sup>1</sup> Means or way of approach.    <sup>2</sup> Loyalty or duty to one's own king or government.    <sup>3</sup> State of being complete or unimpaired.  
<sup>4</sup> Undisturbed.    <sup>5</sup> Definite, precise.



2. What does the second point stipulate?
3. How does the third point insure commercial freedom?
4. Why should national armaments be reduced to the lowest point?
5. In adjusting colonial claims, what important principles should be observed?
6. What does the sixth point recommend regarding treatment of Russia.
7. Why does the seventh point insist upon the evacuation of Belgium?
8. What is the reason why Alsace-Lorraine should be restored to France?
9. How should the question of the Balkan States be settled as recommended in the eighth point?
10. How should the problem of Turkey be adjusted?
11. To what countries did the present Polish State formerly belong?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

Page

- 357 a. *Consistent with*: having agreement or harmony with; not contradictory to.
- „ b. *Open-minded*: frank; not prejudiced.
- 358 c. *Acid test*: rigid trial or experiment.

## LESSON XL

### RELATIONS BETWEEN CHINA AND THE WEST

CHAO-CHU WU, LL.D.

*Minister of Foreign Affairs, Nationalist Government*

While the earliest relations between this country and the west are still little known to us, yet they must have existed in remote times to cause the Hebrew prophet Isaiah in the eighth century before the

Christian era to refer to the land of Sinim. The Tyrian geographer Marinus in the second century knew this land under the name of Thin, whence Thina, Sina, and China are probably derived. It was first known commercially and politically. Alexandria carried on a flourishing<sup>1</sup> trade with it by sea several centuries before the Christian era, while by land intercourse went on with Afghanistan,† Bactria,† Parthia,† and Mesopotamia.† In the reign of the soldier-emperor, Wu Ti, of the Han Dynasty, who reigned in the second century before Christ, an envoy was sent to Bactria. This famous traveler, Chang Chien, who was captured by the Huns† on the way out and again on the way back, and kept a prisoner for over ten years, reported on his return that he saw Chinese goods exhibited in the markets of Bactria. The silk fabrics of China fetched high prices in ancient Rome and so tempted Parthian and other traders to brave the long and dangerous journeys to procure them. Tradition has it that the eggs of the silk worm were carried away surreptitiously<sup>2</sup> by a Chinese princess when marrying in Khotan (now in Chinese Turkestan). From there sericulture spread to India and Persia until five hundred years later, at the time of Justinian I,† it reached Europe. From these beginnings, we have the gigantic<sup>3</sup> trade which is carried on now between the East and the West, the chief emporium<sup>4</sup> of which is this metropolis<sup>5</sup> of Shanghai.

---

<sup>1</sup> Prosperous. <sup>2</sup> Stealthily; without due authority. <sup>3</sup> Immense; very great. <sup>4</sup> A place of trade, market place; a city or town with extensive commerce. <sup>5</sup> Chief city of a country.



China's political relations with the West—west from the Chinese point of view—began with her struggles with the warlike tribes on the western border, variously called the Yungs, Hsiung Nus (Huns), Tunguses, Turks, etc. They became a serious menace during the Han Dynasty whose rulers conducted great campaigns<sup>1</sup> against them. Emperor Wu Ti was particularly successful. Tribe after tribe, state after state, fell under China's sovereignty until the empire was flung so far westward that the Chinese dragon met the Roman eagle in the neighborhood of the Caspian Sea. The records have it that King An-Tun of Ta Tsin sent a mission with tribute to China in the year which corresponded to A.D. 166. Ta Tsin was the name for Rome, and the King An-Tun is believed to be no other than the Emperor Antoninus, though it would be interesting to know whether it was Antoninus Pius† who died in 161 and who might have sent a mission which took five years to reach the capital of China, or his nephew Marcus Aurelius Antoninus† who, not content with Greek philosophy, by this mission desired to learn of the wisdom of the East. After the Hans, China suffered from the invasions of the Tunguses until the Tang Dynasty, which flourished from the seventh to the tenth century. From Korea to the frontiers of Persia, Chinese dominion was acknowledged. The thirteenth century ushered in the Mongol comet. A mighty empire, the greatest in history, was carved by the sword from the Yellow Sea westward through Turkestan,

---

<sup>1</sup> Connected series of military operations.

Persia, Russia, Hungary, to the very heart of Europe. As sudden as its rise, the northern star disappeared, leaving no traces except in India. The purely Chinese dynasty of the Mings which followed exhibited naval activities by "showing the flag," as the modern phrase goes, in the South Seas as far as the Arabian and African coasts. Tribute was received from Borneo, Java, Siam, Malaya, Sumatra, Ceylon, Malabar, and Arabia.

### EARLY RELATIONS WITH WESTERN EUROPE

Up to this time the political and commercial relations with the West were already sufficiently intermingled, particularly those with western Asia and eastern Europe. With the inauguration<sup>1</sup> of the Manchu Dynasty in 1644, when western Europe was brought into closer contact, the two relations became inextricably<sup>2</sup> involved.<sup>3</sup> Portuguese, Spanish, Dutch, Russian, and British embassies<sup>4</sup> arrived one after another. They came to obtain commercial privileges. Such was the conceit of the Manchu rulers that, even in the beginning of the nineteenth century, foreign embassies were treated as tribute<sup>5</sup> bearers. Why were trading relations denied when there was a free exchange of commodities in ancient and medieval times? The answer is that the foreigners had themselves to blame.

*The Portuguese.* The first of the Atlantic peoples to arrive, the Portuguese, having tasted of the sweets of

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of initiating or setting in progress. <sup>2</sup> Incapable of being disentangled. <sup>3</sup> Entangled. <sup>4</sup> Envoys and their followers. <sup>5</sup> Gifts in money or other valuable things sent by one ruler to another as an acknowledgment of submission.



imperialism in India—their King had assumed the grandiose<sup>1</sup> title of “Lord of the Indies”—sought to repeat the experience in China. They not only showed themselves arbitrary<sup>2</sup> and greedy in their commercial dealings, they even built a fort and exercised criminal jurisdiction.<sup>3</sup> Thus was exhibited so early as 1518 the symptoms<sup>4</sup> of land hunger, extraterritorial jurisdiction, and economic exploitation which have been the bane<sup>5</sup> of western intercourse<sup>6</sup> with China. In this early instance, bad blood was created,<sup>a</sup> and the Portuguese, who had been allowed to trade all along the coast from Canton to Foochow and Ningpo, subsequently had their activities restricted to the tiny peninsula of Macao.

*The Spanish.* Our experience with the next nation, Spain, was, to say the least, even more unhappy. Having navigated to the Philippine Islands and appropriated them in the sixteenth century, the Spaniards found there a large Chinese colony which had antedated<sup>7</sup> them by several centuries. The only faults the new conquerors found with the Chinese traders were that they were too industrious, too thrifty, and too flourishing—and I am sorry to say that our countrymen have not corrected these faults during the intervening<sup>8</sup> centuries but have continued to exhibit them in other parts of the world, much to the annoyance of others. So in 1603, jealous of the Chinese, the Spanish massacred practically the whole colony of twenty thousand souls. However, such were Chinese enterprise, courage, and persistence that

---

<sup>1</sup> Imposing, grand. <sup>2</sup> Despotic; exercised according to one's own will. <sup>3</sup> Sphere of authority. <sup>4</sup> Signs, indications. <sup>5</sup> Poison, injury. <sup>6</sup> Communication, commerce. <sup>7</sup> Preceded in time. <sup>8</sup> Coming between.



a generation later there were over thirty thousand again in the archipelago. The Spanish repeated the performance, putting to the sword<sup>b</sup> all except six thousand, to which number Chinese traders were limited, certainly an effective way of restricting immigration, though hardly one to be imitated nowadays. One of these traders returned to Canton and, telling the authorities how Chinese were restricted in their trade in the Philippines, influenced them to treat Europeans in Canton in the same manner. While the "heathen Chinese" did not take kindly to the lesson of massacring foreigners, yet he adopted the Spanish measures of trade restriction, which were thence maintained in Canton until the Treaty of 1842. Thus the boomerang.<sup>1</sup>

The system established was known to foreigners as the Co-hong. This was a body of Chinese merchants, thirteen in number, through whom foreign merchants in Canton must do their business. It was a monopoly.<sup>2</sup> But these merchants were also the medium of communication between the viceroy and the foreigners and, what was more, held responsible by him for what they did. So, while the profits of the monopoly were heavy, the responsibility was not light. It was in these dealings of foreign merchants with the Hong merchants that they came to know of Chinese commercial integrity.<sup>3</sup> The written contract was unnecessary; a deal involving perhaps half a million dollars was concluded by mere word of mouth. From this arose the saying that the

---

<sup>1</sup> A missile weapon used by the natives of Australia; when thrown from the hand, it describes a remarkable curve, finally falling near the place from which it was thrown. <sup>2</sup> Exclusive right or privilege. <sup>3</sup> Honesty.



Chinaman's word was as good as his bond.<sup>1</sup> Besides honesty there was generosity as well. We read in books written by an American accounts of how the most famous of these merchants, called by foreigners Howqua, would help foreign merchants when in difficulties, and would even sometimes, in half a dozen words in "pidgin English," absolve them of huge debts.

*The Dutch.* With the next Europeans, the Dutch, in the beginning, more blows were exchanged<sup>o</sup> than goods. They sent a ship to Canton, at the opening of the seventeenth century, seeking permission to trade. The Portuguese, jealous of their monopoly, influenced the authorities to refuse. A few years later, a Dutch admiral came with a fleet of fifteen ships to attack Macao, but was repulsed. The force then occupied the Pescadores, but was again driven out. It thereupon occupied Formosa† in which China was then not interested. Even here they were unfortunate. When the Ming family was dethroned, one of its loyal soldiers, known to foreigners as Koxinga, driven from the mainland by the Manchus, attacked the island and captured it from them. Dutch trade for the next century and a half was confined to smuggling.

*The English.* English trade did not start propitiously.<sup>2</sup> All accounts agree that it was not so much Chinese exclusiveness<sup>3</sup> as Portuguese jealousy that was the cause. However, the English succeeded in being installed<sup>4</sup> in one of the "factories" in Canton. The East India Company† had a monopoly of the lucrative trade on the

---

<sup>1</sup> Written guarantee. <sup>2</sup> Auspiciously, favorably. <sup>3</sup> State of being exclusive; unwillingness to mingle with others. <sup>4</sup> Established.



English side like the Hong merchants on the Chinese, until the privilege was abolished in 1834. Events led rapidly to China's first modern war with a European Power, the War of 1840. This date is memorable to Chinese not only as the first of a series of humiliations received by us as a result of contact with the West, but also on account of the Treaty of 1842 which resulted from the war and which was to be the first of the unequal treaties binding and fettering China to this day.

The Chinese government at that time was seriously perturbed<sup>1</sup> by the increase of opium smoking in the country, and its evil effects. Never legalized, the contraband<sup>2</sup> trade was mainly in the hands of the English. In 1839 it was decided to adopt a strict prohibition policy, and the execution of the policy was intrusted to an imperial commissioner, especially appointed to Canton, a man of singular integrity and strength of character. His first act was to demand the surrender by foreign merchants of all opium in the Canton factories on the ground that it was smuggled goods or, as you would say, bootleg. The demand was complied with and over 20,000 chests of the drug, at the order of the British Government agent, were delivered to him. He promptly destroyed them, an act which will always redound to<sup>4</sup> China's credit. This led to what historians call the Opium War. It should in fairness be said that the British, later, objected to this epithet.<sup>3</sup> While conflict was perhaps inevitable between China and the Western nations, with conservatism and self-sufficiency

---

<sup>1</sup> Troubled, disquieted. <sup>2</sup> Illegal or prohibited traffic. <sup>3</sup> A significant title or name.



on one side and on the other a habit of high-handedness,<sup>1</sup> to say the least, which paid a none too high regard<sup>e</sup> to the rights of the natives of the soil and which was acquired in dealings with less civilized peoples in voyages of exploration, the fact remains that to the impartial student of history, the Opium War was no misnomer.<sup>2</sup> The seizure of the opium was made the *casus belli*<sup>f</sup> by England. Furthermore, in the debates in the British parliament, where the rulers of England had to justify themselves to the people, one scans<sup>3</sup> the pages in vain for any reference to questions of inequality of treatment received by foreign nations at the hands of China, but one does read in speech after speech from the front benches of both sides the leaders of the two great parties, of the lucrativeness of the opium trade and the reluctance to relinquish it. The war could have only one issue and the Treaty of 1842 was the result. Besides the exaction of an indemnity to pay for the cost of the war and the destroyed opium and the cession of the island of Hongkong, the basis was laid for the two principal fetters on China's sovereignty, viz., the extraterritorial jurisdiction of the foreigners and the conventional<sup>4</sup> tariff.

*The Americans.* Contenting ourselves with this hasty survey<sup>5</sup> of early relations with Great Britain and turning to those with America, we find that they were on the whole uneventful, which was a good sign. The first American ship arrived the year after the Thirteen Colonies obtained their independence. The Chinese were

---

<sup>1</sup> Overbearing, arbitrary.    <sup>2</sup> Wrong name or title.    <sup>3</sup> Examines with care.    <sup>4</sup> Formed by agreement.    <sup>5</sup> Examination.



well disposed<sup>s</sup> toward them from the very beginning and relations were amicable throughout, owing to their submission to Chinese jurisdiction and to the refusal of the United States to allow its citizens to have anything to do with the opium trade. The first treaty between the two nations in 1844 followed the general lines of the previous British treaty and made the extraterritorial stipulations even more explicit. President Lincoln sent Mr. Anson Burlingame as minister to China, who, after six years, resigned as envoy of the United States and became envoy of China. An American had thus the distinction of heading the first Chinese diplomatic mission to modern states. It was accredited<sup>1</sup> to eleven governments and was charged with the task of bringing about a better understanding between the East and West generally, and the revision of treaties. Unfortunately it came to an untimely end through the death of Mr. Burlingame in St. Petersburg.

*The French.* Early French relations with China were not so much mercantile or political as religious, or perhaps more accurately, politico-religious. France became the protectrice of the Roman Catholic Church in China. Her treaties obtained special privileges for Catholic missions and her officials issued passports for all Catholic missionaries irrespective of nationality, a practice which was continued until broken in the latter part of the last century by the Germans. France joined England in 1857 in another war against China which ended with the capture of Peking and the looting<sup>2</sup> and destruction of the beautiful palace Yuen Ming Yuen.

---

<sup>1</sup> Authorized, sent with letters of credentials. <sup>2</sup> Plundering.



French colonial policy brought the two countries again into conflict in 1884 in Tonkin, for centuries a vassal state of China. In spite of the plucky<sup>1</sup> and often successful fight put up by a band of Chinese patriots known as the *Black Flags*, the result was that Tonkin changed hands.

*The Russians.* Owing to geographical position, Russia was one of the earliest powers to have relations with this country, and concluded the first of the modern treaties with China in 1689. Territory and trade were the subjects in China's Russian relations. Much of Russia's Siberian lands, particularly along the Amur and Ussuri rivers and on the coast, including the port of Vladivostock, was gained at China's expense.

### FOREIGN AGGRESSION

When China suffered defeat at the hands of Japan in 1894, the full extent of the incompetency<sup>2</sup> and corruption of the effete<sup>3</sup> Manchu Dynasty was bared to the world. The Western Powers were not slow to profit by the knowledge. Germany seized Kiaochow and dominated the province of Shantung. Russia took a lease for Port Arthur and Dalny, thus satisfying her long-cherished ambition of getting an ice-free port. Britain leased Weihaiwei and the mainland opposite Hongkong called Kowloon. France leased Kwangchow-wan. Of course, these leases were for practical purposes merely a euphonious<sup>4</sup> name for cession of territory. At the same time, the Powers rivaled each other in getting

---

<sup>1</sup> Courageous.    <sup>2</sup> Inability, unfitness.    <sup>3</sup> Incapable of efficient action; exhausted of productive energy.    <sup>4</sup> Pleasing in sound.



valuable contracts for the building of railways, opening of mines, carrying out of various public enterprises, and the making of loans. Particularly important was the matter of railways which entailed rights and opportunities not dreamed of in other countries amounting in classic instances to virtual exercise of sovereignty. This not too edifying<sup>1</sup> scramble<sup>2</sup> to get the most out of the weak Manchus was known as the Battle of Concessions. But it was not all. Not content with what they had already got, which would take some little time to digest even with ostrich-like capacity, they proceeded to mark out what they expected to consume in the more or less near future. A large and indefinite area, such as "north of the Great Wall," or "the valley of the Yangtze River," would be earmarked for later political and economic exploitation by a Power and would be known as its "sphere of influence." Small wonder that Chinese and foreigners thought that the partition of China was about to begin. And retribution<sup>3</sup> came in the shape of Boxers.

*The Boxers.* They were, of course, ignorant and superstitious men who thought that the expulsion or extermination<sup>4</sup> of the comparatively few foreigners living in China would solve all difficulties. For their crass<sup>5</sup> ignorance and their barbarous acts no excuse can be offered. At the same time, it cannot be denied that there were the germs of nationalistic consciousness and patriotic instinct in the movement. It was not a mere coincidence<sup>6</sup> that Boxerism originated in the

---

<sup>1</sup> Instructive in morals. <sup>2</sup> Greedy struggle for something. <sup>3</sup> Deserved punishment for evil or wrong. <sup>4</sup> Act of destroying utterly. <sup>5</sup> Gross, dense. <sup>6</sup> Occupying the same position as to space, time, etc.



province of Shantung where the people were treated to a taste of Prussian militarism. Besides the political aggressions of the Powers, the people often suffered from wrongs of another kind inflicted voluntarily or involuntarily by foreigners. They originated in the tendency of certain missionaries to interfere, with frequently too successful results, in the local administration, in particular that of justice. What the motive was, whether the imperialistic one which is little compatible with the preaching of religious faith, or the human one of protecting a convert with the missionary's magic cloak of extraterritoriality, it is unnecessary to inquire. It sufficed that the tendency was duly noted by the people of the town, or the village, particularly the least desirable portion of them. The missionary found his flock increasing at a rapid rate, but he did not always suspect that some of them were there to get his protection, while others, worse still, were using his influence to oppress their neighbors. The people were thus ill-disposed<sup>b</sup> towards certain missions and their converts. In this way foreign diplomatic and missionary activities prepared the ground for the Boxer uprising, while the Chinese peasant's misguided patriotism and the Manchu Court's connivance<sup>1</sup> assisted its growth. Though restricted to a few provinces and a small minority of people, it did sufficient damage directly and indirectly. The Chinese people paid heavily for the folly and madness of a few. The behavior of some of the soldiers of the foreign

---

<sup>1</sup> Closing the eyes to a fault.



armies sent to China was no better than that of the Boxers, so that the innocent had to suffer twice. An enormous indemnity<sup>1</sup> was exacted,<sup>2</sup> 450,000,000 taels, which, with interest spread over 40 years, amounted to over 980,000,000 taels. Each Power and its nationals put in claims for whatever they thought fit with no one to check them. The American government in 1908 remitted a portion of its share, a worthy example which other Powers are beginning to follow.

*Extraterritoriality.* Before concluding this survey of the political aspect of China's foreign relations, a few words should be said as to the two principal and unique privileges enjoyed by foreigners in this country. Whatever might be the origin of extraterritoriality in Mohammedan countries, in the case of China that privilege was not a voluntary grant or a result of custom. It was exacted from a China defeated in war and was based on the treaty stipulations.<sup>3</sup> It means that the foreigner in China is not subject to the jurisdiction of her laws or her courts. In foreign countries such an exemption<sup>4</sup> is accorded<sup>5</sup> only to sovereigns and ambassadors, but in China every foreigner, be he a beach-comber<sup>6</sup> or an habitual criminal, enjoys this royal and diplomatic treatment. The early traders said that they did not understand China's laws and that in any case those laws did not agree with their conception of justice. The Chinese retort<sup>7</sup> was: "We did not ask you to come;

---

<sup>1</sup> Compensation for loss, damage, or injury. <sup>2</sup> Extorted; demanded forcibly. <sup>3</sup> Agreements, contracts. <sup>4</sup> Immunity; freedom from obligation. <sup>5</sup> Conceded. <sup>6</sup> Loafer, vagabond. <sup>7</sup> Quick response.



you came because you found the trade profitable; you have to accept things as you find them, those that you dislike as well as those you like; why should we not try and punish you when you have violated our laws simply because you don't like them?" This in substance<sup>1</sup> is still the logic underlying China's demand for the abolition of the privilege, and it is further strengthened by the changes and reforms which have been introduced during the last twenty years into our judicial system.

*Conventional Tariff.* The control over the customs tariff is important to a country for two principal reasons: as a source of revenue and as a means for regulation of the economic needs of the nation. In China, since the Manchu government conceded the flat rate of five per cent tariff to one nation, a privilege which speedily accrued<sup>1</sup> to others by virtue of<sup>1</sup> the so-called most-favored-nation clause in the treaties, China's revenue from this source has not been anything like what it should be. You, ladies and gentlemen, from a protectionist<sup>2</sup> country know that the customs duty may sometimes be as high as three hundred or four hundred per cent. Contrast it with China's nominal<sup>3</sup> five per cent. I say nominal advisedly because, owing to the fact that the *ad valorem*<sup>k</sup> duty was made specific<sup>4</sup> and that at one time for forty-four years the prices of the imported and exported goods were not revised, although they had increased considerably, China was getting much less than even the paltry<sup>5</sup> five per cent allowed her. But there is

---

<sup>1</sup> Increased; piled up. <sup>2</sup> One who favors protection of home commodities against foreign competition. <sup>3</sup> Existing in name only; not real. <sup>4</sup> Definite, precise. <sup>5</sup> Very small.



another consideration greater than that of revenue. Every import into China, except half a dozen articles, pays five per cent. Therefore, on the one hand things which China wants for her vital needs, and on the other hand things which are luxuries and which other countries tax heavily, e.g., tobacco, which Japan taxes 355 per cent, are all admitted here with the same light duty. There may be a nascent<sup>1</sup> industry which the nation should encourage, but it cannot protect it from foreign competition in its own home market because of the light duty. At the same time, while China admits foreign goods on a bare five per cent duty, there is no similar obligation upon foreign countries, who are at liberty to levy on Chinese products fifty or five hundred per cent as they may think fit. This is the meaning of unilateral treaties; all rights and benefits accrue to one party, all duties and obligations lie on the other party.

*China a Subcolony.* With these two formidable privileges, extraterritoriality and conventional tariff, and some minor ones, inland navigation, banking, partial exemption from inland taxation, etc., which have been expressly stipulated in the treaties, or else claimed by foreigners as implied or corollary<sup>2</sup> to treaty rights, or else based on custom and practice very often of doubtful validity,<sup>3</sup> it is no wonder that we can scarcely call our country our own. Our great national leader, Dr. Sun Yat-sen, has pointed out to us that we are in a worse position than that of the colonies of

---

<sup>1</sup> Being developed. <sup>2</sup> Supplementary. <sup>3</sup> Quality of being founded on truth or fact.



European nations, say India or Annam. While they are subject to exploitation by the one sovereign Power, China is exploited by some sixteen Powers. Again, Britain and France, morally at least, owe certain duties to India and Annam, such as protection from enemies without, maintenance of order within, assistance in natural calamities, development of resources, education of the people, but the treaty Powers in China owe us no duties whatsoever. Just as in the legal aspect, so in the moral, the position is unilateral. Dr. Sun, therefore, says China is in the position of a subcolony.

### NECESSITY OF BETTER UNDERSTANDING

From this brief survey of Sino-foreign relations, may we not draw in conclusion a useful lesson which will be of assistance in our future dealings one with another? The first step must assuredly be a better understanding of each other's point of view. We have advanced somewhat from the stage when the first party thought the second a mere "heathen Chinese," while the second considered the first an "outside barbarian." But we are still far from a full understanding of each other. The Chinese knows that the foreigner believes that he has been the benefactor of the country, having been the means of introducing Christianity and modern science with all its wonders. But do the large majority of foreigners know the thoughts and feelings of thinking Chinese on the question? Do they know that it is felt that the foreigners have had much the better part of the bargain, that the grievances of the Chinese are considerable? In the outline I have given to-day of



the history of the intercourse between the two parties, I have tried to give the Chinese point of view. Some of the incidents that have been recalled, many foreigners would perhaps prefer to forget, but I have given a plain unvarnished<sup>1</sup> account of things because the Chinese on their side have not forgotten them and the serious student of present-day conditions must have this knowledge of the historical background to understand the Chinese standpoint.

*Removal of Chinese Grievances.* If the Chinese have a legitimate<sup>2</sup> ground for complaint, the next step to be taken is certainly to remove it. It is all very well for the foreigner to insist upon his treaty rights and to harp on<sup>1</sup> the sanctity<sup>3</sup> of contracts. When the contract is entered into of his own free will and with full knowledge, the Chinese is well known for his scrupulous<sup>4</sup> observation on his part and generous treatment of the other party, as witness the conduct of private individuals from early foreign trade relations to the present day. But suppose you have a youth of tender years, heir to a rich patrimony<sup>5</sup> but with no experience of the world, and suppose that a hard-headed<sup>6</sup> business man, taking advantage of his youth and inexperience, makes a contract with him by lending him money at usurious<sup>7</sup> interest and taking a mortgage<sup>8</sup> on his properties. The term of the loan expires and the lender insists on payment to the uttermost farthing, in default of<sup>m</sup> which

---

<sup>1</sup> Plain ; not glazed over.    <sup>2</sup> Lawful, valid.    <sup>3</sup> Sacredness, inviolability.    <sup>4</sup> Careful, exact.    <sup>5</sup> Right or estate inherited from one's ancestor.    <sup>6</sup> Shrewd.    <sup>7</sup> Involving interest in excess of a legal rate.    <sup>8</sup> Conveyance of property as security for payment of debt.



he proceeds to exercise the right of a mortgagee<sup>1</sup> to foreclose.<sup>2</sup> The youth is by now of age and demurs,<sup>3</sup> but the other reads him a lecture on the inviolability of contract. How would we regard such a case in law and in ethics? All civilized legal systems would avoid the contract on the ground of infancy and perhaps also undue influence, after ordering the young spendthrift to repay the loan with reasonable interest. In a court of ethics we would probably dismiss the Shylock,<sup>†</sup> exacting his pound of flesh, with even less consideration.

The position is similar with regard to China's treaties and contracts. A hundred years ago Chinese officials had no knowledge of international law and did not know the significance<sup>4</sup> of the undertakings carelessly contracted. How were they to know that a promise to treat all foreign nations equally, the famous most-favored-nation clause, would be interpreted to mean that a privilege accorded to one nation, even though for a valuable consideration, would automatically<sup>5</sup> inure<sup>6</sup> to the benefit of every other Power? When foreign trade was reckoned in hundreds of thousands, how could they dream of the effect of agreeing to a five per cent tariff in later years when imports and exports would amount to billions. Besides being ignorant, the officials were sometimes corrupt, and the foreign negotiator had been known not to scruple<sup>7</sup> to employ bribery, if they would sell the birthright of the people of China. Indeed, the inner history of the negotiations of the treaties and

---

<sup>1</sup> One to whom property is mortgaged. <sup>2</sup> To bar a mortgagor by a judgement of court from his equity of redemption. <sup>3</sup> Objects, protests. <sup>4</sup> Meaning. <sup>5</sup> In self-acting manner. <sup>6</sup> Have effect; be applied. <sup>7</sup> Hesitate for the sake of conscience or expediency.



agreements which now bind China is not always pleasant reading. Other covenants were made under duress<sup>a</sup> of a disastrous war in which, with modern ships and machine guns pitted against wooden junks, spears, and arrows, the combat was too unequal, and into which the foreign Powers at times entered too readily.

This, then, is the *damnosa hereditas*<sup>o</sup> which the Chinese people find confronting them to-day. Their nationalism now awakened, they refuse to be any longer shackled in the march to their destiny by a series of undertakings which, in private life, neither law nor ethics would have permitted to stand. There is unfortunately no court of sufficient authority able to set them aside. What then is to be done? Those Chinese who advocate their abrogation<sup>1</sup> are at once met by the stern rebuke that treaties are sacred and may not be touched unless by consent of both parties. Then, shall we ask for revision? We have been asking for it for nearly a generation. We are told sometimes that conditions are not yet ripe. Other times we are told that as some sixteen Powers, large and small, enjoy the same treaty rights, if we can get so-and-so to agree, the matter may be considered, and at this moment, this is the reply vouchsafed<sup>2</sup> to China when she seeks the revision of a treaty which she considers to have expired by efflux<sup>3</sup> of time and whose dead hand<sup>p</sup> she refuses to permit any longer to oppress her.

*Two Alternatives.* The gist of the matter is that foreigners in China are in a privileged position which is extremely valuable to them from every point of view.

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of putting an end to.    <sup>2</sup> Conceded.    <sup>3</sup> Act of flowing out.



To ask them to relinquish it is, as we Chinese say, asking the tiger for his skin. It is for their detached<sup>1</sup> countrymen to envisage<sup>2</sup> the situation in its true perspective. Shall a few anachronistic<sup>3</sup> privileges, which must in any case disappear soon, be clung to as long as possible, even at the risk — indeed the certainty — of incurring the ill-will of the Chinese people, or shall their enjoyment for a few more months, at most a few more years, be immediately renounced in exchange for the good will of four hundred millions, the greatest market of the future? These are the alternatives before foreigners to-day in their relations with China: Either a die-hard policy, bringing in its train consequences none can foretell; or a statesmanlike policy, as magnanimous<sup>4</sup> as it will in the long run prove profitable. The choice lies in their hands; a decision must now be made. And in that decision are involved the future and happiness of a quarter of the population of the globe and perhaps as well those of entire humanity.

— *Paper read before the faculty and students of the American College Cruise Around the World.*

#### QUESTIONS

1. What proofs do you have of China's very early relationship with the world?
2. Describe the political condition of China during the reign of Emperor Wu Ti.
3. How far did China's political influence extend during Ming Dynasty?

---

<sup>1</sup> Separate, unconnected.    <sup>2</sup> Look in the face of; apprehend.  
<sup>3</sup> Incongruous because not appropriate in time.    <sup>4</sup> Generous.

4. What are the countries that first sent envoys to China in the beginning of the Manchu Dynasty; and how were they received?
5. How was the first misunderstanding created between China and the Western Powers, and with what result?
6. Describe the treatment of the Chinese by the Spaniards in the Philippines in the sixteenth century? How did the Chinese retaliate?
7. Explain the system of the Co-Hong.
8. Describe the diplomatic relationship between the Dutch and the Chinese.
9. What was the East India Company?
10. Explain briefly the circumstances leading to the Opium War between China and England, and its results.
11. Why were the Chinese better disposed toward the Americans than toward other Powers? Who was Burlingame?
12. What was the nature of France's diplomatic relation with China?
13. What were the disastrous results of the defeats of China by Japan in the war of 1894?
14. State the cause or causes which led to the Boxer trouble, and its results.
15. Explain the nature of extraterritoriality in China.
16. Why is the conventional tariff as at present stipulated in the treaties with foreign Powers disadvantageous to China?
17. What does it mean when Dr. Sun Yet-sen says that China is a subcolony of foreign Powers?
18. How is better understanding between China and the Powers to be effected?
19. State reasons why China is fully justified in abolishing the old treaties.



## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- 364 a. *To create bad blood*: to produce ill-feeling or animosity.  
 365 b. *To put to the sword*: to kill.  
 366 c. *To exchange blows*: to fight.  
 367 d. *To redound to*: contribute to; to conduce to.  
 368 e. *To pay none too high regard to*: to treat with little or no respect.  
 „ f. *Casus belli* (Lat.): the cause of war.  
 „ g. *Well-disposed*: favorably inclined.  
 372 h. *Ill-disposed*: unfavorably inclined.  
 374 i. *In substance*; as a whole; in short.  
 „ j. *By virtue of*: through the force of; because of; by reason of.  
 „ k. *Ad valorem* (Lat.): according to the value.  
 377 l. *Harp on*: to continue tediously (on the same topic).  
 „ m. *In default of*: in case of failure or lack of.  
 379 n. *Under duress*: under compulsion.  
 „ o. *Damnosa hereditas*: literally a damaging inheritance, i.e., one from a person who died insolvent, and the debts of which the heir was (in early times) bound to discharge.  
 „ p. *Dead hand*: authority or influences carried over from the past, but on account of change of time or conditions no longer applicable or binding.

## LESSON XLI

## A HISTORICAL SKETCH OF EARLY CHINO-JAPANESE RELATIONS

P. S. HO, M.A.

*Editorial Department, The Commercial Press*

This short study is written with a view to<sup>a</sup> showing to the students of Far Eastern affairs the relations between China and Japan from antiquity<sup>1</sup> down to very recent times. As the title of this article implies, we

---

<sup>1</sup> Ancient times; former ages.

attempt here an account of facts, not an expression of individual opinion. As may be expected, the historical records dealing with the intercourse<sup>1</sup> of these two peoples are voluminous,<sup>2</sup> but space allows only the recording of the essential and more important facts in the intermittent<sup>3</sup> intercourse that prevailed between China and Japan from the third century before Christ down to A.D. 1878, when the Loochoo Islands were definitely lost to China.

In studying the history of Japan one will be instantly struck<sup>4</sup> by the fact that so many events occurring in China were recorded inaccurately,<sup>5</sup> yet minutely, by the old Japanese historians. In their Chronological Books "they have filled up the vacancy with the names of the most eminent monarchs . . . who sat on the throne of China." They also tell us how a great deluge<sup>6</sup> happened in China during the reign of "Ju Ti Xun" (Shun); how Emperor Uu (Yü) of Ka (Hia) cut canals; when Koosi (Confucius) was born; when a comet appeared in China; and how Sikwo's palace (Ch'in Shih Huang-ti) was in flames for a space of three months. Indeed, it almost seems appropriate to entitle the ancient history of Japan "The Ancient History of China."

The definite record of the early contact of China with Japan dates back only as far as the third century before Christ, when the well-known Emperor Ch'in Shih Huang-ti—the reputed builder of the Great Wall—sent a certain Hsu Fu to scour the eastern seas in search of

---

<sup>1</sup> Communication, fellowship.  
coming and going at intervals.  
according to truth. <sup>6</sup> Great flood.

<sup>2</sup> Copious, large. <sup>3</sup> Periodic;  
<sup>4</sup> Impressed. <sup>5</sup> Inexactly; not



the elixir of life.<sup>1</sup> Of this event the Japanese historians give us full, although not very accurate, accounts: "At this time reigned in China, Sikwo or Sino Siko, of the family of Cin. . . . He came to the throne of China in the year of Synmu. . . . He sent three hundred young men, and as many young women, beyond the seas, under the command of one of his physicians, who had persuaded him to it, in order to look for the plants and other necessary ingredients<sup>2</sup> for preparing an elixir of life. This physician went over with his gallant<sup>3</sup> colony into Japan, and settled there, far from harboring<sup>4</sup> any thoughts ever to return to China." Even at present this story is admitted by the Japanese, who still show with pride the landing place at Khumano Kijnokuni, where the physician disembarked, and the remains of a temple which was erected there to the physician's memory for having brought over from China "good manners, and useful arts and sciences."

The first official intercourse of China with Japan is said to have been inaugurated<sup>5</sup> by the Japanese Lord of Ito, whose envoy<sup>6</sup> frequented the court of the Han Dynasty. In Japanese history it is recorded that Japan maintained relations with the Chinese courts of the Three Kingdoms, which followed the fall of the Han Dynasty. In A.D. 285 (Later Ch'in Dynasty) the Confucian Analacts and the Thousand Character Essey were brought from China to Japan through the effort of the king of Korea. In A.D. 607 the Japanese Emperor

---

<sup>1</sup> An imaginary liquor capable of prolonging life indefinitely.  
<sup>2</sup> Component parts of a mixture. <sup>3</sup> Brave; noble in bearing or spirit. <sup>4</sup> Cherishing or entertaining. <sup>5</sup> Set in action or progress.  
<sup>6</sup> Foreign minister below the rank of ambassador.



Suiko sent Ono-no-Imoko to the court of the Sui Dynasty, and in the following year a Chinese envoy was sent to Japan to return Japan's proffer of friendship. The Chinese calendar was adopted by Japan during the Sui Dynasty. "The most important civilizing force introduced from China was the formal institutions of education" in the eighth century (T'ang Dynasty), and thereafter the study of Chinese literature and classics became the most important part of the curriculum<sup>1</sup> in Japanese schools. Consequently, "the great reverence for Chinese culture led to the introduction at an early date of the Chinese system of official rank." This system remained in force down to the restoration in 1868.

After changing the face of Asia with Mongol conquests in the beginning of the thirteenth century, the great Kublai Khan† became piqued<sup>2</sup> at the indifferent attitude of the Japanese towards his power. In 1266 he sent two envoys with a letter of complaint to the king of Japan. But the Mongol messengers returned to the Khan's court without reaching Japan on account of the difficulty and danger of the voyage. Kublai was too impatient to wait for the coming of the Japanese. He sent in 1274 a small fleet against Japan, but the result was unfortunate. Apparently the Khan then showed a strong inclination to come to terms with the Japanese. The latter, however, refused to yield and in 1280 caused some of the Mongol envoys to be murdered. During the following years, great preparations were made in all the harbors of Kiangsu, Chekiang, and Fukien for the

---

<sup>1</sup> A specified fixed course of study. <sup>2</sup> Displeased, irritated.



expedition which was to subdue the bold islanders. A great armada<sup>1</sup> set sail. But when the wind-shattered fleet reached the islets off the southwestern coast of Japan, it was reduced in numbers and the men were badly disheartened.<sup>2</sup> A fresh storm destroyed many more of the war junks, and the remnants of the army were compelled to surrender. In 1283 Kublai equipped another fresh fleet to repair the defeat; but several mutinies arose from the dislike to embark on this voyage. At last, in 1286, following a sharp protest from his officials, Kublai abandoned all further designs upon Japan.

The Japanese neither forgot nor forgave the unprovoked invasion of their country by Kublai Khan. When the Mongol power in China was seen to be on the wane, they began to make piratical<sup>3</sup> raids<sup>4</sup> on the coasts of Fukien and Chekiang in the first part of the sixteenth century (Ming Dynasty). These attacks, however, constituted at first no serious danger. Effective measures were taken<sup>b</sup> by the Chinese to defend the coasts. Meanwhile in the intervals of quiet, other and more promising relations had been formed between the two peoples. Both nations were keen in the pursuit of trade, and a very considerable commerce sprang up. But these commercial intercourses also caused much trouble between them. In 1552 a more serious campaign was undertaken by the Japanese, who effected a landing in Chekiang, pillaged the country round Taichow, and maintained themselves in a fortified position for twelve

---

<sup>1</sup> A fleet of armed ships. <sup>2</sup> Discouraged. <sup>3</sup> Pertaining to pirates.  
<sup>4</sup> A hostile or predatory invasion.



months against all the attacks of the Chinese. In the five years between 1555 and 1560, the Japanese made frequent descents on the coast, and even laid siege to Nanking. In this attempt they were unsuccessful. But it was not until 1564 that the celebrated Chinese Commander, Tsi Ki-kwang, successfully and finally drove the Japanese back to their ships with terrible losses. The pirates suffered, and their power did not soon recover from the rude shock inflicted by Tsi Ki-kwang's activity.

Many years of peace and of successful raiding on the Chinese coast had introduced an era<sup>1</sup> of prosperity into Japan, and the people grew more ambitious. When Korea was distracted by internal feuds,<sup>2</sup> the Japanese landed a force in 1592 at the port of Fushan under the famous general and subsequent Shogun, Hideyoshi. The Korean capital surrendered without a blow. Lipan, the king of Korea, fled to China, asking the Ming emperor, Wan Li for assistance. There was no hesitation at the Chinese court in arriving at the decision that the unprovoked act of aggression<sup>3</sup> on the part of Japan must be resisted at all costs. An army was therefore at once sent through Liaotung to resist the Japanese. Flushed with its easy success, the Japanese army marched rapidly northward and took up their position in Pingyang, where the Chinese army was defeated at the first encounter. Emperor Wan Li then ordered General Li Ju-sung to fight against the Japanese, who were forced to retreat to Fushan. Apparently both sides were tired of war, and peace negotiations

---

<sup>1</sup> Epoch. <sup>2</sup> Strife, quarrels. <sup>3</sup> Invasion, attack.



followed. Unfortunately, the envoy whom the Korean king had sent to Japan to felicitate<sup>1</sup> Hideyoshi on the assumption<sup>2</sup> of the title Shogun was discovered to be an official of very inferior rank. Hideyoshi showed his resentment by sending a fresh fleet against Korea. The indignation<sup>3</sup> of the Chinese court was aroused and preparations were made for the prosecution of the war on an extensive scale. The whole year of 1597 was passed in desultory<sup>4</sup> fighting. But before anything could be effected, the news came of the sudden death of Hideyoshi in 1598. This put a summary end to the contest, as the Japanese troops were immediately withdrawn. Mr. Mounsey, in his *Satsuma Rebellion*, says that the Japanese returned to their islands with the ears of ten thousand Koreans who had been butchered in the frays.

After Hideyoshi's invasion of Korea, the Ming rulers declined to make a formal treaty of peace with Japan. Nevertheless, commercial intercourse was maintained throughout the eighteenth century and the early part of the nineteenth century. After China was opened in 1842, she established by treaty<sup>5</sup> commercial relations with Western nations. But the first commercial treaty between China and Japan was not entered into until 1871. By this treaty permanent embassies<sup>6</sup> were reciprocally<sup>7</sup> established; the consuls of the contracting<sup>8</sup> parties were clothed with<sup>9</sup> jurisdiction<sup>9</sup> over their own

---

<sup>1</sup> Congratulate. <sup>2</sup> Act of taking upon oneself. <sup>3</sup> Anger. <sup>4</sup> Aimless. <sup>5</sup> Agreement, contract. <sup>6</sup> Residences or offices of ambassadors. <sup>7</sup> Mutually. <sup>8</sup> Correlative; mutually related. <sup>9</sup> Power of exercising authority.



nationals; a provision was made<sup>e</sup> as to the confiscation<sup>1</sup> of contraband;<sup>2</sup> and export of rice and salt was prohibited by both countries.

The treaty, however, could not eliminate<sup>3</sup> the traditional troubles between China and Japan. In 1868 or 1869 a junk from the Loochoo Islands† was wrecked on the eastern coast of Formosa and the crew were murdered by the savage islanders. The civil war in Japan prevented any claim for reparation,<sup>4</sup> but in 1873 the Japanese government took up the matter on the assumption that the Loochooans were Japanese subjects. The Japanese foreign minister, Soyejima, was commissioned<sup>5</sup> as ambassador<sup>6</sup> extraordinary and Minister-plenipotentiary<sup>7</sup> to China to negotiate the Formosan question. The Chinese government rightly maintained<sup>8</sup> that as the Loochoo Islands were Chinese territory, the Loochooans were unquestionably Chinese subjects, and that any outrages done by the Formosans upon them did not concern any other government. The Japanese government, on the other hand, insisted that the Loochoo Islands had, since 1609, belonged to Japan, and demanded redress<sup>9</sup> for the acts of the Formosan savages. Unfortunately, in their ignorance the Chinese commissioners sought to evade responsibility by declaring that China had nothing to do with the Formosan savages who were out of her control and

---

<sup>1</sup> Act or process of seizing property as forfeited to the public.  
<sup>2</sup> Goods importation of which is prohibited by law. <sup>3</sup> Cause to disappear. <sup>4</sup> Compensation, amends. <sup>5</sup> (v) Delegated, ordained.  
<sup>6</sup> Minister of the highest rank from a foreign country. <sup>7</sup> A person invested with full power to transact business. <sup>8</sup> Asserted. <sup>9</sup> Reparation, compensation.



jurisdiction. The Japanese immediately took the law into their own hands<sup>1</sup> and an expedition<sup>1</sup> was sent in 1874 to Formosa to chastise the savages who were "out of the jurisdiction of China." By May of the same year, the southern part of Formosa was occupied by the Japanese troops. The Chinese government then began to protest and asked an immediate evacuation<sup>2</sup> of Formosa. The Japanese government demanded, among other things, that before actual evacuation should be effected, China should pay an indemnity<sup>3</sup> of 3,000,000 taels. Upon the refusal of China to agree to these demands, the Japanese commissioner, on October 25, handed to the Tsungli Yamên an ultimatum. At this juncture,<sup>4</sup> Mr. Wade, the British minister at Peking, offered his good services, with the result that a convention was signed at Peking on October 31, 1874, by which China agreed to pay 100,000 taels for the families of the men killed in 1869, and 400,000 taels on the withdrawal of the Japanese forces from Formosa.

When the Formosa question was in process of negotiation,<sup>5</sup> the Japanese government set to work with great diplomatic skill in the Loochoo Islands. In 1872 it ordered the king of Loochoo to proceed to Tokyo to offer congratulations to the Mikado† upon the "Restoration."† The king refused to do so; but reluctantly sent his son to Japan. In September of the same year, by an order of the Mikado, the king of Loochoo was dethroned and was "privileged" to join the Kazoku, or noble class, with gifts of a residence

---

<sup>1</sup> An excursion, invasion. <sup>2</sup> Quitting. <sup>3</sup> Compensation for loss or damage. <sup>4</sup> A point of time. <sup>5</sup> Act of holding business intercourse.



in Tokyo and 30,000 yen. The control of foreign affairs of the little kingdom was then transferred<sup>1</sup> to and administered by the Tokyo government. By the manner of settlement of the Formosa trouble in 1874, China is said to have tacitly<sup>2</sup> recognized the sovereign rights of Japan over the Loochoo Islands, which had been a vassal<sup>3</sup> state to China for five hundred years. In 1876 the king of Loochoo was required by the Japanese government to renounce his Chinese investiture<sup>4</sup> as well as to cease the payment of tribute<sup>5</sup> to China. The king vainly begged the Mikado to allow him to bear a joint allegiance<sup>6</sup> to China and to Japan. This appeal was of course rejected by the Japanese government. In 1876 the Loochoo prince applied to the ministers of the United States, the Netherlands, France, and China at Tokyo, to exercise their good offices, but in vain. In 1878 the Chinese government attempted to secure help from the United States for the reclamation<sup>7</sup> of the Loochoo Islands, but no practical results were obtained. By a proclamation of 1879 Japan incorporated these islands into the general administration. "Eventually," as a Japanese writer has put it, "China seems to have acquiesced<sup>8</sup> in the Japanese claim."

Note.—As the relations between China and Japan since the Chino-Japanese war are so well known, no attempt will be made to condense so many important

---

<sup>1</sup> Made over.    <sup>2</sup> Silently; implied but not expressed.    <sup>3</sup> A dependent; a subject.    <sup>4</sup> Act of conferring rank, dignity, or office.    <sup>5</sup> Gifts or money presented by a ruler to another as an act of submission.    <sup>6</sup> Loyalty, devotion.    <sup>7</sup> Attempt to recover possession of.    <sup>8</sup> Yielded, agreed.



events into a few passages. It may, however, be helpful to give the readers the following syllabus of topics:

1. Korean affairs before 1894.
2. The Chino-Japanese War of 1894-95.
3. The significance of the Anglo-Japanese Alliance of 1902.
4. The Russo-Japanese War of 1904-5 and its effect upon Manchuria.
5. The Chino-Japanese Agreement of 1905.
6. The Manchurian question after 1905.
7. The Tatsu Maru incident of 1907.
8. The Chiento question of 1909.
9. The Knox Neutralization Scheme of 1910.
10. Japan's diplomacy in Peking during the Revolution of 1911.
11. Japan's part in the second revolution of 1913.
12. Changli and Nanking incidents of 1913.
13. Japan's violation of China's neutrality in 1914.
14. The Japanese Demands of 1915.

—*The Chinese Students' Monthly.*

### QUESTIONS

1. Why is the ancient history of Japan called the ancient history of China?
2. Tell about the early contact between China and Japan.
3. What were the various relations between the two countries from the second to the tenth century?
4. Relate the history of the Mongol expeditions against Japan.
5. How often did the Japanese attempt piratical raids on China, and how did they result?

6. Give an account of Japan's Korean campaign.
7. When was the first commercial treaty signed between China and Japan, and with what result?
8. What was the cause of the Foshosan trouble, and what was the result?
9. What led to the loss of the Loochoo Islands to the Japanese?

## IDIGMS AND PHRASES

Page

- 382 a. *With the view:* with the object.
- 386 b. *To take measures:* to use the proper means; to provide means.
- 387 c. *To lay siege to:* to encompass with an army.
- 388 d. *To be clothed with:* to be invested with.
- 389 e. *To make provision:* to take measures.
- 390 f. *To take law into one's hands:* to administer justice without legal authority.

## LESSON XLII

COMMERCE AND THE ABOLITION OF  
EXTRATERRITORIALITY

CHONG-SU SEE, PH.D.

By the various treaties of "amity and commerce," as the conventions<sup>1</sup> which the Chinese were forced to sign are called, China was stripped<sup>2</sup> of two of the fundamental attributes of sovereignty, the two main divisions of practically all international agreements, to wit, the jurisdiction<sup>3</sup> over the person and property of foreigners within her dominions<sup>4</sup> and the regulation of

---

<sup>1</sup> Agreements between governments.    <sup>2</sup> Taken off; divested of.  
<sup>3</sup> Power or right of exercising authority.    <sup>4</sup> Territories, power, control.



her commerce with the outside world. Let us briefly examine each of these and see how it affects foreign intercourse in general and foreign commerce in particular.

Among the treaty stipulations the most important is that of extraterritoriality.<sup>1</sup> By it the foreigner is everywhere withdrawn from Chinese control and is rendered amenable<sup>2</sup> only to the officials of his own government. In criminal cases he is judged according to the criminal code of his own country, and it is the commercial laws of his homeland also that govern his civil cases. However essential this arrangement may be from the foreigner's standpoint, it is intensely galling<sup>3</sup> to the Chinese. Just imagine what would be the effect on the United States if England and France were to govern their nationals in Boston and New York City through their respective<sup>4</sup> consuls and pay no attention whatsoever to American laws. Doubtless such a thing would be regarded as a glaring<sup>5</sup> outrage<sup>6</sup> upon American sovereignty and would not for a moment be tolerated by the people of the United States. And yet that—and more besides—is exactly what the Powers have done in China and forced the Chinese to acquiesce in.

That the system should create a great dislike for the foreigner is only natural. The fact that the alien<sup>7</sup> is exempt<sup>8</sup> from local jurisdiction leads him to believe that he is under no obligation to observe the laws of China, including the customs, practices, and superstitions of a locality, which, although unwritten, are nevertheless

---

<sup>1</sup> State of being outside the jurisdiction of the territorial authorities. <sup>2</sup> Answerable, responsible. <sup>3</sup> Annoying, vexing. <sup>4</sup> Each to each. <sup>5</sup> Open and bold; notorious. <sup>6</sup> A gross violation of right or decency. <sup>7</sup> Foreigner. <sup>8</sup> Free.



obligatory<sup>1</sup> on every resident within the community. Some of these customs and practices appear peculiar and even ridiculous to the foreigner, who, because of their absurdity,<sup>2</sup> whether apparent or real, usually treats them with contempt. But such disrespect gives rise to<sup>a</sup> local ill feeling; and the insult is most keenly felt, owing to the intimate relationship between the customs and the locality. Moreover, the alien in China enjoys a special protection, which is not accorded<sup>3</sup> to the natives. While he is not amenable to any Chinese tribunal,<sup>4</sup> China has always been held absolutely responsible for any injury which might be done to his person or property irrespective of<sup>b</sup> her ability to prevent it. This strict accountability<sup>5</sup> amounts to a guarantee of security, an obligation which the Powers do not recognize in their intercourse with one another. If in countries where extraterritoriality does not exist such a liability is not assumed<sup>6</sup> by the territorial government, how unjust it is to compel China, where aliens are altogether outside her jurisdiction, to do so.

Furthermore under the aegis<sup>7</sup> of extraterritoriality, offenses perpetrated<sup>8</sup> by foreigners against natives often go unpunished or escape without the deserved penalty. In mixed cases in which the plaintiff is a Chinese, the consular officer, who is sent to China to protect his compatriots,<sup>9</sup> is apt to be prejudiced<sup>10</sup> in favor of the latter and cares little, if at all, whether the settlement

---

<sup>1</sup> Imposing obligation. <sup>2</sup> Foolishness, ridiculousness. <sup>3</sup> Conceded, granted. <sup>4</sup> Court or form. <sup>5</sup> Responsibility, liability. <sup>6</sup> Taken upon oneself. <sup>7</sup> Protection. <sup>8</sup> Committed. <sup>9</sup> Fellow countrymen. <sup>10</sup> Biased.



is satisfactory to the complainant<sup>1</sup> or not. As a defendant, the Chinese is also at a disadvantage not only because the foreigner is helped by the advocacy<sup>2</sup> of his consul, but also because of the fact that for the same wrong committed in China different punishments are meted out.<sup>3</sup> If the offender is an alien he is leniently<sup>4</sup> dealt with<sup>5</sup> by his own national laws, but if he is a Chinese he is treated with severity by the native tribunal. Again, many of the extraterritorial courts, those of the small Powers in particular, are not properly administered; and the unapproved<sup>6</sup> practice of sending their nationals who committed grave misdeeds in China to the home country for trial, of which the outcome is, as a rule, unknown to the Chinese party interested in the case, tends to produce the notion that such offenders have not been brought to justice.<sup>7</sup>

The extraterritorial system also gives rise to a multiplicity of courts in one and the same locality, each administering a different code of laws under a different judicial procedure, and the relation between these courts has often placed lawyers and litigants<sup>8</sup> in a confused and embarrassing situation. Moreover, the customary way of applying the law of the defendant's<sup>9</sup> country make the law uncertain. For instance, in the case of a transaction<sup>10</sup> between two merchants of two different nationalities the rights and liabilities of the parties concerned vary according as to which party files the suit first.

---

<sup>1</sup> One who makes a complaint; plaintiff. <sup>2</sup> Support by argument or appeal. <sup>3</sup> Mildly, mercifully. <sup>4</sup> Not approved. <sup>5</sup> Persons engaged in lawsuits. <sup>6</sup> Person required to make answer in an action. <sup>7</sup> Proceeding; doing of any business.



Finally, the existence of extraterritoriality has the effect of leading the Chinese to despise their own government. Not only have the Chinese authorities no control over the alien, but in many instances they have shown themselves powerless to offer their subjects adequate protection against foreign encroachment.<sup>1</sup> The special status enjoyed by the alien is denied to the Chinese. Consequently, dishonest foreigners have found it very profitable to indulge in the illegal practice of giving the protection of their national flag to unscrupulous<sup>2</sup> natives, who, for example, pass their merchandise as belonging to their foreign accomplices<sup>3</sup> in order to evade inland taxation, from which the foreigner is exempted. So, while honest Chinese merchants suffer, those who break the laws of the country with the assistance of the extraterritorialized foreigners are greatly benefited. And if the Chinese authorities manifest a tendency to protect legitimate native interests they are criticized and denounced by outsiders, as though to look after the welfare of one's own people is presumptuous<sup>4</sup> and illegitimate.<sup>5</sup> Thus the administration of the country is deranged and the Chinese officials are humiliated<sup>6</sup> in the discharge of their duties.

The spirit of extraterritoriality permeates<sup>7</sup> the treaties through and through, and its presence indicates a partial sacrifice of sovereign authority by China. But if the Chinese are to enjoy any degree of independence at all, it may be readily inferred<sup>8</sup> that a limit must be set to the

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of trespassing. <sup>2</sup> Unprincipled. <sup>3</sup> Associates. <sup>4</sup> Audacious; taking liberties unduly. <sup>5</sup> Not lawful. <sup>6</sup> Humbled, degraded. <sup>7</sup> Pervades. <sup>8</sup> Concluded, adduced.



special privileges of the foreigners. In order that the system may run more or less smoothly, and in order that the alien may be under the constant protection of his official, the two parties must be situated comparatively near each other. So, for purposes of trade the alien in China is restricted<sup>1</sup> to certain localities within the country which have been declared open to international residence and trade, although for purposes of evangelization<sup>2</sup> the foreign missionary is also permitted to reside in the interior. These commercial centers are usually classified under four different heads. To start, we have the "treaty ports," which are thrown open by the different treaties and agreements between China and the Powers, as places where foreign states are entitled to establish consulates and foreign merchants are permitted to do business "without molestation<sup>3</sup> and restraint."<sup>4</sup> Originating with the Treaty of Nanking in 1842, these ports were five in number; since then they have been largely increased. At some of these ports spaces are set aside as settlement of "reserved areas for residence," as at Shanghai, where the administration is in the hands of a municipal council, but the power of issuing title deeds<sup>5</sup> is retained by China. At others, as at such important commercial centers as Tientsin and Hankow, there are several foreign concessions,<sup>6</sup> each representing a different nationality and administered by a municipal council composed of representatives elected by the foreign taxpayers living in the concession or, in the

---

<sup>1</sup> Circumscribed, limited.    <sup>2</sup> Act of preaching.    <sup>3</sup> Act of interfering or troubling.    <sup>4</sup> Check, restriction.    <sup>5</sup> Instruments proving right of ownership.    <sup>6</sup> Grant by government of a privilege or right.



absence of such a municipal council, by the consul of the granted power for the exclusive benefit of his countrymen. In these foreign settlements or concessions, Chinese subjects are allowed to reside, but the real estate within them is, as a rule, not open to Chinese ownership. Owing to the jealousy among the Powers the tendency in recent years has been towards the separation rather than the amalgamation<sup>1</sup> of concessions.

Although the foreign settlement in a treaty port represents no transfer<sup>2</sup> of territory by China, and, therefore, remains subject to her sovereignty, yet there exists a disposition<sup>3</sup> among the foreign community there to assume a constant air of patronage<sup>4</sup> and proprietorship,<sup>5</sup> and to regard the Chinese residents within it as being there by sufferance. This has proceeded so far that in Shanghai, the great emporium<sup>6</sup> of China, there is a park at the entrance of which was displayed until recently the disgraceful sign: "Chinese and dogs not admitted." Is such a thing imaginable anywhere else on earth? Incredible as it may sound, that is, nevertheless, the treatment extended to the Chinese people by the representatives of the great Powers of the world, which have arrogated<sup>7</sup> to themselves the title of leaders of modern Christianity and civilization. If the foreigners persist in treating the Chinese as inferiors, how is it possible for them to expect permanent good relations and much commercial expansion? Outrages like this

---

<sup>1</sup> Act of blending or mixing. <sup>2</sup> Act of handing over. <sup>3</sup> Tendency, inclination. <sup>4</sup> Guardianship. <sup>5</sup> State of being owner. <sup>6</sup> A place of trade, market. <sup>7</sup> Assumed or claimed as one's own, unduly and proudly.



are maintained by the mailed fist.<sup>1</sup> Will it require another mailed fist to remove them? We earnestly hope not.

So much for the "treaty ports." Somewhat akin<sup>1</sup> to the treaty ports are the ports voluntarily opened to international trade by China herself, such as Chinwangtao in Chihli, and Tsinanfu in Shantung. Here both foreign and Chinese merchants are equally privileged to lease<sup>2</sup> land within the limits of the port, which are fixed by the Chinese government. But these places have not been put on the same footing as the treaty ports, for, to quote a provision from the regulations for one of them (Tsinanfu), "the control of all affairs therein shall pertain entirely to China; for igners must not interfere." This is the view held by the Chinese authorities, but the Powers have maintained a different opinion on the subject; the latter insist that the stipulations<sup>3</sup> as regards the regular treaty ports are also applicable to the voluntarily opened ports.

Then we have the ports situated in the territories "leased" to certain treaty Powers by China, such as Port Arthur to Russia, Kwangchow-wan to France, and Weihaiwei to England. Being important strongholds<sup>4</sup> they possess a high strategic<sup>5</sup> value, which enables the lessee<sup>6</sup> governments to preserve their balance of power<sup>6</sup> in China. However, the leased areas have also a commercial purpose for their existence, and are usually opened to international trade and residence.

---

<sup>1</sup> Of the same nature. <sup>2</sup> Letting of lands and tenements for a specified period. <sup>3</sup> Agreements. <sup>4</sup> Fortified places, forts. <sup>5</sup> Pertaining to military stratagem. <sup>6</sup> One who leases.



Lastly, there are the ports of call, which are stages established along the great rivers, where "steamers shall be allowed to touch for the purpose of landing or shipping passengers or goods," but where "foreign merchants will not be authorized to reside or open houses of business or warehouses." There are now twenty-five ports of call in China, nine on the Yangtze and sixteen on the West River. As for the ports, places opened to foreign trade by treaties or by the Chinese government on its own initiative, which comprise the first three classes, the number is eighty-three.

In addition to these four kinds of commercial ports we may mention the Legation Quarter at Peking wherein each Power stations a permanent guard for the security of its legation.

From the Chinese point of view the establishment of foreign guards and garrisons<sup>1</sup> is not a shield but a spear; and until it is removed, permanent good relations are not to be expected. The reason for stationing the troops and guards, which was to prevent the recurrence of the "Boxer" troubles, does not exist any longer. The Chinese people believe in what is right and reasonable, and so strong is this belief of theirs that they spurn<sup>2</sup> the thought that it is necessary to back up or enforce their right by might. They use force only when they are irritated and humiliated to the utmost. So long as the Powers keep their oft-repeated promise to maintain the independence and integrity of China, and refrain from

---

<sup>1</sup> Bodies of troops stationed in a fort; fortified place in which troops are quartered. <sup>2</sup> Treat with contempt.



committing on Chinese soil such outrages as those preceding the Boxer Rebellion, they can fully rely on the nonrecrudescence<sup>1</sup> of antforeign outbreaks and the faithfulness of the Chinese to perform their international obligations as they have demonstrated in the past. Moreover, China has shown her ability to give adequate protection to the legations during the European War, when the number of foreign troops was largely reduced.

Outside the fixed limits of the commercial ports discussed above, that is, in the interior of China, the alien may travel "for pleasure" or "for puposes of trade" only when he is provided with a passport, issued by his consul and countersigned by the Chinese authorities. He is prohibited from lingering at an inland place after his business transaction has been concluded. But he may be permitted to carry on railway or mining enterprises in the interior by the special authorization of the Chinese government. In such cases the restrictions on the ordinary alien merchant are inapplicable, and the foreigner who is given a mining or railway grant<sup>2</sup> is placed under the especial protection of the Chinese authorities.

Without doubt the imposition<sup>3</sup> of the restrictions on the traffic of the foreign merchant in the inland and the limiting of his activities to those ports and places, and those only, which have been specially set aside for purposes of international residence and trade are incompatible<sup>4</sup> with the unfettered<sup>5</sup> development of his commercial interest in China. The system is artificial

---

<sup>1</sup> Nonrecurrence. <sup>2</sup> Concession. <sup>3</sup> Act of laying on; infliction.  
<sup>4</sup> Inconsistent; not in harmony. <sup>5</sup> Free from restriction.



and it checks the free movement of foreign capital throughout the country, thereby blocking the industrial progress of China. Owing to the lack of a code binding upon natives and foreigners alike, the alien considers it risky for him to invest in the interior of China without invoking<sup>1</sup> the support of his own government. This accounts for the fact that foreign investment in China has formed the subject matter of many a diplomatic<sup>2</sup> negotiation, of which the results are detailed in the archives<sup>3</sup> of the different capitals. But industrial undertakings of this type, or "concessions," as they are called, have been granted by the Chinese only with the greatest reluctance.<sup>4</sup> China has no jurisdiction over the alien, and in case of disputes between him and the natives he is supported by his own government, and victory is always on his side, while the interests of the Chinese are rarely, if ever, given their due consideration.

Moreover, many of the foreign enterprises in China are not bona fide<sup>5</sup> business undertakings, but are established under the mask<sup>1</sup> of private corporations by imperialistic<sup>5</sup> governments for purposes of aggression.<sup>6</sup> So, in quite a few cases the application of foreign capital, instead of leading to industrial advancement, as it ought to do, has resulted in the curtailment<sup>7</sup> of certain of China's sovereign rights. Herein lies the explanation that although the Chinese have not the requisite capital to tap the hidden resources of their country, they have, nevertheless, looked upon foreign investments with

---

<sup>1</sup> Calling on; imploring. <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to diplomacy. <sup>3</sup> Public records. <sup>4</sup> Unwillingness. <sup>5</sup> Pertaining to imperialism. <sup>6</sup> Encroachment, invasion. <sup>7</sup> Cutting down.



suspicion and pursued the apparently detrimental<sup>1</sup> policy of not letting the foreigner do more than they could possibly help. With them it is simply a question of expediency,<sup>2</sup> of avoiding unnecessary complications<sup>3</sup> with foreign governments which are constantly looking for a chance to file a "friendly" ultimatum<sup>4</sup> at Peking. The Chinese are not, as outsiders allege,<sup>5</sup> hostile to all foreign investments. They oppose only those that have ulterior<sup>6</sup> motives behind them; while investments which are intended solely for the legitimate returns of business are always accorded their merited welcome. A large part of the reason why the Chinese are invariably anxious to do business with the United States is because they know that American capital and enterprise in China are devoid of all political designs,<sup>7</sup> and look only for the ordinary profits of investment. The absence of a mechanism<sup>8</sup> by which foreign capital can be readily brought into use is much to be lamented, for China, like all developing countries, and being herself the greatest of them all, needs money and credit in abundance and offers unprecedented<sup>9</sup> opportunities for investment and commercial expansion.

In the circumstances which we have described in the preceding paragraphs the natural growth of the foreign trade of China cannot but be greatly obstructed. For this China is not to be blamed. We must remember that the various restrictions placed on the activities of

---

<sup>1</sup> Injurious, harmful. <sup>2</sup> Desirability, advisability, advantage.  
<sup>3</sup> Entanglement. <sup>4</sup> The final propositions, conditions, or terms offered to either party in diplomatic negotiations. <sup>5</sup> State, say.  
<sup>6</sup> Remote, not manifest. <sup>7</sup> Schemes. <sup>8</sup> Arrangement, relation of the parts of a machine. <sup>9</sup> New, unexampled.



the foreign merchant constitute a necessary corollary<sup>1</sup> to his enjoyment of the immunities<sup>2</sup> of extraterritoriality. If the Chinese government prohibits the alien from going wherever he pleases, from holding land and establishing commercial houses wherever he chooses, it is because he insists upon doing business in China without being amenable to the laws of the country. The arrangement is artificial and doubtless involves inconveniences, if not hardships, but it is the unavoidable outcome of the foreigner's exemption from the *lex loci*.<sup>1</sup> For as soon as extraterritorial jurisdiction is abolished in China, the whole country will be thrown freely open to the residence and trade of all foreigners. But so long as it exists, so long will the restrictions have to remain. — *The China Press*.

### QUESTIONS

1. What are the two fundamental attributes of sovereignty which China has lost by her treaties with foreign nations?
2. What stipulations are contained in extraterritoriality?
3. Explain how such a system will act injuriously on the relationship between the Chinese and foreigners.
4. Explain how in lawsuits between Chinese and foreigners, extraterritoriality generally acts disadvantageously to the Chinese.
5. Can law and justice be properly administered under such conditions? Why?
6. How does extraterritoriality lead the Chinese to despise their own government?
7. What are "treaty ports," and what cities in China come under this category?

---

<sup>1</sup> Consequence. <sup>2</sup> Particular privileges; exemptions.



8. Do the Chinese enjoy the same privileges as the foreigners in their treaty ports?
9. What is the provision made in the agreement between China and the powers with regard to ports which have been voluntarily opened to foreign trade and how far has this stipulation been adhered to by foreigners?
10. What are leased territories? Name the territories now leased to foreign governments? What advantages do these confer on foreign governments?
11. Explain what is meant by "ports of call."
12. For what purpose did the foreign powers station garrisons in important cities such as Peking? Do you think it is right that they should do so? Why?
13. Is the present system of extraterritoriality altogether advantageous to foreign trade in China? Why?
14. Why are the Chinese unwilling to invest foreign capital for the development of Chinese industries?
15. Do we view the investment of American capital in the same light?
16. What will be the result following the abolishment of extraterritoriality in China?

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

#### Page

- |     |    |  |
|-----|----|--|
| 395 | a. | <i>To give rise (to):</i> to cause.                                    |
| ,,  | b. | <i>Irrespective of:</i> without regard to, or consideration of.        |
| 396 | c. | <i>To mete out:</i> to give according to some rule or proportionately. |
| ,,  | d. | <i>To deal with:</i> to treat.   |
| ,,  | e. | <i>To bring to justice:</i> to punish.                                 |
| 400 | f. | <i>Mailed fist:</i> use of force.                                      |
| ,,  | g. | <i>Balance of power:</i> maintenance of control.                       |
| 403 | h. | <i>Bona fide (Lat.):</i> true, real.                                   |
| ,,  | i. | <i>Under the mask:</i> pretending to be.                               |
| 405 | j. | <i>Lex loci (Lat.):</i> local law.                                     |

## LESSON XLIII

## A MAY THIRTIETH POLICY

SAMUEL H. CHANG

"I feel sure that you will appreciate the friendly spirit which has inspired<sup>1</sup> the action taken by the Municipal Council in this matter."

So ends the letter, dated December 21, 1925, from Comm. G. de Rossi, the then consul general for Italy and senior consul, to the commissioner for foreign affairs, inclosing therewith a check for \$75,000 "for distribution among the wounded and the relatives of those who lost their lives on that day."

In the matter of friendly spirit on the part of the Shanghai Municipal Council towards the Chinese, it has been, and still is, our contention<sup>2</sup> that repeated firing by the police at unarmed and defenseless demonstrators,<sup>3</sup> thereby killing scores of innocent Chinese citizens and wounding even a greater number, arresting and charging a number of curious onlookers with criminal intentions only to have the Court exonerate<sup>4</sup> them, and finally, winding up the whole tragic<sup>5</sup> event with a check for \$75,000 "as a mark of sympathy" with, and "a compassionate grant<sup>6</sup>" to, those concerned, is not the kind of friendly spirit which the Chinese can be expected to appreciate.<sup>7</sup>

Time was when this "Chinese-be-d—d" habit of mind suited the purpose of many foreigners and when

---

<sup>1</sup> Influenced.    <sup>2</sup> A point maintained in argument, dispute.  
<sup>3</sup> These who express their feelings publicly.    <sup>4</sup> Acquit, absolve.  
<sup>5</sup> Fatal to life,    <sup>6</sup> Gift (in money).    <sup>7</sup> Esteem; recognize the value of,



the Chinese were not in a position to return the compliment. It was when foreign nations or their nationals in China found it possible to carry on this policy with impunity<sup>1</sup> and without a protest<sup>2</sup> from the Chinese. But times have changed. To-day no foreign country or its nationals can safely ignore the views of the local Chinese community or the public opinion of the country at large; for the welfare of the foreigners in China depends upon the good will of the Chinese, and unless the Chinese are consulted in matters affecting<sup>3</sup> both the foreigners and Chinese alike, in the end it will be the foreigners who will suffer more. Obviously,<sup>4</sup> it is up to them<sup>a</sup> to decide whether they will relinquish their special rights, political and otherwise, nowhere exercised by foreigners in other countries. But so long as these rights, wrested<sup>5</sup> from China by force, constitute,<sup>6</sup> as they do, a very serious impediment to Chinese sovereignty and dignity, the agitation for their abolishment will be continued. In the event of the Powers' refusing to adapt themselves to the changed conditions and obstructing the Chinese from realizing their legitimate aspirations, the result will be more than deplorable. To be sure, the Chinese cannot force the Powers to pursue a course of reason and justice; but they are bound to make it impossible for such foreigners to remain in China. "Keep your extraterritoriality and concessions, your tariff control and special rights," they would say, "but you will have to go back to your own country to enjoy them."

<sup>1</sup> Exemption from punishment, harm or loss. <sup>2</sup> Objection against some act. <sup>3</sup> Touching, concerning. <sup>4</sup> Plainly, clearly. <sup>5</sup> Extorted by violence. <sup>6</sup> Form.



Such a state of affairs will never be conducive<sup>1</sup> to a satisfactory Sino-foreign relationship anywhere, and Shanghai the least of all places. Already the situation is fraught<sup>2</sup> with grave possibilities and is rapidly reaching the climax,<sup>b</sup> and unless the outstanding<sup>3</sup> issues<sup>4</sup> are justly and amicably settled, the consequences will be more than human mind can conjecture.<sup>5</sup>

It may well be asked here whether the May 30 incident<sup>6</sup> will ever be settled, and, if so, by what process. As has already been pointed out, a fundamental<sup>7</sup> change of policy on the part of the Powers in their dealings with China is necessary before any satisfactory Sino-foreign relationship can be expected. In the two years which have elapsed<sup>8</sup> since the youthful students fell martyrs<sup>9</sup> to the cause of liberalism<sup>10</sup> and righteousness, the course of events as well as the general trend<sup>11</sup> of thought have directed public attention to certain specific<sup>12</sup> and deep-rooted evils which underlie the whole system of China's relations with the foreign nations. For the sake of convenience these problems may be classified under two main heads: namely, General Problems, those affecting the nation as a whole, and Local Issues, those affecting Shanghai alone.

### *General Problems*

#### *Treaty Revision*

#### *Extraterritoriality*

---

<sup>1</sup> Help to contribute. <sup>2</sup> Charged, laden. <sup>3</sup> Undischarged; not paid. <sup>4</sup> Points in dispute. <sup>5</sup> Imagine, surmise. <sup>6</sup> Event, occurrence. <sup>7</sup> Basic, essential. <sup>8</sup> Slipped away (as time). <sup>9</sup> One who sacrifices life, position, etc., for the sake of principle. <sup>10</sup> Progressive principles. <sup>11</sup> Tendency. <sup>12</sup> Particular.



Tariff Autonomy

Concessions

*Local Issues*

Reorganization of the Municipality of Shanghai

Reorganization of the Shanghai Judicial System

Extra-Concessional Roads

The Defense Force

Before taking up the various problems as listed<sup>1</sup> above, it behooves<sup>2</sup> those who are interested in the solution of these most complex and immensely difficult Sino-foreign questions to bear in mind certain guiding principles which should always govern the discussions in all cases.

*Fairness.* The result of China's relations with foreign nations has impressed upon her the Kaiser-mind of the Powers. The favorite "might-makes-right" theory has been demonstrated to the full over and over again by those nations who found it expedient<sup>3</sup> to back up<sup>c</sup> their claims by military force. Justice has been denied China because China is not in a position to despatch an expeditionary<sup>4</sup> force.<sup>5</sup> The Chinese people will always be suspicious of the foreign negotiators<sup>6</sup> who preach good will and justice but point to their gunboats and soldiery in the meantime.

*Mutual Respect.* Most foreigners in China and in their own countries fail to realize that the Chinese people have made greater advancement during the last two decades in their knowledge of the principles of

---

<sup>1</sup> Recorded. <sup>2</sup> It is necessary for. <sup>3</sup> Desirable, advantageous.  
<sup>4</sup> Pertaining to expedition or sending forth of men to execute something. <sup>5</sup> Troops. <sup>6</sup> Those who hold intercourse about a treaty, league, commerce, etc.

government and of the rights of China as a sovereign state than they have made in any hundred years during their past history. Such antiquated<sup>1</sup> ideas as that the Chinese are hopelessly ignorant and their government altogether useless have prevented them from considering the views of the Chinese people and respecting their wishes to be treated as an independent country. Heretofore it has been the policy of the Powers to interfere with China's internal affairs whenever and wherever the Chinese policy conflicted<sup>2</sup> with the interests of the foreign nations. In the course of the necessary readjustments<sup>3</sup> of all outstanding Sino-foreign issues, the Powers or their nationals are bound to<sup>4</sup> suffer, and it must be pointed out at the outset that such will be inevitable<sup>4</sup> since in all considerations China's legitimate claims<sup>5</sup> rise above the claims of all foreign interests.

*Patience and Tolerance.* China has a historical background of thousands of years. Her civilization, her literature and society, as well as the Chinese mind, are not subjects which foreigners can understand at a glance. The general characteristics of Occidental civilization, such as science and speed, are seldom found in the contemplative<sup>6</sup> and imaginative mind of the Chinese. Where the Chinese calmly and patiently suffer and wait for what they know must eventually come, the foreigners fret<sup>7</sup> and fume<sup>8</sup> because they have to wait. We see things in the long perspective<sup>9</sup> and realize that no one can change the existing order

---

<sup>1</sup> Obsolete; not in vogue. <sup>2</sup> To be in opposition to. <sup>3</sup> Rearrangements; acts toward a settling down again. <sup>4</sup> Unavoidable. <sup>5</sup> That to which one has a right. <sup>6</sup> Thoughtful, meditative. <sup>7</sup> Worry and complain. <sup>8</sup> Rage (v). <sup>9</sup> View, vista.



without disturbing the foundations. Therefore, foreigners will do well to curb their impatience and to hold a more tolerant<sup>1</sup> view of the general disturbed situation; for compared with the suffering and loss which fall upon the Chinese, the little inconvenience felt by the foreigners is insignificant. With these guiding principles clearly established in our minds the following persistent and vexed problems may then be approached and an equitable<sup>2</sup> and just solution can reasonably be expected.

**TREATY REVISION.** All treaties with China are obsolete.<sup>3</sup> They are a hindrance to the full realization of China's legitimate<sup>4</sup> aspirations.<sup>5</sup> Most of them were made when the Powers were of the opinion that foreign interests in China could be secured only when her economic and political development came under foreign tutelage.<sup>6</sup> Conditions have now changed, and the demand for revision is not only a just demand, but is also a constructive policy which the Powers themselves will do well to adopt.

**EXTRATERRITORIALITY.** This special system, while regarded as a necessary method in the past, is no longer necessary and has become the source of much irritation<sup>7</sup> and Sino-foreign friction.<sup>8</sup> As a mark of mutual respect and the first step towards its abolishment, at least the recommendations of the Extraterritoriality Commission should be immediately carried into effect,<sup>9</sup> provided the Powers will reciprocate<sup>9</sup> in this respect in regard to

---

<sup>1</sup> Indulgent, inclined to be forbearing. <sup>2</sup> Fair; just. <sup>3</sup> Not in vogue; out of date. <sup>4</sup> Lawful. <sup>5</sup> Earnest wish; ambition. <sup>6</sup> Protection. <sup>7</sup> Anger, vexation. <sup>8</sup> Clashing between persons or parties in opinions or work. <sup>9</sup> Interchange; give and return mutually.



their jurisdiction over Chinese sojourning in foreign countries.

**TARIFF AUTONOMY.** On this question there can be no compromise.<sup>1</sup> History is full of cases where imperialistic<sup>2</sup> countries maintained a financial hold upon others and reduced the latter countries to dependencies. China can under no circumstances allow herself to be strangled<sup>3</sup> like Persia or Egypt, and the Powers might as well make up their minds that it cannot be done. The oft-repeated argument advanced by the Powers in refusing to relinquish<sup>4</sup> their hold upon China's customs is that the increased income from tariffs will simply be squandered<sup>5</sup> in continuing the internal strife. Brushing aside for the time being the tangibility<sup>6</sup> of such a contention as regards the Nationalist Government, it must be pointed out that how China uses her wealth is, after all, her own business.

**CONCESSIONS.** Like the system of extraterritoriality, foreign concessions were at first found to be mutually satisfactory, it being the intention of the Chinese government to enable foreigners to live together by themselves in order to avoid friction and complication with the Chinese. The situation, however, has also changed, and now many Chinese find themselves under foreign administration. The basic principle of a foreign concession on Chinese soil is wrong and its practice is repugnant<sup>7</sup> to Chinese sovereignty. Concessions should therefore revert to Chinese control in order to meet the changed conditions.

---

<sup>1</sup> Mutual partial surrender of claims; concession. <sup>2</sup> Pertaining to imperialism, or the control or federation of different territories under one ruler. <sup>3</sup> Stifled, suppressed. <sup>4</sup> Quit; give up. <sup>5</sup> Wasted; spent extravagantly. <sup>6</sup> Reality, truth. <sup>7</sup> Hostile, offensive.



**THE LOCAL ISSUES.** The more specific and local remedies in connection with the May 30 incident relate to the general situation as it exists to-day in Shanghai. One of the fundamental causes of the misunderstanding between Chinese and foreigners lies in the existing organ of the municipality of Shanghai known as the Municipal Council, members of which are annually elected by the ratepayers.<sup>1</sup> In spite of the fact that the foreign population residing in Shanghai constitutes less than five per cent of the total settlement population, and in spite of the fact that the Chinese residing in the settlement contribute the major portion of the municipal revenue, the Chinese ratepayers are totally disenfranchised.<sup>2</sup> In any other city in the world, the control would rest with the nationality composing the majority of the population, but since the Municipal Council derives its privileges by an agreement with the Chinese government, and since the Chinese have never asserted<sup>3</sup> their rights, the administration has remained in the control of a handful of foreigners. Among other things the May 30 incident revealed the inadequacy<sup>4</sup> and maladjustment of the municipality in a most glaring manner. The council had not only degenerated into an irresponsible bureaucracy,<sup>5</sup> but had also conducted itself in an unsympathetic and insolent manner towards the Chinese. Had the council been composed of a more representative and responsible group of men, the tragic event might have been avoided.

---

<sup>1</sup> Taxpayers. <sup>2</sup> Excluded from the right of citizenship. <sup>3</sup> Stated positively; declared. <sup>4</sup> Deficiency. <sup>5</sup> Notorious, open and bold. <sup>6</sup> System of government by departments or bureaux, each under a chief.



Reorganization of the municipality is thus indispensable. All Chinese citizens residing in the settlement and possessing qualifications of ratepayers similar to those of the foreigners shall be given all the rights of enfranchisement. Membership of the council shall be apportioned in accordance with the proportion of the Chinese ratepayers. The aim is not so much a joint control of the municipality as a complete Chinese jurisdiction in due time. No foreigners residing in the settlement have any right to expect satisfactory relations with the Chinese until they are willing to give just consideration to the Chinese demands.

Next to the reorganization of the municipality comes the reorganization of the judicial system in Shanghai. The former notorious Mixed Court has been replaced by the Provisional<sup>1</sup> Court, but the agreement is such that it places the Provisional Court in an embarrassing and ridiculous<sup>2</sup> position. To be sure, it fulfills the function as a buffer<sup>3</sup> between complete foreign aggrandizement<sup>4</sup> and Chinese sovereignty, but as a Chinese judicial organ it is hampered<sup>5</sup> from all sides. It is responsible not only to the Chinese law but also to the bylaws of the Municipal Council, many of which are repugnant to the spirit of the Chinese judiciary.<sup>6</sup> The Rendition<sup>7</sup> Agreement is valid for three years, but already conditions have become so difficult since the beginning of the year that an early revision will be necessary and advisable.

---

<sup>1</sup> Of the nature of temporary arrangement. <sup>2</sup> Absurd. <sup>3</sup> Anything which deadens the jar from colliding bodies. <sup>4</sup> Act of advancing one's interest. <sup>5</sup> Impeded, obstructed. <sup>6</sup> System of courts of justice. <sup>7</sup> Surrender (n).



A third source of friction between the settlement authorities and the Chinese Government lies in the extra-concessional<sup>1</sup> roads. That these roads should not have fallen under the jurisdiction of the Municipal Council is a question about which there need not be any dispute. The principle as maintained by the Municipal Council in claiming control over these roads is extremely dangerous to Chinese sovereignty. It is based upon the fallacious<sup>2</sup> argument that possession is nine-tenths of the law and since the Municipal Council owns the land over which the roads have been built it is entitled to jurisdiction<sup>3</sup> over them. By such a process of reasoning, the Municipal Council may purchase a strip of land leading to Nanking and consequently extend its jurisdiction to the capital of the Nationalist government. But an even more legitimate<sup>4</sup> objection to the Municipal Council's jurisdiction over these roads lies in the fact that they form an arm cutting the surrounding Chinese territory into two isolated<sup>5</sup> parts thus making effective Chinese administration impossible. The International and the French settlements border on the two separated parts of the Port of Shanghai and Woosung, and unless the settlement authorities awake to the necessity of co-operation with the Chinese administration, the peace and order of any one part of the entire port will always be affected by the conditions prevailing in the other parts.

Finally, the presence of approximately 50,000 foreign troops in Shanghai and scores of battleships on the Yangtze, not to mention the aeroplanes and other

---

<sup>1</sup> Outside of the concession.    <sup>2</sup> False to reason.    <sup>3</sup> Sphere of authority.    <sup>4</sup> Rightful, genuine.    <sup>5</sup> Separated.



instruments of war, only serves to add to the already numerous causes of antiforeignism. The Nationalist government at Nanking has succeeded in establishing peace and order over the territory under its control. Its foreign policy, as announced by the minister of foreign affairs, Dr. C. C. Wu, is one of peaceful negotiation, and not of force. In the light of these developments, one fails to understand why 50,000 troops are needed to protect approximately<sup>1</sup> 30,000 foreign lives when there are no dangers to protect them from. The only deduction<sup>2</sup> from the Powers' belligerent<sup>3</sup> attitude and warlike preparations can only be that the Powers aim at repression<sup>4</sup> of the spirit of Chinese Nationalism.

The above points are some of the outstanding Sino-foreign issues which should be settled immediately and in a sympathetic manner, because they represent the major grievances<sup>5</sup> of the Chinese people as a whole and of Shanghai in particular. The Powers can hold back and watch to see which way the wind is going to blow. They can balk<sup>6</sup> on the excuse that the Nationalist government has only partial control of the country. But the demands are not the demands of the Nationalist government alone; they are the demands of the entire Chinese nation. The present internal strife is impossible to avoid because it is a necessary stage of revolution. On the other hand, they can and ought to help in the solution of this immensely difficult and complex situation by offering to meet the legitimate aspirations of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Nearly exact; about.    <sup>2</sup> Inference.    <sup>3</sup> Warlike.    <sup>4</sup> Act of subduing; suppressing.    <sup>5</sup> Cause of complaint; wrong done and suffered as from injustice, tyranny, etc.    <sup>6</sup> To stand still obstinately.



Chinese nation, thereby eliminating<sup>1</sup> many of the obstacles to an orderly and peaceful China.

— *The China Courier*.

### QUESTIONS

1. What do you think of the check for \$75,000 from the Municipal Council to the relatives of the Chinese victims "as a mark of sympathy" and a "compassionate grant"?
2. Upon what does the welfare of the foreigners in China principally rest; and what do we expect from them as a prerequisite to mutual good will? What if they refuse?
3. What are the questions involved under general problems, and what under local issues, which the Chinese wish to have settled?
4. What are the guiding principles which should govern the discussions in all these cases?
5. What has hitherto characterized the Sino-foreign relations? and why?
6. Why do you think has been the reason or reasons for the fact that foreign nations have not treated the Chinese with due respect?
7. What is the fundamental difference between the Western and the Eastern mind?
8. State your reason why the treaties between China and foreign nations need revision.
9. What is meant by extraterritoriality, and how does it affect China's sovereignty?
10. Give your reasons why China should strive to recover her full tariff autonomy.

---

<sup>1</sup> Causing to disappear.

11. What do you mean by concessions? Enumerate the foreign concessions in China. Why should we recover these concessions?
12. What readjustment should be made regarding the Shanghai municipality? Why?
13. Is the present system of the Provisional Court satisfactory? Why?
14. What are the extra-concessional roads? Has the Municipal Council any justification in building these roads? Show how they affect Chinese jurisdiction.
15. What kind of excuses have the foreign Powers proffered for retaining their so-called special rights? Why are they not justified?

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

## Page

- |     |    |   |
|-----|----|---|
| 408 | a. | <i>To be up to one:</i> to be one's duty.                               |
| 409 | b. | <i>To reach the climax:</i> attain the highest or most important point. |
| 410 | c. | <i>To back up:</i> to support.  |
| 411 | d. | <i>To be bound:</i> to be sure to; to be obliged.                       |
| 412 | e. | <i>To carry into effect:</i> to cause to be put into operation.         |
| 417 | f. | <i>In the light of:</i> in view of, in consideration of.                |





# APPENDIX

## NOTES

### LESSON I

Page

- 2 *The Great Reformation*: The religious movement at the beginning of the 16th century which resulted in the separation of the Protestant church from the Roman See.
- „ *Martin Luther (1483-1546)*: Celebrated German Protestant reformer; son of an Eisleben miner; entered an Augustinian monastery 1505; published at Trittenburg his ninety-five articles attacking the sale of indulgences by the Dominican Tetzel; was excommunicated by the Pope in 1520; finally eschewed Romanism in 1524, and finished the translation of the Bible in 1534.
- „ *Emancipation*: Act of setting free from slavery or subjection, or from civil restraint or disqualification.
- „ *Abraham Lincoln (1800-1865)*: A noted American statesman; he was a strong opponent of slavery, and his election to the presidency of the U. S. A. in 1860 led to the secession of the Southern states; he issued his proclamation of emancipation in 1862, was reelected president in 1864, and was shot the following year in a Washington theater.
- „ *James Seth*: Professor of Moral Philosophy in the University of Edinburgh. Born in 1860 and educated in George Watson's College, University of Edinburgh (M. A. 1881), Leipzig, Jena, Berlin. After teaching philosophy in various colleges in Canada and U. S. A. became Sage Professor of Moral Philosophy in Cornell University, U. S. A., 1896-1898. He published *A Study of Ethical Principles* in 1894.
- „ *The Western World*: The countries of Europe and America; the peoples of Europe; descendants of Europeans in America.
- 3 *Oliver Cromwell (1599-1658)*: A famous Puritan statesman, soldier, and organizer. He organized the regiment of Puritans called Cromwell's Ironsides, during the Civil War, and ultimately became Lord Protector of England, Scotland, and Ireland.



## LESSON II

Page

- 8 *Sir Robert Hart*: Late Inspector-General of the Maritime Customs. His first appointment under the Chinese government was as deputy commissioner of the Canton customs, 1859. He became Inspector-General in 1863. Was knighted in 1882. He was instrumental in establishing the modern Chinese post office. On his death September 21, 1911, he was succeeded by Sir Francis Aglen.
- „ *Sir Richard Dane, K.C.I.E.*: Inspector-general of the government Salt Gabelle of the Republic of China. Born in May 1854 in Ireland and educated in Kingstown Dapha, Dublin. Entered the service in 1872 and held various important offices under the Indian government. His latest office in India before joining the Chinese government was Inspector-General of excise and salt, 1907-1909.

## LESSON III

- 19 *The Thirty Years War*: The name given to the religious struggle which rent Germany from 1618 to 1648, leaving her in a state of exhaustion and demoralization from which she did not wholly recover till the first quarter of the nineteenth century. Its primary cause was the hostility between the Roman Catholics and the Protestants, but the contest between authority and liberty extended to the sphere of civil life. The war broke out in Bohemia, where the tyrannical policy of the emperor, Matthias, in matters of religion provoked a rebellion, which culminated in the choice of the elector-palatine, Frederick V, as king in place of Ferdinand II. In the same year Ferdinand succeeded Matthias on the imperial throne. After a series of wars in which at first the imperialist forces under Wallenstein and Tilly prevailed, and ultimately the Protestant forces under Condi and Terrenne, the struggle was brought to a close by the Peace of Westphalia, 1648.
- 21 *The Singer of Sweet Auburn*: Oliver Goldsmith, born on the tenth of November, 1728, at Pallas, was first brought up in the village of Lissoy, and at Pallas, and at the age of seventeen entered Trinity College, Dublin. For some time he led a chequered life, first as a tutor, then as a student of medicine in Edinburgh; and being penniless after his stay in Leyden, wandered in Italy supporting himself by playing the flute and by other mysterious means. He returned to London as a common doctor and corrector of the press. It was while an usher in Dr. Milner's

Page

school at Peckham that he took to literature as a profession. He tried to pass his medical examination, and failing in this, returned to his books. His first original work was an *Enquiry into the Present State of Polite Learning in Europe* (1759) and eight numbers of weekly essays, *The Bee*. Among his well-known later works are: *The Citizen of the World*, *The Vicar of Wakefield*, *The Traveler*, and *The Deserted Village*; the last two are poems. He died on April 4, 1774.

## LESSON IV

- 26 *Hall of Fame*: Erected in New York University for the purpose of preserving the memory of famous Americans. The condition is that a person must have been dead ten years before he is entitled to the distinction.
- 34 *Henry Drummond*: Scientist and author. Among his well-known works may be mentioned *Natural Law in the Spiritual World* and *The Ascent of Man*.
- „ *Congress*: The collective body of senators and representatives of the people of a nation especially of a republic.
- „ *State Legislature*: In the U. S. A. every state has its own local laws, besides the federal laws enacted by the congress. The state legislature is the law-enacting body elected by the people of the state.

## LESSON V

- 38 *Elizabethan Period*: The most brilliant, as well as the most virile, era in English literature, extending from the accession of Elizabeth in 1548. This period is characterized by a profusion of literary effort and achievement, especially on the dramatic and imaginative sides. It witnessed not only the rise, but the culminating splendor of the drama. The great prose writers were headed by the illustrious name of Francis Bacon (1561-1625), the father of inductive philosophy. Richard Hooker, Sir Walter Raleigh, John Milton (1608-1674), author of *Paradise Lost*, John Bunyan (1628-1688), John Dryden, and William Shakespeare were among the many stars who made the literary history of this period a glorious one.
- 39 *Gandhi*: A leader of the Indians in the struggle for national independence from Great Britain. To attain this object, he advocates the policy of noncoöperation, and the "Swaraj" system or self-government; he further advocates the return to hand looms for their clothing.



## LESSON VI

## Page

- 45 *League of Nations*: A congress of nations established after the Great War (1918) by the great powers, including the United States, Great Britain, France, Japan, and Italy, for the purpose of settling international disputes by means of arbitration instead of force and for the promotion of international commerce.
- 47 *Geneva*: Capital of a district in the southwest of Switzerland, situated at the exit of the Rhône from the Lake of Geneva, 388 miles by rail southeast of Paris. At present it is the seat of the League of Nations.

## LESSON VII

- 58 *Charles Robert Darwin (1809-1882)*: A naturalist of great distinction and discoverer of natural selection; especially known for his theory of evolution popularly called the Darwinian theory. Among his famous works are *Origin of Species*, published in 1859, *The Fertilization of Orchids* (1862), *Variation of Plants and Animals* (1867), *Descent of Man* (1871), *The Expression of Emotion in Man and Animals* (1873), etc.
- „ *Natural selection*: A process by which nature perpetuates and propagates organisms which are best adapted to conditions.
- 59 *Thomas Henry Huxley (1825-1895)*: A celebrated English biologist; was lecturer at Cambridge and president of the Royal Society. Among his works are *An Introduction to the Classification of Animals*, *Evolution and Ethics*, etc.
- „ *Struggle for existence*: Principle (discovered by Chas. Darwin) by which it is explained that organisms are in constant struggle or conflict either with nature or fellow organisms in the desire to live.

## LESSON VIII

- 69 *Renaissance*: New birth or revival of learning and art in Europe in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, which was partly the result of the crusades, of Wycliffe's teaching, and of Francesco Bracciolini's services in the study of classical Latin, but which received a great stimulus from the influx of Byzantine scholars and manuscripts into Italy upon the fall of Constantinople (1463), from the invention of printing a few years later, and the discoveries of navigators in the last half of the fifteenth century.

## Page

- 69 *Caliph Omar*: The father-in-law of the prophet Mohammed (A.D. 634).
- „ *Alexandrian Library*: The most famous library of the ancient world, said to have numbered 700,000 volumes at the most flourishing period of its existence. It was founded by Ptolemy of Egypt (283 B.C.), was burned during the siege of the city by Cæsar, and again fired by the bigoted Christians in A.D. 390. It was finally destroyed in 641 at the taking of Alexandria by the Arabs under Amru.
- 70 *Mephistophiles*: Satan, the devil represented in Goethe's *Faust*.
- „ *Napoleon (Bonaparte)*: Emperor of the French, born on August 15 at Ajaccio, Corsica, and educated at the Military college at Brienne; began his military career as corporal in 1785, but after various vicissitudes, gradually rose to fame through successive victories in his campaigns in Austria, Rome, Egypt, Germany, and Russia. The decline of his power began after his retreat from Moscow when the French army was reduced by four-fifths of its number. His last victory was in the battle of Lützen (May 2, 1813) when, against overwhelming odds, he defeated the allies. Notwithstanding his display of brilliancy in his fight with the allies at Leipzig, his army, wearied of war, could no longer withstand the harassing persecution of his enemy, and upon the capitulation of Paris he was forced to abdicate and was exiled to Elba in April 1814. Returning to France from his exile in 1815 he reorganized the remnants of his army in preparation for the final struggle with the allied armies under the Duke of Wellington at Waterloo (June 18). He was defeated and sent to St. Helena where he died on May 5, 1821.
- 73 *Benjamin Franklin (1706-1790)*: The great American philosopher and diplomatist, well known for his experiments with electricity and other discoveries in physics.
- 74 *Alexander the Great (356-323 B.C.)*: King of Macedon, and son of Don Phillip II of Olympias, known as the greatest conqueror and hero of the ancient world and founder of the city of Alexandria. His dominions up to his death extended from Macedon to the Indus, including Asia Minor, Persia, Egypt, and Babylon.
- 75 *Mexico*: A federal republic of North America between the United States and Guatemala.
- „ *Philippines*: A large group of islands forming the northern section of the Malay Archipelago.
- „ *Declaration of Independence*: Act adopted by the Continental Congress, July 4, 1776, declaring the formal separation of



Page

the United Colonies from England, whose king was no more to be king in the thirteen colonies. The Declaration says: "We hold these truths to be self-evident: That all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness."

## LESSON X

- 85 *Old World*: Europe and Asia, as distinguished from America which is comparatively newly settled.
- 88 *West Point*: Military academy in the U.S.A. situated at West Point, N.Y.
- 90 *Town and gown*: Common people of the city and college students.

## LESSON XIV

- 123 *Amebic dysentery*: A disease of the bowels attended with inflammation and ulceration of the colon and rectum, and discharge of mucous and blood, due to the presence of certain ameba or minute organisms.
- 124 *Bubonic plague*: A contagious disease accompanied by fever and the formation of buboes or glandular swellings. It visited the Roman Empire in the fourth century, Europe in the fourteenth century, and England in 1665. It was known as the Great Plague.
- 126 *Edward Jenner (born 1749)*: The discoverer of vaccine for smallpox. He was first impressed with the idea that smallpox and cowpox were related in such a way that an attack of the one afforded immunity from the other, and in 1775 began a serious investigation and published his conclusions in 1798. He died in 1823 at Berkeley, where he spent his later years.
- 127 *William Crawford Gorgas (1854-1920)*: American army surgeon; born in Mobile, Alabama. He graduated at the University of the South in 1875 and from the Bellevue Hospital Medical College, New York University, in 1879. He was appointed surgeon in the U.S. Army in 1880 and became surgeon-major in 1898. In the latter year he was appointed chief officer in charge of sanitary work at Havana, Cuba, and so successfully applied methods of combating yellow fever that he eliminated that disease which had been the curse of Cuba. His brilliant work in that office caused him to be made surgeon-general by

## Page

a special act of Congress in 1903. In 1904 he was appointed chief sanitary officer of the Panama Canal Zone, and his work there in exterminating tropical diseases paralleled his achievements in Havana. He retired from active service in 1918 and became the director of yellow fever research in the Rockefeller Foundation. Several South American countries availed themselves of his ability in fighting fevers with remarkable results. He was awarded medals and honors by many of the world's greatest scientific societies. Italy decorated him in 1918 and France in 1919.

- 127 *Cuba*: An island formerly belonging to Spain; the largest of the West Indies lying southeast of the Gulf of Mexico; capital, Havana. In 1898, the government of Cuba was transferred to the United States; but it has since become an independent state with a republican form of government.
- „ *Plasmodium malariae*: A species of fever caused by a kind of bacteria known as plasmodia which are irregular, formless aggregations of protoplasm.
- „ *Robert Koch*: A distinguished German physician, born in the Harty district, 1843. Having taken his M.D. degree in 1866 at the medical department of Woolstein, he made important discoveries in connection with consumption and cattle disease; and while in India inquired into the causes of cholera; he discovered the bacterium in 1884. He became professor at Berlin University in 1885.
- 129 *Bright's disease*: A disease of the kidneys.

## LESSON XV

- 134 *Karl Marx (1818-1883)*: Socialist writer and agitator. He studied law and philosophy at Bonn and Berlin and became advocate of the young Hezelian school. Owing to the suppression of his revolutionary organ, the *Rhenish Gazette*, he was obliged to go to Paris, from which place he was expelled at the request of the Prussian government. While in Brussels (1847) he published his *Communist Manifesto*, a declaration of the principles of international socialism. After returning to Paris, following his expulsion from Brussels, he went to Cologne and established the *New Rhenish Gazette*. His greatest work was *Das Kapital*, the first volume of which was published in 1867.
- „ *Lenin (originally Oulianov Vladimir Ilich) (1870-1924)*: Russian Communist leader, born in Simbirk in 1870, was the son



Page

of a district inspector of schools. Entered the University of Kazan as a student of law, but was expelled for taking part in revolutionary agitation. He joined the social-democratic movement, which adopted the teaching of Karl Marx, after returning from abroad. He was the leading spirit during the revolution of 1905, working mostly as agitator. During his second stay abroad, 1906-1917, Lenin published several pamphlets and books which attracted a good deal of attention. During the Great War he urged a general revolt of the workmen of the world against the war. He thought that the defeat of Russia would facilitate social victory—the abolition of her slavery, her liberation from the chains of czarism. He was the first president (an office now abolished) of the Soviet government.

## LESSON XVI

- 147 *Newfoundland*: British island off the east coast of Canada. It is famous for its cod fisheries; but salmon, seal, herring, and lobster are also found. Discovered by John Cabot in 1407.
- „ *Celestial Empire*: China. The appellation is a translation from the Chinese ancient name, which means the “Land of the gods.”
- 148 *A.B.C. countries*: The South American countries, so called because their names begin with the letters in the alphabet, such as Argentine Republic, Brazil, Bolivia, Colombia, etc.
- 150 *Joint-stock company*: A mercantile, banking, or coöperative association, usually of a large number of partners, with a stock or capital made up of transferable shares that have been paid up in part or in full.

## LESSON XVII

- 154 *Artificial selection*: A process of improving the quality of plants or animals by controlled selection in breeding.
- 155 *Crossbreeding*: Method of breeding through parents of different breeds or varieties.
- 157 *Legume*: A pod dehiscent into two valves and having the seeds attached at one suture, as the pea.
- „ *Alfalfa*: North African grass of the clover family valuable for pasturage.
- „ *Sorghum*: A genus of grass including millet.

## Page

- 157 *Milo*: A genus of grass.  
 „ *Pit silos*: A pit for storing up green crops for future use; a pit for cereal.

## LESSON XVIII

- 159 *Turkestan*: A great region of central Asia stretching east from the Caspian to beyond Lobnor, and south from Siberia and Dzungaria to Persia, Afghanistan, and Tibet. The Chinese portion of this immense territory is bounded on the north by the Tien-shan Mountains, on the west by the Pamir tableland, on the south by the highland of Tibet or Cashmere, and on the east by the desert plain of Gobi.
- 161 *Southdown*: The famous breed of sheep named after the pasture hills in Hampshire.
- „ *Merino*: A variety of sheep having very fine wool, originally from Spain.
- „ *Shropshir*: Another famous breed of sheep raised in Shropshire, an inland county of England.
- „ *Mendelian theory of Monohybridism or Mendel's law*: A principle governing the inheritance of many characters in animals and plants. Gregor J. Mendel (Austrian Augustinian abbot 1822-1884) showed that height, color, and other characters depend upon the presence of determining factors (allelomorphs), behaving as units, and that the second and later generations of crossbreeds exhibit these characteristics in all possible combinations, each combination in a definite proportion of individuals.
- 163 *Blagovyeshchensk*: A town of the Amur province of Russia in Asia at the confluence of the Amur and Seja rivers.

## LESSON XX

- 180 *Manchuria*: Northeasternmost division of the Chinese republic bounded by the river Amur, Usuri, the Russian Maritime Province, Korea, the Yellow Sea, and Mongolia; embracing the three provinces, Mukden, Heilungkiang and Kirin. Total area, 280,000 square miles; population, 21,000,000. Rich in timber and in minerals, chiefly gold, silver, coal, and iron. It also abounds in fur-bearing animals, salmon, and trout.
- „ *Mongolia*: The country of the Mongols, applied to the northern portion of the Chinese Republic.
- „ *Tibet*: A country in central Asia, lying between China proper and India, and inclosed between the Kuen-lun,



Page

Altyn Tazh and Nanshan mountains on the north, and the Himalayas on the south. Area, 700,000 square miles.

## LESSON XXI

- 191 *Jesuit*: Member of the Society of Jesus, a most influential religious order founded by Ignatius Loyola, which was established by the bull of Paul III (1540). The aim of this society is devotion to self-culture, in all that makes for religion; preaching, gratuitous teaching, and missionary labor; and by virtue of the fourth vow, peculiar to them, the members are bound to obey the Pope implicitly.

## LESSON XXII

- 198 *Protective tariff*: A system of levying duties on imported goods with a view to protecting home products, the duties being high enough to make the price of imported articles dearer than that of similar kind produced at home.
- 201 *Rotation of crops*: A recurring series of different crops on the same ground.
- 204 *Animal husbandry*: Science of caring for and breeding of domestic animals.

## LESSON XXIV

- 217 *Cold storage method*: A method of preserving vegetables, meats, etc., by means of low temperature, generally from fifty to sixty degrees. This is done by using ice.
- „ *Panama Canal*: Situated on the Isthmus of Panama, a province of Colombia. The construction of the canal by the U. S. government has facilitated trade between the Atlantic and the Pacific.
- 218 *California*: A state of the American Union on the Pacific coast.
- „ *New York*: The largest and most important city in the U. S. A., and the third wealthiest on the globe, situated on the east side of the Hudson, in the state of New York.
- 219 *Massachusetts*: An Atlantic state of the U. S. A., famous for manufactures of cottons, woolens, shoes, food, etc.

## LESSON XXV

Page

- 225 *Babylonians*: Inhabitants of Babylon, a celebrated city of antiquity on the River Euphrates, noted for its architecture and hanging gardens.
- „ *Carthaginians*: Inhabitants of Carthage in North Africa, a city founded by the Phoenicians in the ninth century before Christ.

## LESSON XXVI

- 237 *Illinois*: One of the states of the U. S. A., extending from Wisconsin and Lake Michigan on the north and northeast to the junction of the Ohio and Mississippi rivers at the extreme southwest. It is bounded on the east by Indiana, south by Kentucky, and on the west it is separated by the Mississippi from Iowa and Missouri. The area is 56,650 square miles.
- „ *Rockies (Rocky Mountains)*: The eastern ranges of the great Cordilleran system in North America which attains its greatest breadth within the U. S. A. (over 1,000 miles between 38 and 42 N). The mountain chains forming the western boundary of the plateaus of this highland region are the Sierra Nevada and the Cascade ranges, and the eastern chains, stretching continuously from the southern borders of the United States through Canada to the Arctic Ocean, constitute the Rocky Mountains.
- 238 *Seattle*: Capital of King County, Washington, on Elliott Bay. It owes its phenomenal growth to the lumber trade.
- „ *Portland*: The metropolis of Oregon, and capital of Multnomah County, on the Willamette River, 772 miles by rail north of San Francisco. One of the important trading centers on the Pacific coast.

## LESSON XXIX

- 273 *Taiping Rebellion (1850-1864)*: Chinese insurrection organized by Hung Hsiu Ch'uan, the self-styled "Heavenly Prince." It was crushed by the aid of General Gordon.

## LESSON XXX

- 288 *Trust*: Organization for the purpose of regulating the supply and price of commodities.



## Page

- 288 *Stock exchange:* The building or place where stocks or business shares are bought and sold; or an association of stock brokers. The most important of stock exchanges are the London Stock Exchange and the New York Stock Exchange.
- „ *Bonded warehouses:* Warehouses used for dutiable goods upon which duty has not yet been paid.
- 289 *Quintuple Group of bankers:* A group of bankers of Great Britain, France, Russia, Japan, and, until the outbreak of European War, Germany, with whom China entered into loan agreement. The security offered was the revenue of the Salt Gabelle.

## LESSON XXXI

- 294 *Lord Salisbury:* Fourth Marquis of Salisbury (created 1780). James Edward Hubert Cascoigne Cecil, G.C.V.O. (created 1909). Born in London October 23, 1861; fourth son of the third Marquis of Salisbury, educated at Eton, University College, Oxford. Under-secretary for Foreign Affairs 1901-1903. Lord Privy Seal 1903-1905; President Board of Trade, 1905.
- 297 *Asquith, Rt. Hon. Herbert Henry:* Born at Morly, Yorkshire, Sept. 12, 1852; second son of Joseph Dexon Asquith. Educated City of London School, Baliol College, Oxford. Secretary of State for Home Department, 1882-1885. Eulesias, trial Commissioner 1892-1895. Chancellor of the Exchequer, 1905-1908. Prime Minister and the First Lord of the Treasury 1908-1916.
- „ *Lloyd George, Rt. Hon. David, M.P.:* One of the most prominent statesmen in England, and premier during the Great War. Born 1863. Educated at Eton, Cambridge; a student of eastern politics. Appointed Honorable Attaché to H.M. embassy at Constantinople; special commissioner for H.M.G. to enquire into and report upon the future of British trade in Turkey and Mesopotamia and the Persian Gulf, 1908.
- „ *Occupational diseases:* diseases caused by certain occupations.
- 300 *Balfour, Rt. Hon. Arthur James:* Born in Scotland July 25, 1848; son of late James Maitland Balfour. Educated at Eton, Trinity College, Cambridge; M.P. for Hertford, 1874-85; private secretary to Marquis of Salisbury when Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs; employed on special mission of Lords Salisbury and Beaconsfield to Berlin, 1878; Privy Councilor, 1885; President of Local Government Board, 1885-86; Secretary for Scotland with seat in

## Page

Cabinet; vice president of Committee of Council on Education for Scotland, 1886-1887; Lord-rector St. Andrew's University, 1886; Chief Secretary for Ireland, 1887-1891; member of Gold and Silver Commission, 1887-1888; elected member of senate, London University, 1887; Lord-rector Glasgow University, 1890; created Congested Districts Board for Ireland, 1890; chancellor Edinburgh University since 1891; leader House of Commons and First Lord of Treasury, 1891-1892; leader of Opposition, 1892-1895; President British Association, 1904; Prime Minister, 1902-1905; First Lord of Treasury and of House of Commons, 1895-1906; special British representative to the Washington Conference, 1919. Among his important publications may be mentioned a *Defense of Philosophic Doubt*; *The Foundation of Belief*, *Economic Notes on Insular Free Trade*, etc.

## LESSON XXXII

- 304 *The Old World*: The Eastern Hemisphere; the continents of Europe, Asia, and Africa, and Australasia.
- 305 *The Union*: The United States of America.

## LESSON XXXIII

- 309 *Golden Rule*: "Do unto others as you would that they should do unto you" (Christ). "Do not unto others as you do not wish others to do to you" (Confucius).
- 315 *Henry Ford*: Manufacturer of Ford cars, said to be the wealthiest man in the U.S.A.
- 316 *Miss Cristabel Pankhurst*: A noted English woman's suffrage leader.
- 320 *Utopia*: From Greek *ou*=not and *topos*=place, imaginary island represented by Sir Thomas More in his famous romance, or rather satire as enjoying perfection in politics, laws, etc., community of goods, freedom of creeds. Hence, an impractical project existing only in imagination.

## LESSON XXXIV

- 325 *Joint-tenancy association*: When lands are granted to two or more persons, to hold for them and their heirs, either for the term of their lives, or for the term of another's life,



Page

without any restrictive, exclusive, or explanatory words, all the persons named in such grant, to whom the lands are so given, take a joint estate, and are thence called joint tenants. On the death of either, without partition, the estate descends to the survivors, but the jointure may be destroyed by alienation of one joint tenant whereby the joint-tenancy is severed and a "tenancy in common" ensues.

## LESSON XXXV

- 335 *Likin*: Domestic duties (Chinese) on goods, levied by local officials instituted after the Taiping Rebellion, and now become a corrupt system of official aggrandizement.

## LESSON XXXVI

- 337 *Algeria*: A country in North Africa colonized or organized as a possession of France. It is one of the civilized countries in Africa. Algiers is its capital.
- „ *Morocco*: A sultanate occupying Northwest Africa. The town of Morocco is noted for morocco leather.
- „ *Convention of Algeciras*: A conference held in Algeciras, Spain, just across the bay from Gibraltar (1906), in which the representatives agreed on the formation of a police force in Morocco under French and Spanish officers, and the organization of a state bank which showed the control by the powers.
- 339 *The London Times*: The foremost English newspaper published in London.
- 340 *Dardanelles*: A narrow channel separating Europe from Asia, and uniting the sea of Marmora with the Archipelago.
- „ *Suez Canal*: Situated on the Isthmus of Suez and connecting the Mediterranean Sea with the Red Sea and Indian Ocean. Bought by the British Government from the Khedive in 1875.

## LESSON XXXVII

- 345 *Jefferson, Thomas (1743-1826)*: Third president of the United States, born at Shadwell, Virginia, of a farmer family. He was admitted to the Virginia Bar in 1767; became member of the Virginia Assembly in 1769 and in 1774 prepared the draft of instructions to the Virginia delegates at the Philadelphia conference; became member of

Page

the Virginia Committee of Thirteen for raising the colony against the British and in the same year took part in the Philadelphia Congress; was chairman of the committee which drew up the *Declaration of Independence*, and also was the author of the "Act for Establishing Religious Freedom"; was governor of Virginia from 1779-1781, and meanwhile was a staunch supporter of Washington; as chairman of the Currency committee, with Governor Morris, he brought into use the decimal system of coinage; was sent to France to assist Franklin and Adams to negotiate commercial treaties in 1784, and next year became plenipotentiary; became Vice President under Adams, and in 1800 was elected President which office he retained until 1809. His *Manual of Parliamentary Practice* was published in 1771, and is still much in use.

- 346 *Oregon*: One of the Pacific states of the American Union, bounded by Washington, Idaho, California, and Nevada.
- „ *Alaska*: A territory of the United States, occupying the northwestern portion of the North American Continent. It is bounded north by the Arctic Ocean, east by Canada, southwest by the Pacific Ocean, and west by the Behring Sea and the Arctic Ocean.
- 347 *Fenian Raid*: Referring to the attempt on the part of an Irish national organization, whose aims were the subversion of British rule in Ireland, to launch a raid in Canada in 1871. This was prevented by the timely information received by the United States Government.
- „ *Lake Champlain*: A beautiful lake separating the states of New York and Vermont and penetrating at its north end about six miles into Canada.
- „ *Maryland*: One of the United States on the Atlantic, separated from Pennsylvania and Delaware by the "Mason and Dixon line" and from Virginia by the Potomac river.
- „ *Virginia*: A middle Atlantic state of the American Union separated from Maryland by the Potomac River and Chesapeake Bay, and bounded south by North Carolina and Tennessee, west and northwest by Kentucky and West Virginia.

## LESSON XXXIX

- 358 *Alsace-Lorraine*: From 1871 until the close of the Great War (1918), a state or imperial territory of the German Empire, bounded west by France, east by Baden and south by Switzerland. Area 5580 square miles. The population, of whom eighty per cent are German speaking peoples, was, in 1890, 1,603,506. A part of it was ceded



## Page

to France by Germany at the Peace of Westphalia 1648, and by the Treaty of Ryswick (1697) the cession of the whole was ratified. After the Franco-German War (1871) Alsace-Lorraine was again incorporated in the New German Empire against the wishes of a large part of the population. Until after the Great War this territory had been the cause of bitter feelings between the French and the Germans.

- 358 *Austria-Hungary*: These two countries until the close of the Great War formed the great Austrian Empire. It was bounded north by part of Germany and Poland, east by western Germany, Switzerland, and north Italy, southeast by the Adriatic Sea, south by Montenegro and Serbia, and west by Rumania.
- „ *Rumania*: A kingdom of southeastern Europe lying mainly between the Carpathians, the Pruth, and the Danube, and bordering on Hungary, Russia, Bulgaria, and Serbia; Rumania played an important part in the recent Great War.
- „ *Serbia*: A kingdom of the Balkan Peninsula, south of the Danube, and bordering on Bosnia, Hungary, Rumania, Bulgaria, and Turkey, with an area of 19,000 square miles. Capital, Belgrade.
- „ *Montenegro*: An independent state in the Balkan Peninsula, between Herzegovina and Albania, with an area of 3,255 square miles. The town of Cetinje is its capital. It is the smallest kingdom in Europe.
- 359 *Balkan States*: In a general way, these cover the area of Turkey in Europe, Bulgaria, Serbia, Montenegro, Albania, Bosnia, and Herzegovina.
- „ *Ottoman Empire (Turkey)*: It comprises the wide but heterogeneous territories really or nominally subject to the Osmanli sultan, in Europe, Asia, and Africa; covering in Europe, ancient Thrace, Macedon, Epirus, and Illyria; in Africa, the regency of Tripoli, and in Asia, the territory from the Euxine to the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf. Turkey under Kemal Pasha has now become a republic with Angora as its capital.
- „ *Polish state*: A state in northern Europe, bounded north, by the Baltic Sea from Danzig to Riga, and by the Russian provinces of Riga and Pakov; east, by the Russian provinces of Smolensk, Tehernigoff, Pultova and Kerson; south, by Bessarabia, Moldavia and the Carpathian Mountains, and west, by the Prussian provinces of Silesia, Brandenburg and Pomerania. It was first partitioned in 1772 between Russia, Prussia, and Austria; and in 1793, as a result of continued dissensions among the nobles,



Page

another slice of 118,000 square miles was divided between Russia and Prussia. After the close of the Great War, as a result of the defeat of Germany and Austria, Poland again became an independent state, and has become a republic.

## LESSON XL

- 361 *Afghanistan*: A country lying to the north of India. It is for the most part arid and mountainous and possesses diversified climate. The population is composed of a variety of races.
- „ *Bactria*: A province of the ancient Persian empire lying north of the Paropamisus (Hindu Kush) mountains, on the upper Oxus.
- „ *Parthia*: Anciently a district in what is now northern Persia, lying between Media on the west and Bactria on the east. The capital was Ctesiphon. The Parthian empire was finally overthrown by Ardashir who founded the dynasty of Sassanids.
- „ *Mesopotamia*: The district between the rivers Tigris and Euphrates, extending from the foot of the Armenian mountains southeastward to near Bagdad. It has an area of about 55,000 square miles.
- „ *The Huns*: The Huns are generally considered to be the people of Turko-Tartar affinities, the descendants perhaps of the Hsiung-Nu, who figured in Chinese annals as making incursions and founding states in central Asia in the second century. About 200 B.C., the Huns overran the Chinese Empire, defeated the Chinese armies in numerous engagements, and drove the Emperor Kao Ti himself to a capitulation and treaty. During the reign of Wu Ti, 141-87 B.C., the power of the Huns was broken. The Huns invaded the country of the Goths, whose aged king Hermannrich roused himself to meet the invaders, but in vain. The Huns occupied all the territory that had been abandoned by the Goths.
- „ *Justinian I*: Byzantine emperor A.D. 527-565. His name was Uprauda which he changed to Justinian. Although of obscure parentage, he shared the success of his maternal uncle, Justin I, being invited at an early age to Constantinople, where he received a careful education. In A.D. 527, by the advice of the Senate, Justin proclaimed him colleague in the empire. His long reign was the most brilliant in the history of the later empire. He was a great builder of aqueducts, fortresses, churches, quays, harbors, and monasteries. As a legislator he gained his greatest renown. He was passionately devoted to theology.



Page

362 *Antoninus Pius*: A Roman Emperor (A. D. 138-161). He inherited great wealth, and early gave proof of excellent qualities. In A. D. 120 he was made consul; afterwards he was sent by Hadrian as proconsul into Asia, where the wisdom and gentleness of his rule won for him a higher reputation than had been enjoyed by any of his predecessors. In 138 he was adopted by Emperor Hadrian, in consequence of his merit alone, and came to the throne in the same year. The reign was peaceful and happy. In his private character he was simple, temperate, and benevolent, while in public affairs he acted as the father of his people. Persecution of the Christians, which was continued during his reign, was partly stayed by his mild measures. His reign illustrates the saying, "Happy the nation which has no history," for by justice, wisdom, kindness, and courtesy of the emperor his vast empire was preserved from the crimes, conscriptions, insurrections, and bloodshed, the recording of which formed the largest part of the historian's work in the dark centuries of the Roman Empire.

„ *Aurelius Antoninus*: A Roman Emperor (A.D. 121-180). His fine qualities early attracted the notice of the Emperor Hadrian. When only 17, he was adopted with Lucius Verus by Antoninus Pius, the successor of Hadrian. In A.D. 140 he was made consul. The relation existing between him and the emperor was of the warmest and most familiar kind. On his accession to the throne he strikingly illustrated the magnanimity of his character by voluntarily sharing the government. He was the flower of the Stoic philosophy. At 12, he avowed himself a follower of Zeno and Epictetus. His love of learning was insatiable. Men of letters were his most intimate friends. His range of studies was extensive. There is one feature in his character which it would be dishonest to pass over—his hostility to Christianity. He was the persecutor of the new religion. The popular explanation of this act is that he once allowed himself to be led away by evil counselors, but the deeper reason is to be found in that very earnestness with which he clung to the old heathen faith of his ancestors. In A.D. 177 he published his first edict against Christianity and the persecution lasted during that and the following year. He was the author of a beautiful ethical work, *Meditations*, written in Greek, the finest product of the Stoic philosophy.

366 *Formosa*: An island lying off the coast of China, from which it is separated by the Fukien Strait. Its capital is Taiwan. The island, formerly a Chinese colony, was ceded to Japan after the China-Japan War.



## Page

- 366 *East India Company*: The name given to trading companies intrusted by various European governments with the monopoly of their trade with the East Indies. The most important one was the English company, the original charter of which was granted by Queen Elizabeth on December 31, 1600, for fifteen years monopoly of trade with all parts of the world not held by friendly European powers, between the Cape of Good Hope eastward to the Straits of Magellan. The original stock was £72,000 (capital). At first the venture was esteemed to be of such a precarious nature that the company was aided by exemptions from export duties, and in other ways. The first voyages were highly successful, and the trade continued to increase, notwithstanding the bitter and often bloody struggles with foreign companies, the wealth of the Orient having attracted other European nations besides the English. As a trading organization, it held for over 200 years the practical monopoly of the trade of Great Britain with the Far East. The increasing political power of the company furnished endless opportunities for corruption among its servants in India, and for misrule and oppression of the natives. It was quite natural that in 1769 a more complete control by the government was established. In 1813 the trade with India was thrown open, the company maintaining its existence as a political body for the government of India only, and in 1833 its last great monopoly, the trade to China, was abolished. The company continued its existence as an organization for receiving and distributing the dividends, guaranteed by the government.
- 378 *Shylock*: The Jew usurer in Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice*, the central figure in the play, standing for the vengeful spirit of an oppressed race.

## LESSON XLI

- 385 *Kublai Khan*: The Grand Khan of the Mongols and founder of the Mongol empire in China; lived in the 13th century, and was the grandson of Genghis Khan. In the middle of the century he conquered North China and on the death of his brother was proclaimed "Great Khan." He was an energetic, enlightened ruler, adopting the Chinese civilization, patronizing literature, favoring the Buddhist religion by creating the office of Grand Lama and by acts. His sway extended from the Arctic Ocean to the Straits of Malacca, and from Korea to Hungary. His was the first foreign dynasty to establish itself in China.



## Page

- 389 *Loochoo Islands*: A group of thirty-seven isles extending from Kyushiu in Japan almost to Formosa. The chief islands of the group are Ashima and Okinawa.
- 390 *Mikado*: Title given to the ruler of Japan.
- „ *Restoration*: The civil war in Japan which began in 1667 and ended in 1868 with the overthrow of the Tokugawa Shogunate and the restoration of the emperor to his lawful authority.





